Adobe

User Guide

Adobe Photoshop™ version 3.0

Macintosh®

Adobe Photoshop 3.0

Adobe

User Guide

Adobe Photoshop version 3.0

© 1994 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe Photoshop 3.0 User Guide

This manual, as well as the software described in it, is furnished under license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license. The information in this manual is furnished for informational use only, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Systems Incorporated assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in this book.

Except as permitted by such license, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Please remember that existing artwork or images that you may desire to scan as a template for your new image may be protected under copyright law. The unauthorized incorporation of such artwork or images into your new work could be a violation of the rights of the author. Please be sure to obtain any permission required from such authors.

Adobe, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Illustrator, Adobe Separator, Display PostScript, Adobe Dimensions, Adobe Premiere, Adobe Type Manager, ATM, and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions. Amiga is a registered trademark of Commodore Computer. Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. MacPaint is a registered trademark of Claris Corporation. PixelPaint and PixelPaint Professional are registered trademarks of Pixel Resources, Inc. FreeHand and PageMaker are registered trademarks of Aldus Corporation. QuarkXPress is a registered trademark of Quark, Inc. CompuServe is a registered trademark of CompuServe, Inc., an H&R Block Company. Quickeys is a trademark of CE Software. Radius is a trademark of Radius, Inc. SuperMatch is a trademark of SuperMac Technologies. Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries. OS/2 is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation. Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. UNIX is a registered trademark of UNIX Systems Laboratories, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of Novell, Inc. Kodak is a registered trademark and PhotoCD is a trademark of Eastman-Kodak Company. QMS and ColorScript are registered trademarks of QMS, Inc. Scitex is a registered trademark of Scitex Corporation. PCPaintbrush is a trademark of Z-Soft, Inc. All other products or name brands are trademarks of their respective holders.

Duotone process is covered by U.S. Patent No. 5146346.

*Pantone, Inc.'s check-standard trademark for color reproduction and color reproduction materials

Process color reproduction may not match PANTONE®-identified solid color standards. Refer to current PANTONE Color Publications for the accurate color.

TRUMATCH, TRUMATCH SWATCHING SYSTEM, TRUMATCH COLORFINDER, TRUMATCH SWATCHBOOK, and TRUMATCH COLOR-FINDER SOFTWARE are trademarks of TRUMATCH, Inc. TRUMATCH SWATCHING SYSTEM, including the color identification numbers, is covered by patent pending and copyright protection.

FOCOLTONE is a registered trademark of Focoltone, Ltd. The concept, structure, and form of all FOCOLTONE material and intellectual property are protected by patent and copyright.

MacApp © 1985-1992 Apple Computer, Inc. Apple Computer, Inc. makes no warranties whatsoever, either express or implied, regarding this product, including warranties with respect to its merchantability or its fitness for any particular purpose. The MacApp software is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. and is proprietary to Apple Computer, Inc., licensed to Adobe Systems, Inc. for distribution only for use in combination with Adobe Photoshop.

Written and designed at Adobe Systems Incorporated, 1585 Charleston Road, Mountain View, CA 94039-7900.

Adobe Systems Europe B.V., Europlaza, Hoogoorddreef 54a, 1101 BE Amsterdam Z-O, The Netherlands

Adobe Systems Japan, Swiss Bank House, 4-1-8 Toranomon, Minato-ku, Tokyo 105, Japan

For defense agencies: Restricted Rights Legend. Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at 252.227-7013.

For civilian agencies: Restricted Rights Legend. Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in subparagraphs (a) through (d) of the commercial Computer Software Restricted Rights clause at 52.227-19 and the limitations set forth in Adobe's standard commercial agreement for this software. Unpublished rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States.

Printed in the USA.

Part number: 0199 8165 (8/94)

Contents

INTRODUCTION 1

About this manual 1

CHAPTER 1: BASIC CONCEPTS 3

Vector and raster images 3

Resolution basics 4

Image resolution 4

Pixel depth 4

Monitor resolution 5

Screen frequency 5

Output resolution 5

Resolution and image size 6

Resolution and file size 7

Color basics 7

HSB model 7

RGB model 8

CMYK model 8

The color wheel 8

*L*a*b model* 9

Color gamuts 9

Adobe Photoshop color modes 10

Grayscale mode 10

RGB mode 10

CMYK mode 10

Lab mode 11

Creating new documents 11

Opening and saving documents 11

Setting preferences 12

Setting the position of palettes and dialog boxes 12

Using image previews 12

Indicating when tasks finish 13

Setting plug-ins preferences 13

Setting scratch disk preferences 13

Setting transparency preferences 14

Using the toolbox 14
The tools 15
Foreground and background color controls 16
Mode controls 16
Window controls 16
Using the tool pointers 16
Zooming 17
Using rulers 18
Working with palettes 19
Using the Info palette 21
Using the Commands palette 22
Correcting a mistake 23
Restoring an image 24
Entering file information 24
Entering a caption 24
Entering keywords 24
Entering categories 24
Entering credits 25
Entering origins 25
Publishing and subscribing 25

CHAPTER 2: CALIBRATING YOUR SYSTEM 27
About calibration 27
How the Adobe Photoshop color calibration tools work 27
Step 1: Calibrate your monitor 28
Calibrating multiple monitors 29
Saving and loading custom gamma settings 29
Step 2: Enter the Monitor Setup information 29
Saving and loading monitor settings 30
Step 3: Enter the Printing Inks Setup information 31
Step 4: Print a color proof 32
Step 5: Calibrate the screen image to the proof 33
About dot gain and gray balance 33
Compensating for dot gain in grayscale and duotone images 33

Compensating for dot gain in color images 33
Compensating for dot gain using transfer functions 34
Setting the characteristics of custom ink colors 35
Compensating for color casts 35
Saving and loading Printing Inks settings 36

CHAPTER 3: SCANNING, IMPORTING, AND EXPORTING IMAGES 37
Scanning images 37
Determining the scan resolution 37
Scan resolution and screen frequency 38
Scan resolution and image output size 38
Scanning using the file size setting 38
Scanning using the resolution setting 40
Optimizing the dynamic range of the scan 40
Eliminating unwanted color casts 41
Using plug-in modules 41
Installing plug-in modules 41
Importing images 41
Opening files 42
Opening and placing Adobe Illustrator files 42
Opening Photo CD files 43
Opening EPS PICT or EPS TIFF preview files 44
Opening PCX files 44
Opening Raw files 44
Using the Acquire command 45
Acquiring an Anti-aliased PICT file 45
Acquiring PICT Resources 46
Acquiring Quick Edit files 46
Acquiring an image using the TWAIN interface 47
Exporting images 47
Saving files 48
Saving a copy of a file 48
Saving Adobe Photoshop 3.0 and Adobe Photoshop 2.0 files 48
Saving Adobe Photoshop 3.0 files as Adobe Photoshop 2.5 files 49
Saving in non-Photoshop formats 49

Saving Amiga IFF files 49
Saving BMP files 50
Saving CompuServe GIF files 50
Saving EPS files 50
Saving Filmstrip files 51
Saving JPEG files 51
Saving MacPaint files 52
Saving PCX files 52
Saving PICT Files 52
Saving a file as a PICT Resource 52
Saving PIXAR files 52
Saving PixelPaint files 52
Saving Raw files 53
Saving Scitex CT files 53
Saving Targa files 53
Saving TIFF files 53
Using the Export command 54
Exporting Amiga HAM files 54
Printing an ImageWriter color file 54
Exporting paths to Adobe Illustrator 54
Exporting Quick Edit files 55

CHAPTER 4: WORKING WITH SELECTIONS 57

Making selections 57
Using the marquee tool 57
Using the lasso tool 58
Using the magic wand tool 58
Using the Color Range command 59
Selecting and deselecting an entire image 61
Extending and reducing a selection 61
Adding to a selection 62
Subtracting from a selection 62
Using the Grow and Similar commands 62
Smoothing a selection 63
Expanding and contracting a selection border 63

Selecting the intersections of selections 64
Selecting a border around a selection 64
Selecting the unselected areas in an image 64
Softening the edges of a selection 65
Defining a feather edge 65
Feathering an existing selection 65
Using the Anti-aliased option 66
Hiding a selection border 66
About floating selections 66
Moving a selection 67
Copying a selection 68
Duplicating a selection as you move it 68
Copying selections between applications 68
Copying a selection from one document to another 69
Pasting a selection 69
Controlling the opacity and mode of a floating selection 70
Pasting using different resolutions 70
Pasting into another selection 70
Pasting from another application 71
Deleting a selection 71
Matting a moved or pasted selection 71
Defringing a selection 72
Removing matte from a selection 72
Applying effects to a selection 72
Using interpolation 72
Previewing and applying effects 73
Rotating a selection 73
Rotating an entire image 74
Flipping a selection 74
Scaling a selection 74
Skewing a selection 74
Creating perspective 75
Distorting a selection 76

CHAPTER 5: USING PATHS 77
Using the Paths palette 77
Hiding and resizing path thumbnails 78
Creating paths 78
Creating new paths 79
Drawing straight line paths 79
Drawing curved paths 80
Drawing subpaths 81
Saving and renaming paths 82
Copying and moving paths 82
Copying paths 82
Moving paths 82
Copying paths from one document or application to another 83
Editing paths 83
Filling and stroking paths 85
Erasing and deleting paths 86
Converting paths into selections and selections into paths 87
Defining paths as selections 87
Converting selections into paths 88
Using clipping paths 88
Creating a clipping path 89
Printing clipping paths 90

CHAPTER 6: USING THE PAINTING, EDITING, FILL, AND TYPE TOOLS 93
Choosing the painting color 93
Tool shortcuts 94
Using the Brushes palette 94
Choosing a brush shape 94
Creating and deleting brushes 95
Creating custom brushes 96
Setting brush options 97
Saving, loading, and appending brushes 97
Using the Options palette 97
Specifying the opacity, pressure, or exposure 97

Selecting a painting or editing mode 98
Normal mode 98
Dissolve mode 98
Behind mode 98
Clear mode 98
Multiply mode 98
Screen mode 98
Overlay mode 99
Soft Light mode 99
Hard Light mode 99
Darken mode 99
Lighten mode 99
Difference mode 99
Hue mode 99
Saturation mode 99
Color mode 99
Luminosity mode 99
Effects of painting modes 100
Specifying the paint fade-out rate 101
Specifying stylus pressure options 101
Sampling merged data 101
Using the eraser tool 102
Using the line tool 102
Using the pencil tool 103
Using the airbrush tool 103
Using the paint brush tool 103
Using the rubber stamp tool 104
Clone options 104
Pattern options 105
From Snapshot option 105
From Saved option 106
Impressionist option 106
Using the smudge tool 106
Using the blur/sharpen tool 107

Using the dodge/burn/sponge tool 107
Filling selections 108
Using the paint bucket tool 109
Using the gradient fill tool 109
Creating a linear gradient fill 110
Creating a radial gradient fill 111
Using the Fill command 112
Filling a selection with a pattern 112
Using PostScript patterns to fill a selection 113
Stroking a selection 113
Painting and editing in layers 114
Using the type tool 114
Adding type to an image 115
Changing type opacity and mode 115
Using text on a layer 116
Setting the leading 116
Setting the letterspacing 116
Selecting style options for type 116
Aligning type 117
Adjusting individual characters 117

CHAPTER 7: SELECTING COLORS 119
Using the eyedropper tool 119
Changing the eyedropper sample size 119
Using the Picker palette 120
Setting color readout values 120
Choosing a color from the Picker color bar 121
Using the Swatches palette 121
Selecting a color 121
Adding or deleting a color 121
Saving, loading, and appending Swatches palettes 122
Using the Scratch palette 122
Copying and pasting in the Scratch palette 123
Locking and clearing the Scratch palette 123
Resetting, saving, and loading Scratch palettes 123

Using the Adobe Photoshop color picker 124
Specifying a color using the color field and color slider 124
Specifying a color using numerical values 125
Recognizing nonprintable colors 125
Choosing custom colors from the Adobe Photoshop color picker 126
Selecting PANTONE colors 126
Selecting TRUMATCH colors 127
Selecting FOCOLTONE colors 127
Selecting TOYO ColorFinder 1050 colors 127
Selecting ANPA-COLOR colors 127
Creating spot colors in RGB and CMYK modes 128
Using the Apple Color Picker 128

CHAPTER 8: USING LAYERS 129
Understanding layers 129
Using the Layers palette 130
Creating a layered document 130
Adding layers 131
Pasting selections onto layers 131
Dragging layers between documents 133
Editing layers 133
Adding pixels to a layer 133
Preserving a layer's transparency 133
Viewing layers 134
Showing and hiding layers 134
Hiding and resizing layer thumbnails 135
Moving and copying layers 135
Changing the order of layers 136
Copying layers between documents 136
Duplicating layers 137
Deleting layers 138
Converting and adding backgrounds 138
Specifying layer options 138
Specifying opacity and blending modes 139
Specifying a range for blending layers 139

Filling a new layer with a neutral color ... 140
Creating clipping groups ... 140
Using layer masks ... 142
Adding a layer mask ... 142
Changing layer mask options ... 143
Turning off the layer mask ... 144
Viewing the layer mask channel ... 144
Applying and removing a layer mask ... 145
Managing layered documents ... 145
Keeping track of file sizes ... 145
Merging layers ... 145
Saving layered documents ... 146
Flattening all layers ... 146

CHAPTER 9: USING CHANNELS AND MASKS ... 147
Working with channels ... 147
Using the Channels palette ... 148
Showing and hiding channels ... 148
Hiding and resizing channel thumbnails ... 149
Duplicating channels ... 149
Splitting channels into separate documents ... 150
Merging channels ... 150
Using alpha channels ... 151
Using selections as masks ... 151
Using Quick Mask mode ... 152
Creating a new channel ... 154
Saving a selection in a channel ... 155
Editing channels ... 156
Loading a selection into an image ... 156
Changing channel options ... 157
Changing the order of channels ... 157
Saving channels ... 157
Deleting channels ... 157
Copying channels from one document to another ... 158
Copying a channel to a 32-bit video card ... 158

Using the channel Calculation commands 158
Duplicating images 159
Applying channel calculations to the active document 159
Calculating using multiple source documents 160
Normal 161
Multiply 161
Screen 161
Overlay 161
Soft Light 161
Hard Light 161
Darker 161
Lighter 161
Add 162
Subtract 162
Difference 162

CHAPTER 10: USING FILTERS 163
Using filters 163
Applying filters to layers 163
Previewing filter effects 164
Filter shortcuts 164
The Blur filters 164
The Blur and Blur More filters 164
The Gaussian Blur filter 164
The Motion Blur filter 165
The Radial Blur filter 165
The Distort filters 165
The Displace filter 165
The Pinch filter 166
The Polar Coordinates filter 167
The Ripple filter 167
The Shear filter 167
The Spherize filter 167
The Twirl filter 168
The Wave filter 168
The Zigzag filter 168

The Noise filters ... 169
The Add Noise filter ... 169
The Despeckle filter ... 169
The Dust and Scratches filter ... 169
The Median filter ... 170
The Mezzotint filter ... 170
The Pixelate filters ... 170
The Facet filter ... 170
The Fragment filter ... 170
The Mosaic filter ... 170
The Render filters ... 170
The Clouds filter ... 171
The Difference Clouds filter ... 171
The Lens Flare filter ... 171
The Lighting Effects filter ... 171
The Texture Fill filter ... 175
The Sharpen filters ... 175
The Sharpen and Sharpen More filters ... 175
The Sharpen Edges and Unsharp Mask filters ... 175
The Stylize filters ... 176
The Color Halftone filter ... 176
The Crystallize filter ... 176
The Diffuse filter ... 176
The Emboss filter ... 177
The Extrude filter ... 177
The Find Edges and Trace Contour filters ... 177
The Pointillize filter ... 178
The Solarize filter ... 178
The Tiles filter ... 178
The Wind filter ... 178
The Video filters ... 179

Special purpose filters ... 179
The Custom filter ... 179
The High Pass filter ... 179
The Maximum and Minimum filters ... 180
The Offset filter ... 180

CHAPTER 11: RESIZING AND RESOLUTION ... 185
Understanding image resolution ... 185
Adjusting image resolution ... 185
Resampling ... 186
Selecting an interpolation method ... 187
Sharpening an interpolated image ... 187
Displaying the file size, dimensions, and resolution of an image ... 187
Previewing the page size and layout ... 188
Cropping an image ... 189
Using the Crop command ... 189
Using the cropping tool ... 189
Defining the size and resolution of the cropped area ... 189
Adjusting and rotating the cropping tool marquee ... 190
Using the Image Size command ... 191
Determining the resolution automatically ... 192
Using the Canvas Size command ... 192

CHAPTER 12: COLOR CORRECTION ... 195
Checking the scan quality ... 195
Managing out-of gamut colors ... 196
Identifying out-of gamut colors ... 196
Correcting small out-of-gamut areas ... 197
Previewing CMYK colors ... 198
Displaying a histogram ... 198
Previewing color changes ... 199
Previewing with a 24-bit or 32-bit video card ... 200
Previewing color values ... 200
Cancelling color changes ... 201
Using the Variations command ... 201

About adjusting tonal range and color balance 202
Using the Brightness/Contrast command 203
Adjusting the brightness and contrast automatically 203
Setting the highlights, shadows, and midtones using target values 204
Using the Levels sliders 204
Identifying highlights and shadows using the Threshold mode 206
Using the Curves dialog box 207
Using the Arbitrary Map option 208
Using the Color Balance command 209
Using the Hue/Saturation command 209
Using the Colorize option 210
Using the Desaturate command 211
Using the Replace Color command 211
Using the Selective Color command 212
Applying color corrections to multiple images 213
Using the Map commands 214
Using the Invert command 214
Using the Equalize command 214
Using the Threshold command 215
Using the Posterize command 215

CHAPTER 13: CONVERTING IMAGES 217
About channels and image types 217
Working with RGB and CMYK images 217
Working with Lab images 219
Color display options for 8-bit color displays 219
About converting images 220
Converting from one mode to another 220
Converting to bitmap 221
The 50% Threshold option 221
The Pattern Dither option 221
The Diffusion Dither option 221
The Halftone Screen option 222
The Custom Pattern option 223

Converting to grayscale 223
Converting a bitmapped image to a grayscale image 224
Converting a color image to a grayscale image 224
Converting grayscale to color 224
Converting to Lab 224
Converting to Multichannel mode 224
Converting to CMYK 225
Saving and loading separation tables 225
Converting to indexed color 226
Specifying the resolution of an indexed color image 227
Specifying a color table option 227
Specifying dithering options for an indexed color image 228
Manipulating the color table of an indexed color image 228
Editing colors in the indexed color table 228
Choosing a color table option 229
Saving and loading a color table 230
About monotones, duotones, tritones, and quadtones 230
About duotones 230
Converting grayscale images to duotones 230
Saving and loading duotone settings 234
Viewing the individual printing plates 234
Printing duotones 235
Exporting duotone images to other applications 235

CHAPTER 14: PRODUCING A SEPARATION 237
Questions to ask your printer 237
Step 1: Calibrate your system 238
Step 2: Produce the best possible scan 238
Step 3: Adjust the separation setup settings or load a color separation table and convert the image 238
About black generation and separation types 239
Adjusting the black generation and separation type 239
Saving and loading Separation Setup settings 241
Using color separation tables 241

Step 4: Make tonal and color corrections to your image 241
Step 5: Create color trap 241
Step 6: Print the color plates 242

CHAPTER 15: PRINTING A PROOF 243
Printing: An overview 243
General printing options 243
Printing labels 244
Printing crop marks 244
Printing calibration bars 244
Printing registration marks 244
Printing a negative 244
Specifying an emulsion side 244
Using interpolation 245
Printing a border 245
Printing a caption 245
Selecting a background color 245
Creating bleed 245
Displaying the transfer functions 245
Selecting halftone screen attributes 245
Printing a grayscale halftone 246
Printing halftones for a color separation 246
Saving and loading halftone screen settings 247
Additional printing options 247
Printing a selected area 247
Printing a color-corrected image 247
Printing separations 247
Printing with print spoolers and across networks 247

APPENDIX: TIPS AND TROUBLESHOOTING 249

INDEX 253

Introduction

Welcome to the Adobe Photoshop™ program—extraordinary photo retouching, image editing, and color painting software. Whether you are a novice or an expert in image editing, the Adobe Photoshop program offers you the tools you need to get professional-quality results.

You'll find that Adobe Photoshop excels as an art production tool, whether you are an art director or electronic publisher who needs to merge and edit color images, a photographer who wants to retouch proofs, or a graphic designer who is creating original or composite artwork, collages, or photo montages. The software is equally useful to printers and service bureaus that want to generate color separations, to animators who want to colorize images and produce audio-visual materials quickly, and to artists who want to create new artwork using the latest media and tools.

Before beginning to use Adobe Photoshop, you should have a working knowledge of the Macintosh® and its operating conventions. You should know how to use the mouse and standard Macintosh menus and commands. You should also know how to open, save, and close files. If you need to review these techniques, see your Macintosh User Guide.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

The *Adobe Photoshop User Guide* provides detailed information about the Adobe Photoshop tools and commands. It is designed to be used as a reference tool in your everyday work with Adobe Photoshop.

Before using this manual, you need to install the program following the instructions given in the *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started* booklet. This booklet also provides information on new features in Adobe Photoshop 3.0, allocating memory, working efficiently, improving performance, and using ATM with Adobe Photoshop.

The Adobe Photoshop User Guide assumes that you have completed the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial* and have some familiarity with the Photoshop tools. Descriptions of specific tools and procedures included in the tutorial are not repeated in this manual.

The *Adobe Photoshop User Guide* is organized according to the tasks you most commonly perform when editing and printing digitized images:

- Chapter 1 reviews some basic concepts and terminology used in image editing, and presents information on starting the program and using tools and palettes.
- Chapter 2 discusses how to calibrate your system to ensure the most accurate match between the image you see on the screen and the printed results.
- Chapter 3 covers information and tips on scanning and importing and exporting images in other file formats.
- Chapter 4 describes making and manipulating selections.
- Chapter 5 explains how to create and work with paths.

- Chapter 6 describes the Adobe Photoshop toolbox and gives a description of how the tools work. This chapter also discusses the fill and stroke commands.
- Chapter 7 discusses selecting colors in Adobe Photoshop, including using the Color Picker and custom colors.
- Chapter 8 introduces layers, a new feature in Adobe Photoshop 3.0. Layers allow you to experiment with creative options by letting you isolate and manipulate separate elements in the image. You can try out different combinations of text and graphics, change the placement of elements, or even apply filters or other special effects. Layer masks allow you to apply effects to a layer without effecting your original data.
- Chapter 9 discusses using channels and masking techniques.
- Chapter 10 describes how to use filters to modify images.
- Chapter 11 explains image resolution and the commands you use to resize images.
- Chapter 12 covers the steps and commands you use to color correct an image.
- Chapter 13 details the conversion of Adobe Photoshop images from one mode to another.
- Chapter 14 provides information on producing color separations.
- Chapter 15 presents the procedures for printing images (including printing halftones).
- An appendix on tips and troubleshooting and the Index complete the manual.

Chapter

1

BASIC CONCEPTS

Chapter 1: Basic Concepts

This chapter begins by introducing the concepts and terminology used when working with digitized images. If you're familiar with color models and image resolution, you can skip this section and go directly to "Creating New Documents" on page 11.

The second half of the chapter summarizes the Adobe Photoshop tools and presents some basic procedures for using the program effectively. For a step-by-step introduction to Adobe Photoshop, complete the lessons in the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial.*

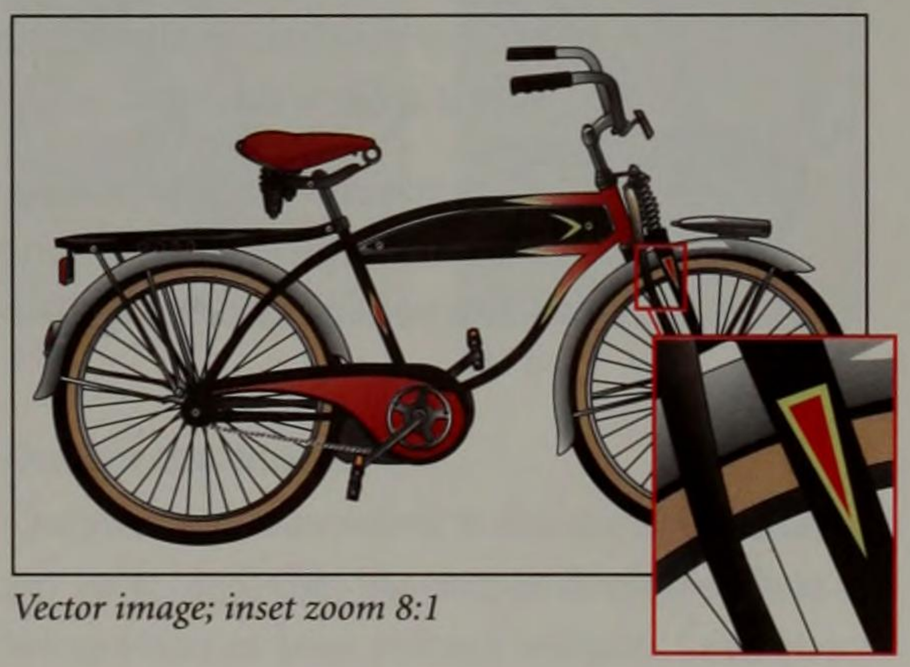
VECTOR AND RASTER IMAGES

There are two main types of computer graphics—*vector images* and *raster images.* Understanding the difference between these two types of images is useful when you're creating and editing digital images.

Vector images, such as those created in Adobe Illustrator™, are made up of mathematically defined lines and curves called *vectors.* For example, in a vector-based program you draw a blue circle with a radius of one inch in a specific location on the page. You can then move, resize, or change the color of the circle; the program always references the shape itself. Vector-based programs are best for type (especially small type) and bold graphics, such as logos, which require crisp, clear lines no matter what size they are scaled to.

Raster images, such as those created in Adobe Photoshop, consist of a grid, or *raster,* of small squares, known as *pixels.* For example, a one-inch blue ball in the upper right corner of the page in a raster image is made up of the collection of pixels in that location, colorized to give the appearance of a ball. The program simply references the pixels in a specific grid. When working with raster images, you edit groups of pixels, rather than objects or shapes. Raster-based images are best used for working with continuous-tone images, such as photographs or images created in painting programs. Because raster images are resolution-dependent, they can appear jagged and lose detail if they are scanned or created at a low resolution (for example, 72 ppi) and are then printed at a high resolution.

Raster image; inset zoom 8:1



Vector image; inset zoom 8:1

Note: *Because computer screens are made up of a grid of pixels, both vector and pixel images are displayed as pixels. Vector-based products render their shapes into pixels for display.*

RESOLUTION BASICS

Several types of resolution are important when discussing the properties of digitized images: image resolution, bit resolution, monitor resolution, screen frequency (or screen ruling), and output resolution. An understanding of the relationship between resolution and file size and resolution and image size is key to understanding how Adobe Photoshop displays images and produces output.

Image resolution

Image resolution refers to the spacing of pixels in the image and is measured in pixels per inch (ppi). If an image has a resolution of 72 ppi, this means it contains 5184 pixels in a square inch (72 pixels wide x 72 pixels high = 5184). The higher the resolution, the more pixels in the image. For example, a 3-by-3 inch image with a resolution of 72 ppi, would have 46,656 one-inch-square blocks of color. The same image with a resolution of 300 ppi would have 810,000 blocks of color in the same 3-by-3 inch area. Higher resolutions allow for more detail and subtle color transitions in an image.

The image resolution you set in Adobe Photoshop determines the resolution of the image when you import the image into desktop layout programs such as PageMaker and QuarkXPress. It also determines the maximum resolution at which you can print the image.

Current Size: 35K
Width: 82 points
Height: 108 points
Resolution: 72 pixels/inch

72 ppi

Current Size: 602K
Width: 82 points
Height: 108 points
Resolution: 300 pixels/inch

300 ppi

Pixel depth

Bit resolution, or *pixel depth*, is a measurement of the number of bits of stored information per pixel. Bit resolution determines how much color information is available for each pixel in the file. Greater pixel depth means more available colors and more accurate color representation in the digital image. For example, a pixel with a bit depth of 1 has two possible values: on or off. A pixel with a bit depth of 8 has 2^8, or 256, possible

values; and a pixel with a bit depth of 24 has 2^{24}, or 16 million, possible values. Common values for pixel depth range from 1 to 24 bits per pixel.

1-bit (bitmap)

8-bit (grayscale)

8-bit (indexed color)

24-bit (millions of colors)

Monitor resolution

Monitor resolution defines the number of dots or pixels per unit length of output. It is commonly measured in dots per inch (dpi) or pixels per inch (ppi). The device resolution for a Macintosh monitor is typically 72 dpi.

The monitor resolution determines the size of the displayed image and should not be confused with the image resolution, which reflects the spacing of the pixels in the image. For example, an image with a resolution of 144 ppi is displayed at twice its actual size on a 72 dpi monitor (only 72 of the 144 pixels can be displayed in one inch on the monitor). The same image would be only slightly larger than its original size on a 120 dpi monitor because 120 of the 144 pixels can be displayed in each inch.

Screen frequency

Screen frequency, also known as *screen ruling*, refers to the number of halftone cells per inch in the halftone screen used to print a grayscale image or color separation. Screen frequency is measured in lines per inch (lpi). The detail in a printed image results from a combination of resolution and screen frequency.

85 lpi

150 lpi

Output resolution

Output resolution refers to the number of dots per inch (dpi) that the output device, such as an imagesetter or laser printer, reduces. Laser print-

ers usually have an output resolution of 300 to 600 dpi. High-end imagesetters can print at 1200 dpi, 2400 dpi, or higher.

1,200 dpi

2,400 dpi

Resolution and image size

Image size describes the physical dimensions of an image. Because the number of pixels in an image is fixed, increasing the size of an image decreases its resolution, and decreasing its size increases its resolution. For example, doubling the resolution of an image (the number of pixels per inch) from 72 to 144 reduces it to one-quarter of its original size. Halving the resolution, for example, from 300 to 150, creates an image that is twice its original dimensions.

If you keep the image the same size, increasing the resolution requires Adobe Photoshop to create new pixels that can make the image appear blurry or out of focus. Because of this, increasing the resolution often produces a poorer quality image than the original. Decreasing the resolution, while keeping the image the same size, causes Adobe Photoshop to delete pixels from the image. As long as you have enough pixel information, decreasing the resolution does not cause a deterioration in the quality of the image.

It's best to scan in or create your image using a high enough resolution so that you don't need to increase the resolution or image size from within Adobe Photoshop.

300 ppi, 1,540K

Current Size: 602K
Width: 82 points
Height: 108 points
Resolution: 300 pixels/inch

150 ppi, 1,540K

Current Size: 602K
Width: 164 points
Height: 216 points
Resolution: 150 pixels/inch

Resolution and file size

The file size of a digital image is proportional to its resolution. Although files with more closely spaced pixels (that is, those with higher resolution) result in images with greater detail, they also result in larger file sizes. For example, the file size for a 4-by-5 image with a resolution of 200 ppi is four times the size of a 4-by-5 image with a resolution of 100 ppi. File size is an important element in determining the disk space you need to store a file and the speed with which you can edit and print a file. Choosing an image resolution needs to be a compromise between capturing all the data you need (which is determined by how you're going to output the file) and keeping file size to a minimum.

For more information on determining scanning resolutions see "Scanning Images" on page 37. For information on changing image size and image resolution in Adobe Photoshop, see "Adjusting Image Resolution" on page 185.

COLOR BASICS

Some familiarity with color theory and terminology can help you understand how color is measured and makes it easier to understand how color values are displayed in the Adobe Photoshop palettes and dialog boxes.

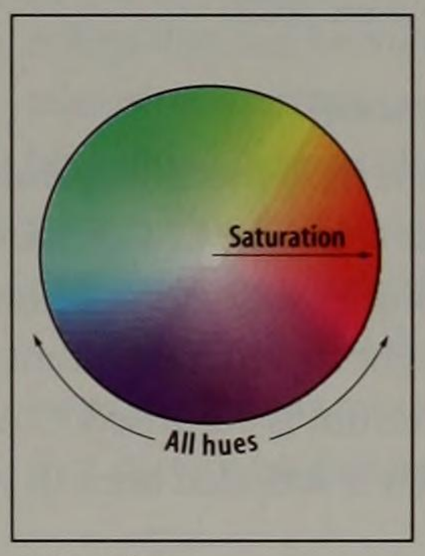
The human eye perceives color according to the wavelength of the light that reaches it. Light that contains the full color spectrum appears as pure white light. In the absence of light, the eye perceives black.

The properties of color can be mathematically defined using one of several *color models*. Four of the most common models are hue, saturation, and brightness (HSB); red, green, and blue (RGB); cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (CMYK); and CIE L*a*b*.

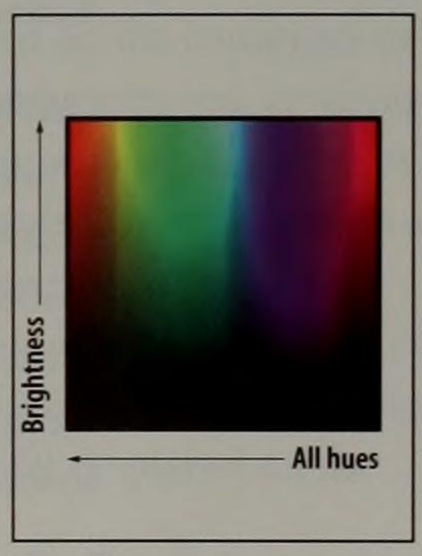
HSB model

The HSB model is based on the human perception of color. In the HSB model, all colors are described in terms of three fundamental characteristics:

- *Hue* is the wavelength of light reflected from or transmitted through an object. More commonly, hue is identified by the name of the color such as red, orange, or green. Hue is measured as a location on the standard color wheel and expressed as an angle between 0° and 360°. See "The Color Wheel" on page 8 for more information.
- *Saturation*, sometimes called *chroma*, is the strength or purity of the color. Saturation represents the amount of gray in proportion to the hue and is measured as a percentage from 0% (gray) to 100% (fully saturated).
- *Brightness* is the relative lightness or darkness of the color and is usually measured as a percentage from 0% (black) to 100% (white).



Saturation

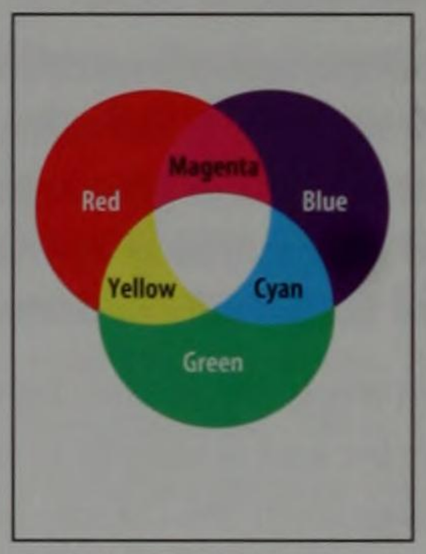


Brightness

RGB model

A large percentage of the visible spectrum can be represented by mixing three basic components of colored light in various proportions. These components are known as the *primary colors*: red, green, and blue (RGB). When the three primary colors overlap, they create the *secondary colors*: cyan, magenta and yellow.

Since the primary colors combine to create white they are also called *additive colors*. Adding all the colors together creates white—that is, all the light is reflected back to the eye. Additive colors are used for lighting, video, film recorders, and monitors. Your monitor, for example, creates color by emitting light through red, green, and blue phosphors.



Additive colors (RGB)

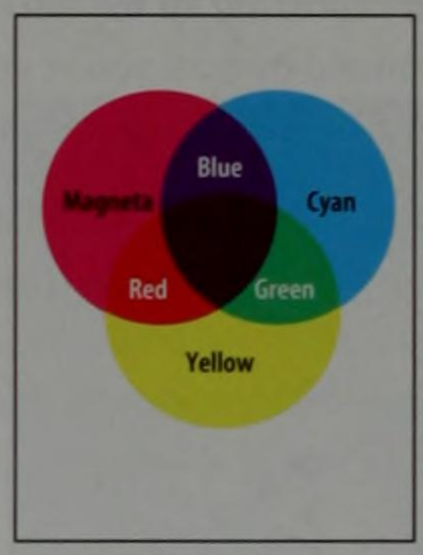
CMYK model

While the RGB model depends on a light source to create color, the CMYK model is based on the absorbing quality of ink printed on paper. As white light strikes translucent inks, a portion of the spectrum is absorbed. Color that is not absorbed is reflected back to your eye.

In theory, pure cyan, magenta, and yellow pigments should combine to absorb all color and produce black; for this reason they are also called *subtractive* colors. Because all printing inks contain some impurities, these three inks actually produce a muddy brown and must be combined with black ink to produce a true black.

The primary and secondary colors are *complementary colors*. Each two subtractive colors creates a primary color.

The CMYK model is used in four-color process printing. In this process, color is reproduced by combining four inks: cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K). (The letter *K* is used to avoid confusion because *B* might also stand for blue.)



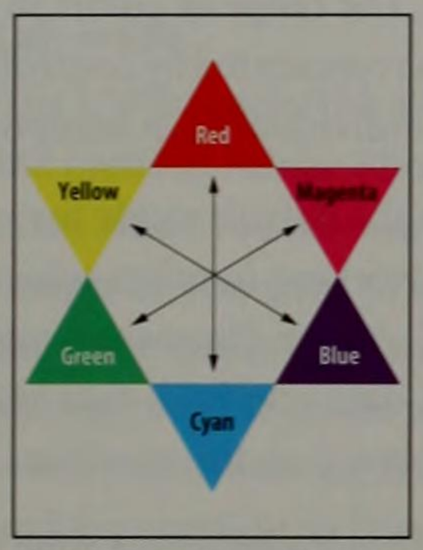
Subtractive color (CMYK)

The color wheel

Much of the color correction work you do in Adobe Photoshop involves the addition and subtraction of color, either to change a color or adjust for color casts. Until you are familiar with the relationship between colors it can be helpful for you to work with a color wheel.

In a color wheel, the primary colors are spaced around a circle, equidistant from one another. The secondary colors are between the primary colors. Each color is directly opposite from its complement and each color is between the two colors used to create it. For example, adding yellow and cyan produces green therefore green is located on the color wheel between yellow and cyan. To add color to an image, you subtract its

complement (the color opposite it on the wheel). For example, to increase the green in an image, you decrease the magenta.



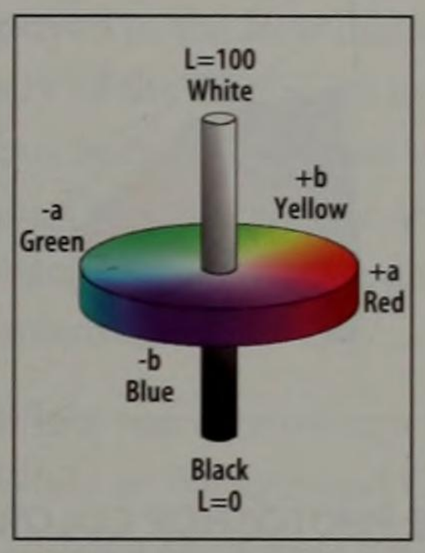
Complementary colors in the color wheel

L*a*b model

The L*a*b color model is based on the original color model proposed by the Commission Internationale d'Eclairage (CIE) in 1931 as an international standard for color measurement. In 1976, this model was refined and named CIE L*a*b.

The Lab model addresses the problem of the variability of color reproduction that results from the use of different monitors or printing devices. Lab color is designed to be *device-independent;* that is, it creates consistent color regardless of the specific devices, such as the monitor, printer, or computer, that you use to create or output the image.

Lab color consists of a *luminance*, or lightness component (*L*), and two chromatic components: the *a* component, which ranges from green to red, and the *b* component, which ranges from blue to yellow.

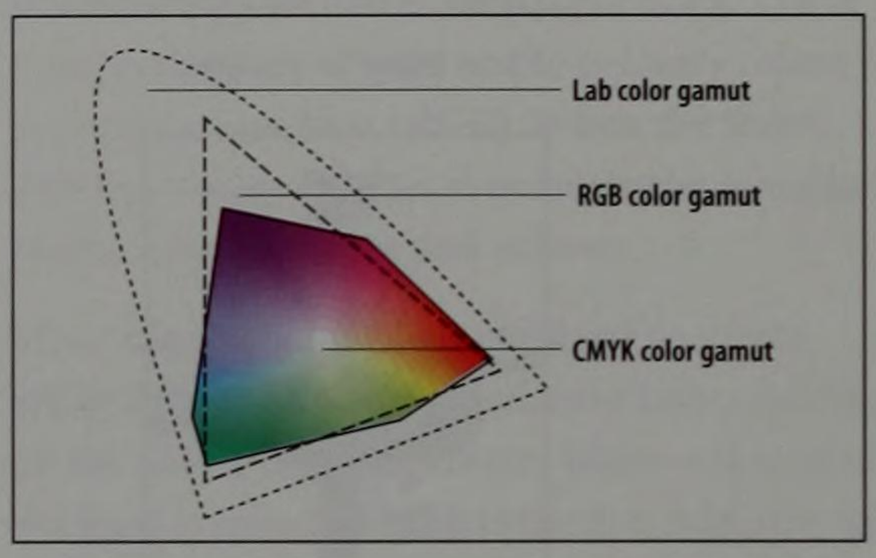


Lab model

Color gamuts

The *gamut* of a color system is the range of colors that can be displayed or printed. The widest variety of colors is in the visible spectrum as viewed in nature. This spectrum contains all the colors that can be viewed by the human eye. Among the color models used in Adobe Photoshop, Lab has the largest gamut and encompasses all the colors in the RGB and CMYK gamuts. The RGB gamut contains the subset of these colors that can be viewed on the computer or television monitor (which emits red, green, and blue light). Some colors, such as pure cyan or pure yellow, can't be displayed accurately on a monitor. The smallest gamut is that of the CMYK model, which consists of colors that can be printed using process color inks. When colors that cannot be printed are displayed on the

screen, they are referred to as "out-of-gamut" colors (that is, they are outside the CMYK gamut).



ADOBE PHOTOSHOP COLOR MODES

A color mode in Adobe Photoshop determines the color model you use to display and print Adobe Photoshop documents. The most commonly used modes are Grayscale, for displaying black-and-white documents; RGB, for displaying color documents on the screen, and printing slides, transparencies, and RGB color prints; CMYK, for printing four-color separations; and Lab for working with Photo CD images. The other modes are Bitmap, Duotone, Indexed Color, and Multichannel. See Chapter 13, "Converting Images," for an explanation of the other modes in Adobe Photoshop.

Grayscale mode

Grayscale mode uses up to 256 shades of gray to represent the image. In Adobe Photoshop, every pixel of a grayscale image has a brightness value ranging from 0 (black) to 255 (white). The values in between 0 and 255 correspond to points on the grayscale spectrum. Grayscale values can also be measured as percentages of black ink coverage (0% is equal to white and 100% is equal to black). Images produced using black-and-white or grayscale scanners are typically displayed in Grayscale mode.

RGB mode

In RGB, various brightness values of red, green, and blue light combine to form the colors on the screen. The range of colors in the visible spectrum is represented by controlling the intensities of the individual RGB components.

RGB is the default mode for new documents. When working in other color modes, such as CMYK, Adobe Photoshop must convert the CMYK data into RGB data before the image can be displayed on the monitor.

For RGB color images, Adobe Photoshop assigns an intensity value to each pixel, ranging from 0 (black) to 255 (white) for each of the RGB components. For example, a bright red color might have an R value of 246, a G value of 20, and a B value of 50. When the values of all three components are equal, the result is a shade of gray. When the value of each component is 255, the result is pure white; when all components have values of 0, the result is pure black.

CMYK mode

The CMYK mode is used when you're preparing an image to be printed using the process colors, cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. The process of converting an RGB image into the CMYK format creates a *color separation.* In general, it's best to convert an image to CMYK mode after you've edited the image. Editing images in RGB mode is more efficient because CMYK files are about one-third larger than RGB files.

Each pixel in a CMYK image is assigned a percentage value for each of the process inks. The lightest (highlight) colors are assigned small percentages of process ink colors, while darker (shadow) colors have higher percentage values. For example, a bright red might contain 2-percent cyan, 93-percent magenta, 90-percent

yellow, and 0-percent black. In CMYK images, pure white is generated when all four components have a value of 0 percent.

Lab mode

The L*a*b mode (the asterisks are dropped from the name in Adobe Photoshop) is used most often when you are working with Photo CD images or you want to edit the luminance and the color values in an image independently. You also use the Lab mode to maintain color fidelity when you're moving images between systems and for printing to PostScript Level 2 printers.

In the Lab mode, the lightness component (L) can range from 0 to 100. The *a* component (green-red axis) and the *b* components (blue-yellow axis) can range from +120 to –120.

Although you might never use Lab color, this color model is an integral part of Adobe Photoshop because it's the internal color model used to convert from one color mode to another. See "Converting to CMYK" on page 225 for more information about this process.

CREATING NEW DOCUMENTS

Choose New from the File menu to create a blank, untitled Photoshop document. When you choose this command, the New dialog box appears. This dialog box lets you name the document and set the width, height, resolution, and mode. You can also indicate if the document background should be white (the default), the current background color, or transparent.

If you want to create a new document that is exactly the same size as an open window, choose New from the File menu, and while the New dialog box is open, choose the image whose size you want to match from the Windows menu. The dimensions in the New dialog box automatically change to match the selected document size.

If an image is on the Clipboard when you choose New, the default dimensions and resolution displayed in the New dialog box correspond to the size of the Clipboard image, so that the image can be pasted without cropping. Holding down the Option key while selecting New causes Adobe Photoshop to ignore the Clipboard information.

When you create a new document using the White or Background Color, the document contains an opaque background. New transparent documents contain a single layer with no color values.

Note: *Because documents created with the transparent option contain a single layer instead of a background they must be saved in Photoshop 3.0 format. Photoshop 3.0 is the only format that supports layers. See "Saving Files" on page 48 for more information.*

OPENING AND SAVING DOCUMENTS

Choose Open from the File menu to open an existing image. In the dialog box, highlight the filename, and click Open. The file type and size of the selected document appear under the file listings. If you do not see the file you want to open, click Show All Files. To see a preview of the file, click Show Thumbnail. You can also open an Adobe Photoshop document by double-clicking its icon from the Finder.

To save a document, choose Save from the File menu. Choose Save As or Save a Copy to give the document a different name or to save the document in a different file format. See "Opening

Files" on page 42 and "Saving Files" on page 48 for more information on opening, saving, and setting previews for documents.

You can have multiple documents open at one time, and each document can have several open windows. For example, you might want two documents open so you can drag selections or layers between them. Or you could have multiple windows open for a single document to view the image at different zoom levels. The total number of documents and windows you can have open depends on the amount of memory you have available. Use the New Window command in the Window menu to open additional windows. The bottom of the Window menu lists all open windows.

SETTING PREFERENCES

Adobe Photoshop includes numerous options which are stored in a *preferences file* in the Preferences folder in your System Folder. The settings stored in this file include general display options, separation setup information, calibration options, display options, tool options, ruler units, and options for exporting information from the Clipboard. Most of these options are set in dialog boxes that can be opened through the Preferences submenu in the File menu.

Each option in the Preferences dialog boxes is explained later in this manual. For example, the Monitor Setup, and Printing Inks Setup options are explained in Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System."

Note: *To return all of Adobe Photoshop's preferences to their default settings, open the Preferences folder in your System Folder and drag the Photoshop 3.0 Prefs file to the trash. A new default preferences file will be created when you next start Adobe Photoshop.*

The following Preferences options apply to general use of the program.

Setting the position of palettes and dialog boxes

By default, Adobe Photoshop saves the positions and grouping of open palettes and the position of movable dialog boxes when you exit the program. Follow these steps if you want the program to open using the preset palette positions (that is, the toolbox, the Brushes palette group, the Picker palette group, and the Layers palette group are displayed along the bottom of the screen).

To open using the preset palette and dialog box positions:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box.

3 Deselect the Restore Dialog Positions option in the More Preferences dialog box, and restart Adobe Photoshop.

Using image previews

You can choose to save your documents with three types of image previews:

- File icons: the icon you see in the Finder
- Thumbnails: the preview icons that appear in the Open dialog box
- Full size previews: images intended for use in applications that open Adobe Photoshop images but require 72 dpi images. This is a PICT preview for non-EPS files.

This Full Size preview option is off by default. Turning off the other preview options can make saving faster and requires less file storage space on your disk.

To set options for preview icons:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box, and then select an image preview option:

- Click Never if you don't want to use preview icons.
- Click Always Save, and then click the icon type to use one or more of the preview icons.
- Click Ask When Saving if you want to assign icons on a file-by-file basis.

Indicating when tasks finish

Selecting the Beep When Tasks Finish option tells Adobe Photoshop to sound a beep whenever the program finishes performing a task requiring a progress bar. When you hear the beep, you can continue working with the program.

To set the beep:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box.

3 Select the Beep When Tasks Finish option in the More Preferences dialog box.

Setting plug-ins preferences

When you install Adobe Photoshop and include the plug-in modules in the installation, these files are automatically placed in the Photoshop Plug-ins folder. You can choose to move the folder location.

To indicate a new location for the plug-in modules:

1 Choose Preferences > Plug-Ins from the File menu. The Plug-ins dialog box appears.

2 Select a folder from the list, and then click the Select button under the folder listing.

If there is a folder selected in the list, the button shows the name of the selected folder. If nothing is selected, the button shows the name of the folder at the top level.

Note: *Clicking the Open button in the Open dialog box opens the selected folder and shows you the files inside the folder. Clicking the Select button selects the named folder.*

3 Restart Adobe Photoshop.

Setting scratch disk preferences

A scratch disk is temporary disk space used for storing data and performing computations on files during a work session when the random-access memory (RAM) is insufficient. (For certain operations, Adobe Photoshop requires 3 to 5 times the size of the file to be available in RAM.)

By default, the Adobe Photoshop program uses your startup disk as the scratch disk; however, you may wish to change the primary scratch disk or designate a secondary scratch disk. The secondary disk is used when the primary disk is full. You will probably want to use your fastest hard disk, or the one with the most available space, as your primary scratch disk.

Note: *Don't use removable cartridge media as scratch disks because they are slower than hard disks and tend to fragment easily. Using cartridges as scratch disks can significantly degrade Adobe Photoshop's performance.*

To change the scratch disk:

1 Choose Preferences > Scratch Disks from the File menu. The Scratch Disk Preferences dialog box appears.

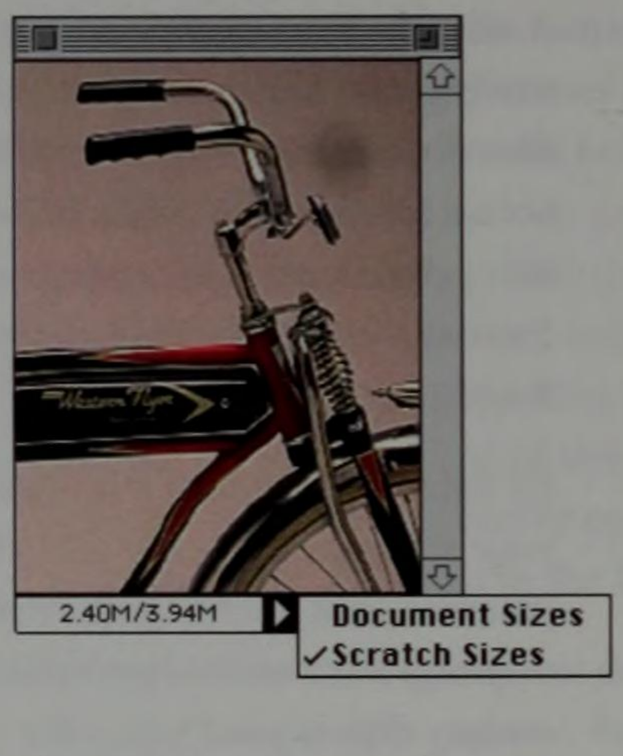
2 Select the disk you want to use from the menus. The new locations don't take effect until you restart the program.

You can track the amount of space you're using on your scratch disk as you work in Adobe Photoshop.

To track the scratch disk space:

Select the triangle in the bottom border of the document window, and choose Scratch Sizes from the menu.

The scratch sizes appear in the box at the lower left corner of the document window.



The first figure shows how much image data (or space) Photoshop is using for all open images, and the second number shows the total amount of RAM available to Photoshop. When the first number exceeds the second number, there is no more RAM available and you are using the scratch disk for additional needed memory.

Setting transparency preferences

When you add layers to a document (or are working in a document created using the Transparent option in the New dialog box), the transparent areas are indicated by a checkerboard pattern. You can change the size and color of this checkerboard pattern.

To change the transparency settings:

1 Choose Preferences > Transparency from the File menu. The Transparency Options dialog box appears.

2 Select a new grid size for the pattern.

If you choose None, the transparent areas in layers appear as white areas.

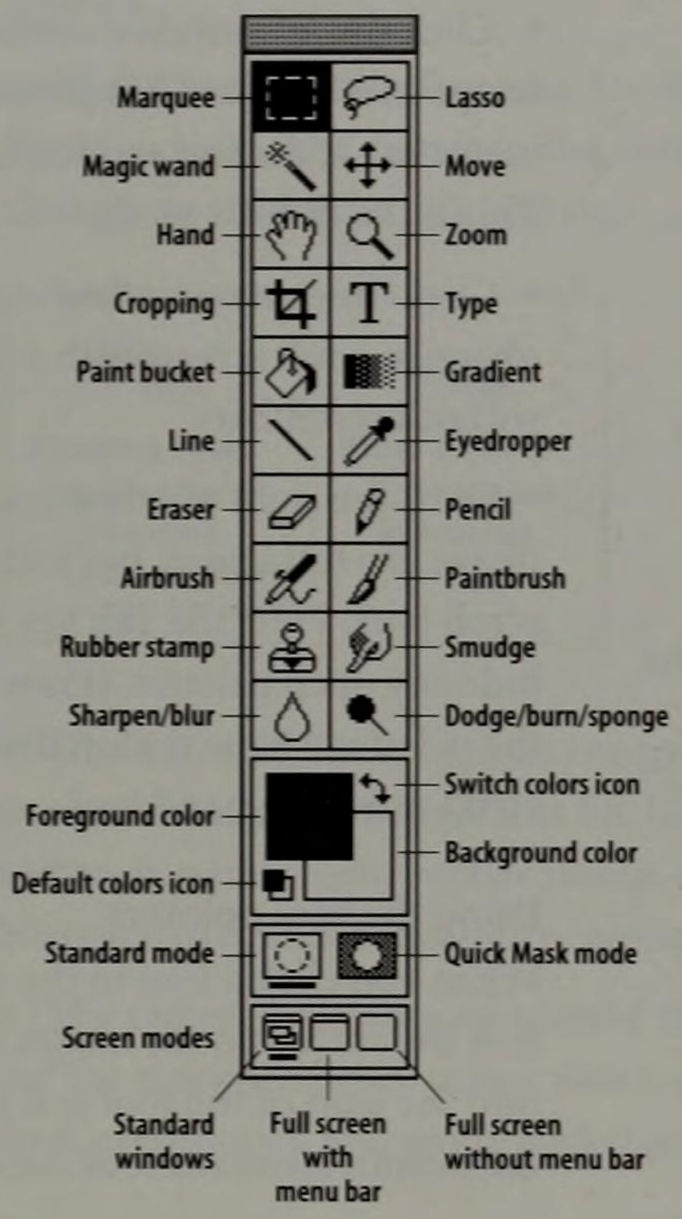
3 Choose the checkerboard colors from the Set menu:

- Choose Light, Medium, or Dark to use a gray pattern.
- Choose a color from the list to display the checkerboard in color.
- Choose Custom, and then click either color selection box (which displays the current pattern colors) to choose a custom color from the Color Picker.

USING THE TOOLBOX

The tools in the toolbox allow you to select, paint, edit, and view images. The toolbox also contains controls for choosing the foreground

and background colors, switching to Quick Mask mode, and changing the screen display mode.



Most tools are affected by the settings in the Brushes and Options palettes when you're painting or editing an image.

To select a tool:

Click a tool to select it in the toolbox. Option-click to select hidden tools in the same position (for example, to switch between the blur and sharpen tools or between the dodge, burn, and sponge tools).

The tools

- Use the *marquee tool* to make rectangular and elliptical selections.
- Use the *lasso tool* to make freehand selections.
- Use the *magic wand tool* to make selections based on the color similarities of adjacent pixels. This tool is useful when you want to select part of an image (for example, a yellow flower) without tracing the outline with the lasso tool.
- Use the *move tool* to move selections and layers.
- Use the *cropping tool to* select part of an image and discard the remainder.
- Use the *type tool t*o enter text on an image.
- Use the *hand tool* to scroll through an image that does not fit in the active window.
- Use the *zoom tool* to magnify an image when you are performing close, detailed work and to reduce an image when you want an overall view.
- Use the *paint bucket tool* to fill areas that are similar in color and adjacent to the point you click. Areas are filled with the foreground color.
- Use the *gradient fill tool* to create a gradient fill, which is a gradual transition from the foreground to the background color, or from the foreground color to transparent.
- Use the *line tool* to paint straight line segments.
- Use the *eyedropper tool* to select the foreground and background colors by sampling colors in an image.
- Use the *eraser tool* to erase pixels and change them to the same color as the background color or to restore parts of a saved image.
- Use the *pencil tool* to paint hard-edged freehand or straight lines with the foreground color.
- Use the *airbrush tool* to lay down a diffused spray of the foreground color on an image.
- Use the *paintbrush tool* to paint soft-edged strokes using the foreground color.

- Use the *rubber stamp tool* to take a sample of part of an image and place an exact copy (or *clone*) of that image elsewhere in the same image, or in another image.
- Use the *smudge tool* to simulate the effect of dragging a finger through wet paint.
- Use the *blur/sharpen tools* to blur or sharpen part of an image.
- Use the *dodge/burn/sponge* tools to lighten, darken, or change the saturation of part of an image.

Foreground and background color controls

- Use the *foreground color control* to change the foreground color. This is the color you use to paint with the painting tools (for example, the paint bucket, line, pencil, airbrush, and paintbrush tools). To change the foreground color while painting, hold down the Option key. This temporarily turns the painting tool into the eyedropper tool. Click a color with the eyedropper to make it the new foreground color.
- Use the *background color control* to change the background color. This is the color that appears when you use the eraser or the gradient fill tool, or when a non-floating selection is moved.
- Use the *switch colors icon* to switch the foreground and background colors in the color selection boxes.
- Use the *default colors icon* to return to the black foreground and white background colors.

Mode controls

- Use the *Standard mode* to make selections and perform standard editing and painting tasks.
- Use *Quick Mask mode* to create and edit a temporary mask. See "Using Quick Mask Mode" on page 152 for more information.

Window controls

The window controls at the bottom of the toolbox control the window display.

- Click the left window control to display an image in a standard Macintosh window, with a menu bar at the top and scroll bars on the sides. This is the default mode.
- Click the center window control to display the image in a full screen with a menu bar but without scroll bars.
- Click the right window control to display the image in a full screen, but without a menu bar or scroll bars. Press the Tab key if you also want to hide any open palettes. (Press Tab again to show the palettes.) Note that in this setting, you must scroll using the hand tool.

Using the tool pointers

When you click a tool in the toolbox and position the cursor on the image, the cursor changes into the icon of the tool you selected. These are the default standard tool cursors.

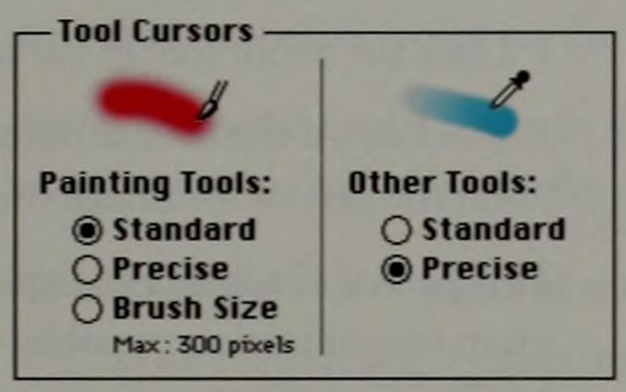
Each of the cursors has a different *hot spot*, the point where a selection or action such as painting begins. When you want to edit or apply paint with precision, you may want to change the cursors into cross hairs. The cross hairs give you greater accuracy because you can focus the hot spot of the cursor (the intersection of the cross hairs) on the area you want to paint or edit.

When you're using the painting tools, you can also choose to display the cursor as a brush shape representing the current brush size.

To set precise tool cursors:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Click Precise under Painting Tools, Other Tools, or both. The cursor in the dialog box changes to reflect the new setting.



- The Painting Tools options control the cursors for the eraser, gradient fill, line, pencil, airbrush, paintbrush, rubber stamp, smudge, blur/sharpen, and dodge/burn/sponge tools.
- The Other Tools options control the cursors for the marquee, lasso, magic wand, cropping tool, eyedropper, and paint bucket tools.

To set brush shape cursors:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Click the Brush Size option under Painting Tools. The cursor in the dialog box changes to reflect the new setting.

When you're using the brush size cursor with very small brushes, the circle is surrounded by four dots for finer accuracy.

To switch between cursor settings:

Press the Caps Lock key. Press Caps Lock again to return to your original setting.

IF YOU'VE CHOSEN:	PRESSING CAPS LOCK DISPLAYS:
Standard	Precise
Precise	Brush sizes (painting tools only)
Brush Sizes	Precise (painting tools only)

ZOOMING

The zoom tool in the toolbox and the Zoom commands in the Window menu allow you to magnify and reduce your view of a document. The document's title bar displays the magnification factor at all times; for example, 2:1 for a magnification by a factor of 2, and 1:2 for a reduction by a factor of 2. You can magnify and reduce up to 16 times the original view of the document.

Keep in mind that the 1:1 view of a document displays an image based on the screen resolution and the image resolution, not on the actual document dimensions. Because images are displayed at a screen resolution of 72 pixels per inch, documents with an image resolution higher than 72 ppi appear larger on-screen than documents with a low resolution. When you use the zoom tool, you are not actually changing the size of a document—only your view of the image.

See "Resolution Basics" on page 4 for more information on screen and image resolution.

To use the zoom tool:

1 Click the zoom tool in the toolbox. The Zoom Tool Options appear in the Options palette.

2 Position the pointer on the image, and click to zoom in; Option-click to zoom out.

Each click magnifies or reduces the image. If only part of the image can be displayed, it is centered around the point you click. When you reach the maximum magnification or reduction factor, the center of the zoom tool appears empty.

Shortcut: *Press ⌘-Option + to zoom in to the maximum magnification. Press ⌘-Option – to zoom out to the minimum magnification.*

To restore the 1:1 view of a document, click Zoom 1:1 in the Zoom Tool Options palette (or double-click the zoom tool in the toolbox).

To make the image fit the screen when working with large images, click Zoom to Screen in the Zoom Tool Options palette (or double-click the hand tool). This option sets the window to the largest size that can fit on your monitor and still contain the entire image.

If you are working on a smaller monitor, you may not always want to use the largest possible window size. Click Never Resize Windows on the Zoom Tool Options palette to keep windows the same size when magnification changes.

Shortcuts: *To activate the zoom-in tool while using another tool, press ⌘-spacebar. To activate the zoom-out tool while using another tool, press Option-spacebar.*

To use the Zoom In and Zoom Out commands:

Choose Zoom In from the Window menu to magnify by a factor of 1; choose Zoom Out to reduce by a factor of 1.

To zoom to a specific factor:

1 Choose Zoom Factor from the Window menu. The Zoom Factor dialog box appears.

2 Enter a number in the Factor text box and click Magnification or Reduction.

To magnify part of an image using a selection marquee:

1 Click the zoom tool in the toolbox.

2 Hold down the mouse button and drag to select the part of the image you want to magnify. This part of the image is displayed at the maximum magnification possible, up to a factor of 16. The magnification factor used is determined by the size of the area you select.

Selected area

Magnified view

USING RULERS

Choose Show Rulers from the Window menu to display rulers along the top and left side of the active window. When rulers are displayed and you move the pointer into the active window, markers appear on the rulers to indicate the pointer's current position. To hide the rulers, choose Hide Rulers.

To change the rulers' zero origin:

1 Position the pointer in the upper left corner of the window, directly under the close box.

2 Hold down the mouse button and drag the pointer onto the image. A set of crosshairs appears, marking the new origin on the rulers.

Changing the ruler origins allows you to measure from a specific point on the image.

Note: *To reset the ruler origin to its default value, double-click the upper left corner of the rulers.*

To change the rulers' units of measurement:

1 Choose Preferences > Units from the File menu. The Unit Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Choose the units you want to use from the Ruler Units menu.

3 Choose a point and pica size. Leave the setting at PostScript if you are printing to a PostScript device.

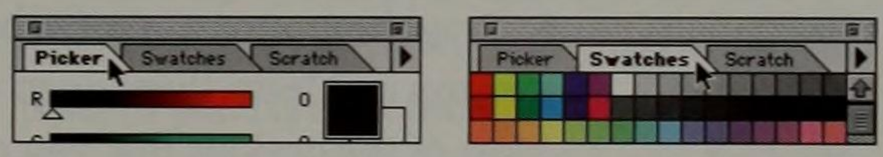
4 Indicate a column width. Column widths are used in some layout programs to specify the display of an image across columns. The setting in this option is used by the Image Size and Canvas Size commands. See "Using the Image Size Command" on page 191 and "Using the Canvas Size Command" on page 192 for more information about these column size options.

WORKING WITH PALETTES

Adobe Photoshop includes ten palettes: the Brushes palette, the Channels palette, the Commands palette, the Info palette, the Layers palette, the Options palette, the Paths palette, the Picker palette, the Scratch palette, and the Swatches palette.

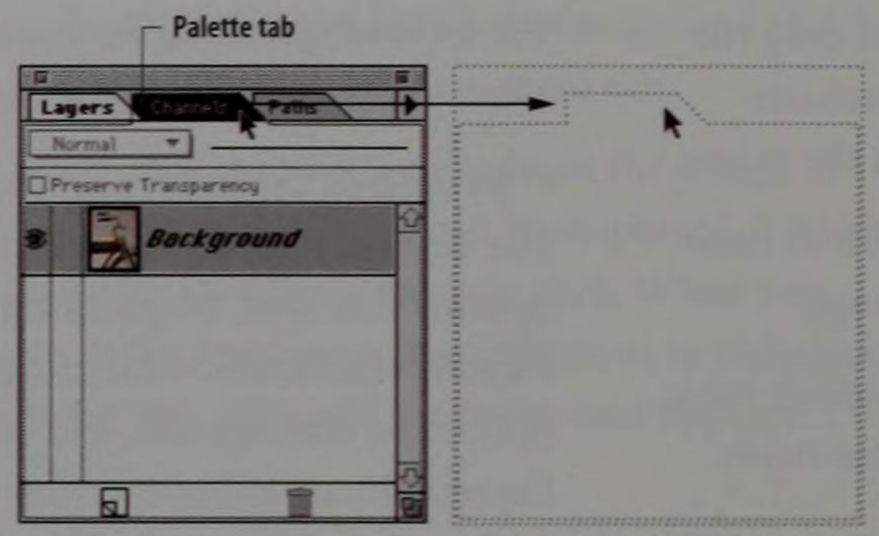
The following techniques can help you save time when you are working with palettes:

- By default, the palettes appear in three groups. The Brushes/Options group contains the options you need for painting and editing. The Picker/Swatches/Scratch group contains the options to choose, edit, and create colors. The Layers/Channels/Paths group contains the options for adding and editing these elements in an image. The Info palette and Commands palette appear as individual palettes.
- Choose the appropriate Palettes > Show command from the Windows menu to display the group with the selected palette in front. You can also display palettes by using the function keys assigned to them on the Commands palette.
- Click a palette's tab to make it appear at the front of the group.

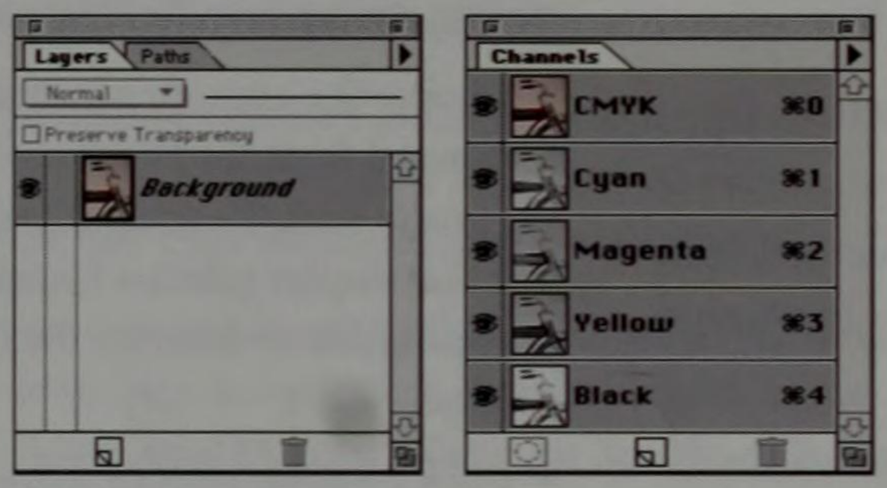


- To rearrange, separate, or reorganize palettes, drag the palette's tab. Dragging a palette outside of an existing group creates a new group. Drag-

ging a palette over an existing group adds the palette to that group. To move an entire group, drag its title bar.



Click the palette tab . . . *and drag the palette to a new location*

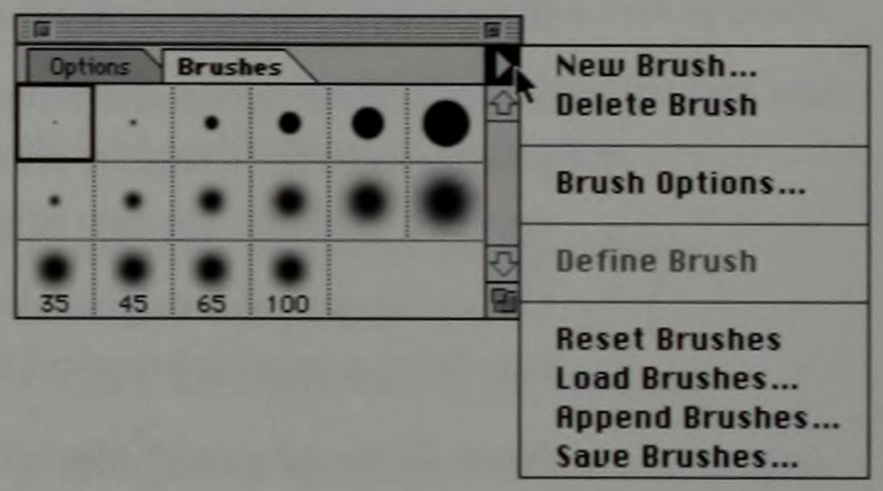


Palettes separated

• Drag the groups to a convenient place on your desktop and leave them open while you work. Most of the options that you use with Adobe Photoshop appear on the palettes.

• If the Restore Dialog Positions option is deselected in the More Preferences dialog box, the palettes will appear in the same locations and groupings the next time you open Adobe Photoshop. See "Setting the Position of Palettes and Dialog Boxes" on page 12 for information on using this option.

• To display a palette's menu commands, select the triangle next to the palette name.



• To change the height of a palette, drag the size box at the lower right corner of the palette.

• To increase your work space, click the zoom box in the far right of the title bar (or double-click a palette's tab) to collapse the group (if you resized the palette, the first click of the zoom box returns the group to the default size and the second click collapses it). Submenus are still available when a palette is collapsed.

• To reduce the group to the palette titles only, Option-click the zoom box or double-click a tab.

• To hide palette groups, choose the appropriate Palettes > Hide command from the Window menu, or click the group's close box. Choosing a Hide command for any palette in a group hides the entire group.

• Press Tab to hide or display all open palette groups, including the toolbox.

Each palette is described later in this manual. For example, the Brushes and Options palettes are covered in Chapter 6, "Using the Painting, Editing, Fill, and Type Tools." The Info and Commands palettes are discussed in the next sections.

Using the Info palette

The Info palette provides information on the selected tool and on the color values beneath the pointer.

Depending on the tool you're using, you can also use the Info palette to measure size, distance, and angle of rotation. When most of the tools are in use, the Info palette displays the *x* and *y* coordinates of the pointer's position in the document (using the current ruler units).

The color values are displayed for two color modes. You can choose to remove the position information, display a single mode, or change the two modes displayed on the Info palette.

To display the Info palette:

Choose Palettes > Show Info from the Window menu.

To change the Info palette options:

1 Choose Palette Options from the Info palette menu to open the Info Options dialog box.

2 Deselect either of the Show Color Readout options to display only one color mode.

3 Choose the display mode from the menus for each readout.

The color mode determines the type of numerical values used for pixels that appear in the Info palette. The Actual Color mode displays the values in the current color mode of the document window. For example, if you are viewing the composite channel of an RGB image and have Actual Color chosen, the colors are defined using red, green, and blue values. If, however, you are viewing an alpha channel with Actual Color chosen, the Info palette displays in grayscale values.

The Total Ink mode displays the total percentage of all CMYK ink at the pointer's current location, based on the values set in the Separation Setup dialog box.

Choosing any other option from the Mode menu displays the values in the chosen mode.

Note: *If you select the same color readout mode from both menus, only one color readout panel appears in the Info palette.*

4 Select the position options you want:

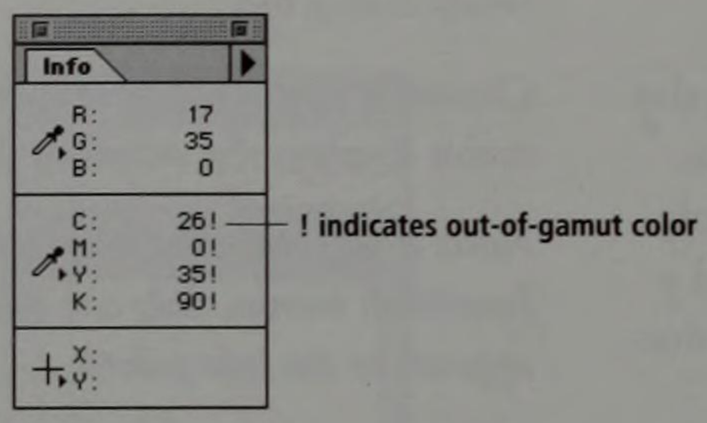
- Deselect the Show Mouse Coordinates option to turn off the display of the mouse position.
- Choose from the Ruler Units menu to change the units of measurement.

Shortcut: *You can also display the Info palette options for measurement units and modes by clicking the crosshair or eyedropper icon in the Info palette.*

The Info palette also displays the following information:

- When the eyedropper is in use, the Info palette displays the color information for the pixel or pixel area at the tip of the eyedropper. The size of the area measured depends on the Sample Size option you have chosen in the Eyedropper Tools Options palette. See "Using the Eyedropper Tool" on page 119 for more information.
- A small exclamation point next to a CMYK value indicates that the color is out of the printable CMYK color gamut; it cannot be accurately printed as it appears on the monitor. See

"Managing Out-of-Gamut Colors" on page 196 for information on adjusting out-of-gamut colors.



- When the marquee tool is in use, the Info palette displays the height (H) and width (W) of the marquee as you drag. This marquee size information is displayed as long as there is a selection in the image.
- When the cropping tool or zoom tool is in use, the Info palette displays the height (H), width (W), and angle of rotation of the cropping marquee.
- When you use the Scale command, the Info palette displays the height (H) and width (W) of the scaled selection and the percentage change in height and width as you drag.
- When you use the Rotate command, the Info palette displays the angle of rotation.
- When the line tool or gradient fill tool is in use, or when you drag a selection, the Info palette displays the *x* and *y* coordinates of your starting position, the angle (A), the distance (D), the change in *X* (ΔX), and the change in *Y* (ΔY) as you drag, and the height (H) and width (W) of the selected area. To use the line tool as a measuring tape, simply define a line width of 0 in the Line Tool Options dialog box.
- When you use any of the color adjustment dialog boxes (such as Levels, Curves, Replace Color, or Selective Color), the Info palette displays the before and after color values of the pixels. See "Previewing Color Values" on page 200 for complete information on how to use this feature.

Using the Commands palette

The Commands palette allows you to choose frequently used commands with a single click. When the Commands palette is displayed on the screen, clicking a command in the palette performs the action or opens the appropriate dialog box. Adobe Photoshop includes some preassigned commands which you can modify. If you're using a keyboard that has function keys, you can assign function keys to specific keys.

Several specialized Commands palettes are included with the Adobe Photoshop software. These include commands used for prepress functions, color corrections, and image manipulation.

To display the Commands palette:

Choose Palettes > Show Commands from the Window menu.

To add commands to the Commands palette:

1 Choose New Command from the Commands palette's menu to open the New Command dialog box.

2 Choose the command you want to assign to the palette from the menus in the menu bar or from the palette menus.

3 Enter a new name for the command if desired.

4 Choose an unassigned function key from the Function Key menu. Click the Shift option if you want to use the Shift key in conjunction with the function key. (Using the Shift key with a function key allows you to double the number of commands you can assign to any Commands palette).

5 Choose a color from the Color menu to make the command name appear in color. Use a single color to visually identify related commands.

6 Click OK to add the command. The command is added to the bottom of the palette.

To edit the commands in the Commands palette:

1 Choose Edit Commands in the Commands palette's menu to open the Edit Commands dialog box.

- To add a command, click New to display the New Command dialog box. Follow the steps in the previous section to add the command.
- To delete a command, select the command in the command listing, and click Delete. The command is removed from the list, and the remaining commands move up.
- To change the assignment of a command, click Change. The Change Command dialog box appears so you can edit the command, the function key, or the color.
- To reorder the commands, select the command you want to move, and drag it up or down in the Edit Commands dialog box list. As you drag, a line appears. When you release the mouse button, the command appears above the line.
- To display the palette in multiple columns, enter a value between 1 and 7 in the Columns text box.

2 Click OK when you have finished editing the Commands palette.

To create and load alternate command palettes:

Use Save Commands and Load Commands in the palette's menu. Several alternative Commands palettes are included with your Adobe Photoshop software.

To add commands from another command palette to the current palette:

Use the Append Commands command. The new commands are added to the bottom of the palette. If any appended command key assignments conflict with the commands in the current palette, the key assignments remain for the current palette commands, and the commands you're appending are added without key assignments.

CORRECTING A MISTAKE

You don't need to be overly concerned about making mistakes while using the Adobe Photoshop program. Most operations can be undone using the Undo command in the Edit menu. To correct a mistake, choose Undo immediately after performing the action. This command reverses only the last action that you performed.

If an operation can't be undone, the Undo choice is dimmed and reads "Can't Undo."

RESTORING AN IMAGE

At times, you may want to undo a series of operations that you have performed. In this case, you use the Revert command in the File menu rather than the Undo command. When you choose Revert, you lose all changes made to the image since the last time it was saved.

You can restore *part* of an image to its previously saved version using the From Saved or From Snapshot options for the rubber stamp tool or the Saved option in the Fill dialog box. You can also selectively restore an image using the Erase to Saved option for the eraser tool. See "Using the Rubber Stamp Tool" on page 104, "Filling Selections" on page 108, and "Using the Eraser Tool" on page 102 for more information on these options.

ENTERING FILE INFORMATION

Adobe Photoshop supports the information standard developed by the Newspaper Association of America (NAA) and the International Press Telecommunications Council (IPTC) to identify transmitted text and images. This standard incudes entries for captions, keywords, categories, credits, and original.The captions and keyword entries can also be searched by some third-party image browsers, such as Aldus Fetch.

To enter information about a file:

1 Choose File Info from the File menu. The File Info dialog box appears.

2 Choose an attribute from the Section menu. By default, the dialog box opens to the Caption section.

The attributes are described in the following sections.

3 Choose additional sections from the menu if desired, and fill in the file information. Click Next (or press ⌘-N) to move in sequence through the sections.

4 When you've finished entering information, click OK.

Entering a caption

An image caption can contain up to 2000 characters. Up to 32 characters can be entered in the Caption Writer field. Both the Headline text and the Special Instructions can contain up to 255 characters.

Note: *To print the caption under an Adobe Photoshop image, click the Caption option in the Page Setup dialog box.*

Entering keywords

Keywords provide a way to categorize and search for an image. Type a word (or up to 31 characters) in the text box and click Add to display the word in the keyword list. To replace a keyword, select the word in the list, type the replacement in the text box, and click Replace. To delete a keyword, select the word in the list, and click Delete. You can have as many keywords as you want. Some image browser applications can search using these keywords.

Entering categories

Enter an alphabetic category code of three characters. Where available, a list of categories is maintained by the local AP regional registry.

To include the image in supplemental categories, type a category in the text box, and click Add. To replace a category, select the word in the list, type the replacement in the text box, and then click Replace. To delete a category, select the word in the list, and click Delete.

The Urgency menu is used to specify the editorial urgency of the image and not its handling priority.

Entering credits

When using copyrighted images, it is essential that you provide the correct credit for the work. You can enter byline, credit, and source information in the Credits section text boxes. All entries are limited to 32 characters.

Entering origins

The origins section provides critical information on the history of the image. The Object Name field contains a short identification for the object, such as Montgomery Street. You can enter up to 64 characters for the name. The date entry can be in any format. To enter today's date in a short text format (for example, Oct. 25, 1994), click Today.

The City, Province-State, and Original Transmission Reference fields can contain up to 32 characters. The Country can contain up to 64 characters.

PUBLISHING AND SUBSCRIBING

You can use the Publish and Subscribe feature to share data dynamically with other applications. For example, you can publish a Photoshop file placed in a page layout program document and then subscribe to that file from the document: any modifications that you make to the Photoshop file are then automatically updated in the page layout document when you save the file. You can also choose to manually update published files.

Note: *Adobe Photoshop publishes in PICT, EPS, and TIFF formats. Documents published as EPS files are saved in binary format.*

To publish a Photoshop file:

1 Open the file containing the image that you want to publish, and choose Create Publisher from the Edit menu. The Publisher dialog box appears.

2 Type a name for the published file (called an *edition*), specify its location, and choose PICT, EPS, or TIFF, depending on the format required by the subscribing application.

3 Click Publish.

4 Open the document into which you want to place the Photoshop file, click to set an insertion point, and choose the Subscribe To command in the Edit menu to subscribe to the published file. See your subscribing application's documentation for more information on using the Subscribe feature.

Each time you save the published Photoshop file, the file is automatically updated in any applications that subscribe to that file. If you don't want your published files to be updated automatically, you can change to manual updating.

To change from automatic to manual updating of published files:

1 Choose Publisher Options from the Edit menu. The Publisher Options dialog box appears.

2 Click Manually; then click OK. The file is now updated only when you click the Send Publisher Now button in the Publisher Options dialog box.

CALIBRATING YOUR SYSTEM

Chapter 2: Calibrating Your System

Adobe Photoshop is designed to give you precise control over calibration. This chapter provides a brief explanation of calibration and provides step-by-step instructions on how to use the Adobe Photoshop calibration features to achieve the highest-quality output possible on your system.

ABOUT CALIBRATION

Calibration is the process of adjusting your monitor and the Adobe Photoshop color conversion parameters to compensate for various facts that affect both the on-screen image and its conversion to printed output.

There are two types of calibration that are critical to getting expected results when using Adobe Photoshop: device calibration and system calibration. *Device calibration* is calibrating your monitor and making adjustments for the imagesetter that you'll use when you print your color separations. *System calibration* is adjusting the Adobe Photoshop settings that affect the image when you're converting an RGB image to a CMYK image.

HOW THE ADOBE PHOTOSHOP COLOR CALIBRATION TOOLS WORK

Gamma calibration lets you fine-tune your monitor by making adjustments to reduce color casts and compensate for *gamma shift* (or changes in midtone values). The monitor calibration control panel included with Adobe Photoshop affects only the monitor display. In comparison, the color calibration dialog boxes in Adobe Photoshop—Monitor Setup, Printing Inks Setup, and Separation Setup—work primarily by modifying the way the program converts colors between RGB and CMYK modes. Therefore, adjusting options in any of these dialog boxes has two important implications:

- Because monitors are RGB devices, Adobe Photoshop must convert an image in CMYK mode into RGB data to display it on the monitor. This means that adjusting the color calibration options affects how a document is displayed in CMYK mode. These options do not, however, affect the display of documents in RGB mode.
- While the color calibration options may have a profound effect on how a CMYK document is displayed, *they affect the actual image data only when you convert the file from RGB to CMYK mode*. Therefore, if you convert an image to CMYK mode and then change the calibration settings, you must revert to the original RGB image and then convert to CMYK again for the new settings to take effect.

Note: *In addition to affecting how colors are converted between CMYK and RGB modes, the settings in the Monitor Setup dialog box also affect the overall brightness display of all images.*

CALIBRATING IN ADOBE PHOTOSHOP: AN OVERVIEW

1 Calibrate your monitor (page 28).

2 Enter Monitor Setup information (page 29).

3 Enter Printing Inks Setup information (page 31.)

4 Print a preseparated CMYK proof (page 32).

5 Calibrate the on-screen CMYK image to the proof (page 33).

STEP 1: CALIBRATE YOUR MONITOR

Before you begin working in Adobe Photoshop, use the Adobe Photoshop Gamma control panel or a third-party utility to calibrate your monitor. This will ensure that your monitor grays are as neutral as possible.

Adobe Photoshop includes a Control Panel for calibrating the gamma, color balance, and white and black points of color and grayscale monitors. The settings in the Gamma control panel device let you eliminate any color cast in your monitor display and standardize the display of images on different monitors so that an image looks the same with different monitor and video card combinations.

If you have a third-party monitor calibration utility installed, such as the Radius Calibrator or SuperMatch Display Calibrator from SuperMac Technology, you should use either that utility or the Adobe Photoshop Gamma control panel, not both. A third-party calibration program updates Photoshop's color space descriptor file; therefore using both systems will miscalibrate the monitor. If you are using a third-party calibration, you can skip the following section on the Gamma control panel. Instead, enter the values provided by your utility in the Gamma text box of the Monitor Setup dialog box. Once you have calibrated your monitor, you should not have to recalibrate unless you change any of the factors affecting calibration. If you change the room lighting or readjust the monitor brightness and contrast controls, you will need to recalibrate the system. For this reason, it's recommended that you tape down your monitor's brightness and contrast controls after calibrating the monitor, and that you maintain consistent room lighting conditions.

To calibrate your monitor using the Gamma control panel device:

1 Make sure that your monitor has been turned on for at least a half hour so that the monitor display has stabilized.

2 Set the room lighting at the level that you plan to maintain; then adjust the brightness and contrast controls on your monitor. Because changes in these factors can dramatically affect your display, you should close your room off from external light sources and tape down the monitor and room lighting controls once they have been set.

3 Change the background color on your monitor to a light gray. This prevents the background color from interfering with your color perception and helps you adjust the display to a neutral gray.

To change your background color, choose Control Panels from the Apple menu, and open the General Controls panel. Click the white "menu bar" in the miniature desktop until a black-and-gray checkerboard pattern appears; then click the gray swatch below the miniature desktop to make your desktop gray. Close the General Controls.

4 While still in the Control Panels window, double-click the Gamma control panel.

Note: *If you do not see the Gamma control panel, locate the file on the Adobe Photoshop software disks. Drag the Gamma icon into the Controls Panels folder in the System folder.*

The Gamma control panel appears. Use the On and Off buttons to turn the Gamma software on and off. If you turn off the Gamma software, the monitor's default values are used.

5 Click a target gamma at the top of the control panel.

A target gamma of 1.8 is recommended for printing CMYK images. If you're sending your output to an RGB device (for example, a monitor, film recorder, or RGB printer), use a higher target. Images intended for video should have a target gamma of 2.2, which is the typical gamma of most television sets. If you plan to print or display the image using another application or on another platform, use a gamma of 1.8; that value is the closest match for uncorrected gamma.

6 Hold up a white piece of paper similar in color to the stock on which you will print. Click the White Pt button, and drag the three slider triangles until the monitor white matches the paper as closely as possible. This process allows you to compensate for the bluish tint found in most monitor displays.

For maximum accuracy, view the paper under controlled lighting, such as a light box or a combination of fluorescent and tungsten light bulbs.

7 Adjust the gamma by dragging the Gamma Adjustment slider until the solid gray areas match the patterned gray areas in the gamma strip above the slider.

8 Adjust the color balance by clicking the Balance button and dragging the three slider triangles until the gray areas in the strip below the sliders become a neutral gray. This adjustment controls the monitor's mixture of red, green, and blue, and compensates for color casts in the monitor.

9 Adjust the black point by clicking the Black Pt button and dragging the three slider triangles until no color tint appears in the shadow tones in the lower strip and you can see a distinct gradation between each swatch.

10 If necessary, readjust the color balance and then the gamma.

11 Close the Gamma control panel when you've finished making adjustments.

Calibrating multiple monitors

If you are using more than one monitor, you can drag the Gamma control panel onto the next screen and repeat the calibration steps for each monitor. When calibrating multiple monitors, it can be helpful to open an image with a wide dynamic range and a good selection of colors (for example, the *Olé No Moiré* image included in the Adobe software package). Create another window for the image by choosing the New Window command from the Window menu, and drag the image to the second monitor. Use the image to determine when the calibration is correct.

Saving and loading custom gamma settings

In general, you should save and load custom gamma settings for paper stocks with different tints. You can also save gamma settings for different monitors. To reuse the gamma settings, use the Save Settings and Load Settings buttons in the Gamma control panel.

STEP 2: ENTER THE MONITOR SETUP INFORMATION

Once you have calibrated your monitor, enter your monitor specifications in the Monitor Setup dialog box.

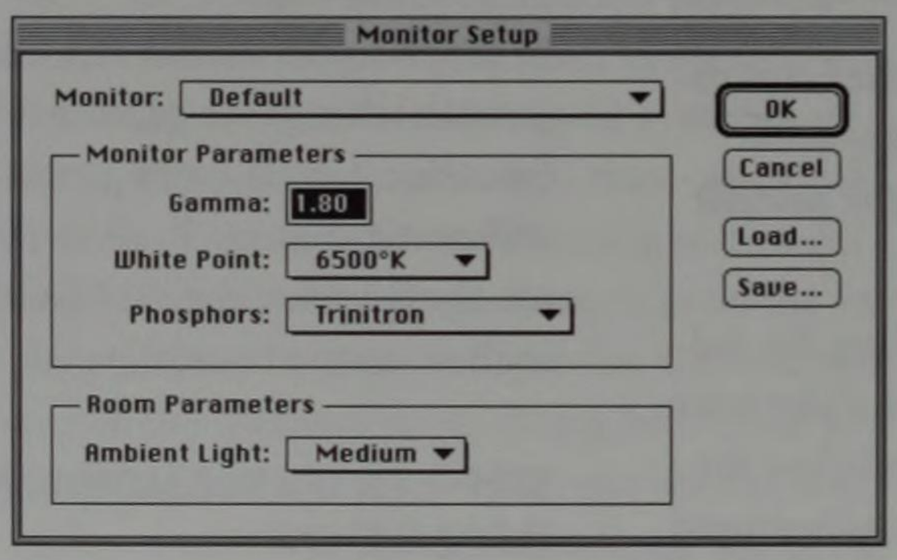
Adobe Photoshop uses the information in the Monitor Setup dialog box to compensate for factors affecting the monitor display: the target gamma and white point, the type of phosphors in the monitor, and the room lighting conditions.

In addition to affecting the overall monitor display, the Monitor Setup information is used to determine how the program converts colors between modes. This means that Monitor Setup options will affect how an RGB image is converted to CMYK mode and how CMYK (or duotone) colors are displayed on-screen. If you change these settings after you have converted an image to CMYK mode, only the display is affected. You must revert to the original RGB image (using the Revert command in the File menu) and then reconvert the image to CMYK for these changes to affect the separation data.

See "Converting from One Mode to Another" on page 220 for more information on how the monitor settings affect mode conversions.

To enter Monitor Setup information:

1 Choose Preferences > Monitor Setup from the File menu. The Monitor Setup dialog box appears.



2 Select the monitor you are adjusting from the Monitor menu.

3 Enter the target Gamma value that you entered in the Gamma control panel. If you are using a third-party utility, enter the gamma value set by that device.

4 Select a setting from the White Point menu.

If you are using a third-party monitor calibration device, choose the white point value established by that device; otherwise, leave this value at the default value of 6500K. If the value you need is not in the menu, select Custom, and type in your own values.

5 Select the monitor type from the Phosphors menu.

If the correct type is not in the menu, choose Custom, and enter the red, green, and blue chromaticity coordinates as specified by your monitor manufacturer. This option compensates for the different red, green, and blue phosphors used by monitors to display color.

6 Select a setting from the Ambient Light menu.

- Select High if your room lighting is brighter than the on-screen image.
- Select Low if your room lighting is not as bright as the screen.
- Select Medium if your room and monitor light levels are about the same.

Remember that it is important to maintain consistent room lighting.

Saving and loading monitor settings

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Monitor Setup dialog box to save and load the settings for different monitors or different lighting environments. You might also want to save the monitor settings if you are using different gamma settings for output devices.

STEP 3: ENTER THE PRINTING INKS SETUP INFORMATION

The Printing Inks Setup dialog box information specifies the properties of the inks and paper stock you use to reproduce your color plates, as well as the *dot gain* (or change in the halftone dot size caused by ink absorption on the output device). This dialog box also contains an option for specifying dot gain for grayscale images.expected on the output device.

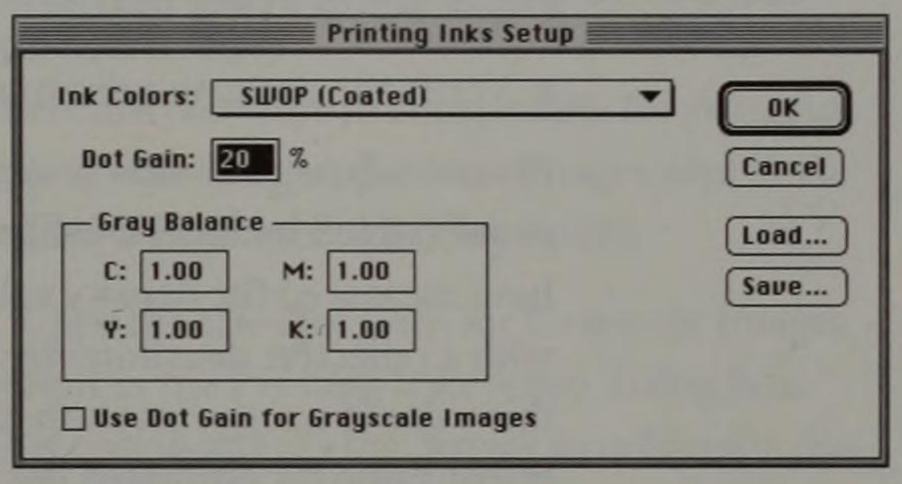
As part of the process of calibration, you choose the ink colors, or printer, you're using. Adobe Photoshop then enters default values for the dot gain and gray balance. After you print a proof (or on the advice of your print shop), you might need to return to the Printing Inks Setup dialog box to adjust for dot gain, ink characteristics, and color casts.

Like the Monitor Setup dialog box information, the information in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box is used when Adobe Photoshop converts data between modes. See "Converting from One Mode to Another" on page 220 for more information on how the printing inks settings affect mode conversions.

If you change the Printing Inks Setup settings after you have converted an image to CMYK mode, only the display is affected. You must revert to the original RGB image (using the Revert command in the File menu) and then reconvert the image for the changes to affect the separation data.

To specify the printing inks:

1 Choose Preferences > Printing Inks Setup from the File menu. The Printing Inks Setup dialog box appears.



2 Select the ink type (or printer) from the Ink Colors menu.

The default color values used in the color separation calculations are designed to produce quality separations using SWOP (standard web offset proofing) inks on coated paper. These inks differ slightly from those used in Europe, as well as from the pigments used in color wax transfer printers such as the Tektronix® Phaser II® printer. Similarly, the color and ink absorption qualities of the paper stock affect the final printed result. You can think of this information as telling the program what printed cyan looks like, what printed magenta looks like, and so on, given a certain set of inks and paper stock.

Note: *In most cases, printing ink characteristics do not vary greatly from printer to printer within the same printer type. For example, one Tektronix Phaser II printer will print ink hues that are very similar from printer to printer. The amount of dot gain, however, can vary quite a bit from machine to machine. While it may not be necessary to recalibrate the printing ink colors for a different printer of the same type, you may need to change the dot gain setting in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box.*

If you choose Custom from the Ink Colors menu, the Ink Colors dialog box appears. See "Setting the Characteristics of Custom Ink Colors" on page 35 for information about entering values in this dialog box.

3 Verify the dot gain percentage.

Do not adjust this value until you have run a proof (which includes a calibration bar) and have measured the density values on the proof with a reflective densitometer. You can change this value if your print shop has provided a different value for estimated dot gain. See "Step 5: Calibrate the Screen Image to the Proof" on page 33 for more information on dot gain.

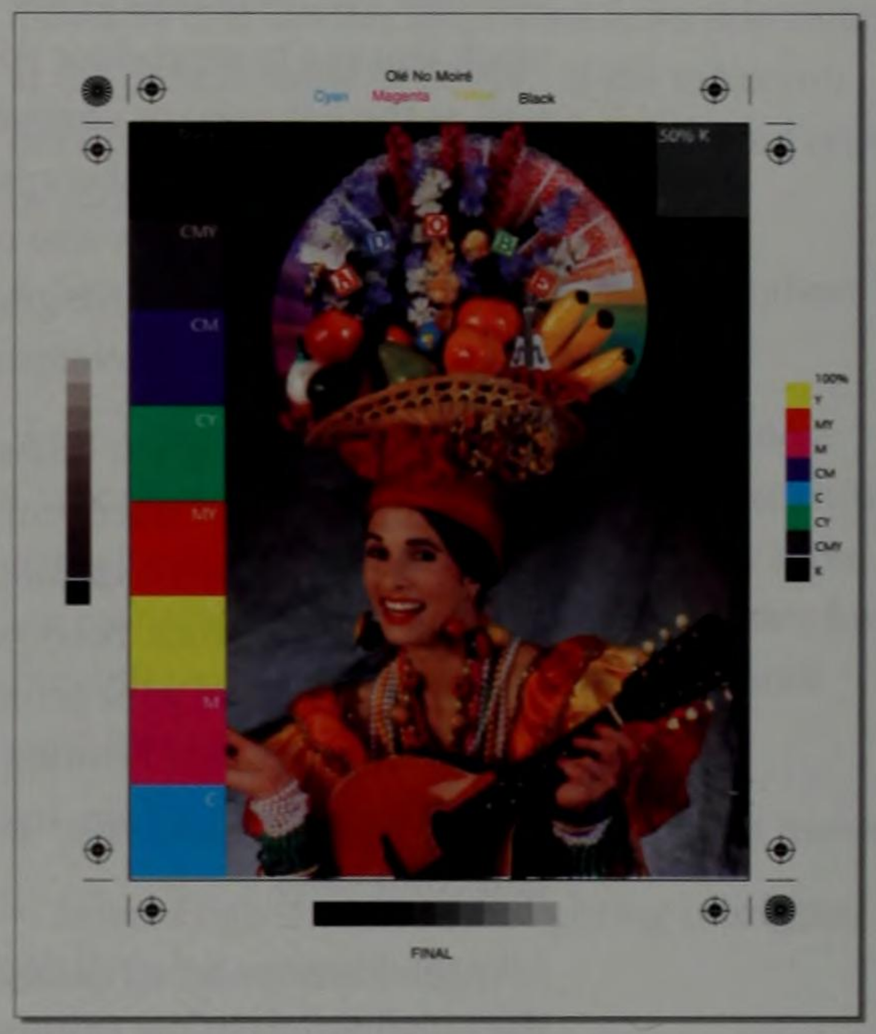
4 When working with grayscale or duotone images (or with an individual channel in a color image), click Use Dot Gain for Grayscale Images if you want the on-screen display to reflect the expected dot gain.

See "Compensating for Dot Gain in Grayscale and Duotone Images" on page 33 for more information about this option.

STEP 4: PRINT A COLOR PROOF

Once you have calibrated your monitor and entered the adjustments for printing inks, you print a CMYK image.

The document you use to generate the proof should contain color samples of all the CMYK color combinations and must be created or imported directly in CMYK mode. You can print the *Olé No Moiré* CMYK image included with the Adobe Photoshop software to produce this proof, or you can create your own CMYK image. For this step, do not use an RGB image that has been converted to CMYK in Adobe Photoshop; you must use a file whose CMYK values have been assigned directly in CMYK mode.



Olé No Moiré calibration image

To create your own CMYK proof document:

1 Create a new Adobe Photoshop document in the CMYK mode.

2 Create a set of swatches in the document. Include the following swatches:

- Four swatches, each containing 100 percent of the CMYK colors (100-percent cyan, 100-percent magenta, 100-percent yellow, and 100-percent black).
- Four combination swatches (100 percent each of magenta and yellow, 100 percent each of cyan and yellow, 100 percent each of cyan and magenta, and 100 percent each of cyan, magenta, and yellow).

To include a calibration bar in the image, click the Calibration Bars option in the Page Setup dialog box.

3 Print the document.

STEP 5: CALIBRATE THE SCREEN IMAGE TO THE PROOF

After examining the color proof, you may need to adjust some additional calibration settings to make the image on-screen exactly match the proof. In particular, you may need to adjust the calibration settings in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box to compensate for dot gain, custom ink characteristics, and color casts.

About dot gain and gray balance

Dot gain or loss is a change in the size of the specified halftone dots caused by the ink bleeding or spreading as it is absorbed by the paper. A 50 percent halftone screen, for example, may show an actual density of 55 percent on the printed image when read with a densitometer. Dot gain can also be the result of a miscalibrated imagesetter during the imaging process.

When you enter a Dot Gain value in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box, Adobe Photoshop uses this percentage as the midtone dot gain value to generate a dot gain curve. Changing the dot gain makes the image appear lighter (if you enter a lower percentage) or darker (if you enter a higher percentage) on the screen. It does not affect the actual data in the image until Adobe Photoshop uses the setting to adjust the CMYK percentages for dot gain during the conversion process.

The gray balance settings in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box let you control the levels of CMYK colors to compensate for color casts.

A color cast may appear in the image if one of the process inks has a higher dot gain than the others.

Compensating for dot gain in grayscale and duotone images

There are two ways to compensate for dot gain in grayscale images, duotone images, and in an individual channel of a color image:

- Click the Use Dot Gain for Grayscale Images option in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box. This option adjusts the display to reflect the dot gain. If the image appears too dark, use the Curves or Levels dialog box to compensate for the adjustment on an image-by-image basis.
- Do not select Use Dot Gain for Grayscale Images; instead, use the Transfer Functions dialog box to compensate for dot gain when the image goes to film. Transfer functions don't let you view the results of the adjustment on your screen; however, they provide the most precise control over dot gain and let you adjust the dot gain to specific values throughout the image. See "Compensating for Dot Gain Using Transfer Functions" on page 34 for more information.

Compensating for dot gain in color images

To compensate for dot gain in the proof of a color image, use the Dot Gain text box in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box. The dot gain estimate in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box represents dot gain for the specified paper stock for the midtones (that is, the 50 percent pixels). Adobe Photoshop then uses this value to create a dot gain curve that adjusts for dot gain throughout the image.

The default dot gain estimate reflects the expected dot gain between film and final output. (Printers typically tell you the expected dot gain between the color proof and the final output, which is usually between 2 and 5 percent.)

To find out the correct dot gain, include a calibration bar with your proof by clicking the Calibration Bar option in the Page Setup dialog box. Using a reflective densitometer, take a reading at the 50 percent mark of the printed calibration bar; then add that value to your printer's estimate of the expected dot gain between proof and final output. If you don't have a densitometer, adjust the Dot Gain value until the image on-screen looks like the proof, and then add that value to your printer's estimate of the expected dot gain.

Compensating for dot gain using transfer functions

Transfer functions are used traditionally to compensate for dot gain due to a miscalibrated imagesetter. In addition, you can use transfer functions when you want precise control over the dot gain values throughout an image. Unlike the Dot Gain value in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box, transfer functions let you specify up to 13 values along the grayscale to create a customized dot gain curve.

Note: *Adobe Systems strongly recommends that you calibrate your imagesetter using the manufacturer's calibration software or a third-party imagesetter calibration device, such as Precision Color by Kodak. If you are using a service bureau, verify that the imagesetter is not off by more than one percentage point.*

To adjust the transfer function values:

1 Use a transmissive densitometer to record the density values at the appropriate steps in your image on film.

2 Choose Page Setup from the File menu. The Page Setup dialog box appears.

3 Click the Transfer button. The Transfer Functions dialog box appears.

4 Calculate the required adjustment, and enter the values (as percentages) in the Transfer Functions dialog box.

For example, if you have specified a 50-percent dot, and your imagesetter prints it at 58 percent, you know that you have an 8-percent dot gain in your midtones. To compensate for this gain, enter 42 percent (50 percent – 8 percent) in the 50 percent text box of the Transfer Functions dialog box. The imagesetter then prints the 50 percent dot that you want.

When entering transfer function values, keep in mind the density range of your imagesetter. On a given imagesetter, a very small highlight dot might be too small to hold ink; beyond a certain density level, the shadow dots might fill into solid black, removing all the detail in shadow areas.

Note: *To preserve transfer functions in an exported EPS file, check Override Printer's Default Functions in the Transfer Functions dialog box and then export the file with Include Transfer Functions selected in the EPS dialog box. See* *"Including Halftone Screen Information and Transfer Functions" on page 51* *for more information.*

Saving and loading transfer function settings

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Transfer Functions dialog box to use transfer function settings with other Adobe Photoshop documents. To save the current transfer function settings as the default, hold down the Option key (the Save button changes to —> Defaults), and click. To load the default settings, hold down the Option key (the Load button changes to <— Defaults), and click.

Setting the characteristics of custom ink colors

In most cases, the Ink Colors options in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box accurately provide the necessary compensations for various printing inks. In some situations, however, you might want to further adjust the ink colors using a color proof. For example, you might be using ink sets that are not available in the Ink Colors menu. When you change these settings, you change the profile of the inks used by Adobe Photoshop during the color separation.

Note: *The Ink Colors menu reflects calibrations of some of the most commonly used ink sets and color printers. If your printer is not listed, contact your printer manufacturer to find out whether a set of Adobe Photoshop color patch values for your printer is available.*

To adjust for custom ink colors:

1 Choose Preferences > Printing Inks from the File menu. The Printing Inks Setup dialog box appears.

2 Select Custom from the Ink Colors menu. The Ink Colors dialog box appears.

The Ink Colors dialog box displays the various combinations of CMYK and the CIE coordinates used to generate them. CIE coordinates are an international color definition standard that is supported by PostScript Level 2.

The Ink Colors dialog box defines colors as Y (lightness), *x*, and *y* values. The current ink sets are calibrated for viewing conditions of 6500K (D65), 2 degrees.

3 Using your printed CMYK proof, take a reading of the color values using a spectrophotometer or a colorimeter; then enter those values in the Ink Colors dialog box.

Alternatively, you can click the color patch of the ink color you want to adjust, and then adjust the color on-screen until it matches the patch on the color proof; then click OK.

Compensating for color casts

The Gray Balance text boxes in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box let you compensate for color casts in a printed image by adjusting the gamma of the individual channels. These color casts are typically due to nonuniform dot gain between the printing inks. Nonuniform dot gain can be caused by the order in which the inks are printed, the screen angles of a given ink screen, or the specific properties of the inks themselves. For example, cyan ink, which is often printed first, tends to have higher dot gain values than the other process inks.

To adjust the gray balance:

1 With the calibration image in CMYK mode, choose Adjust > Levels from the Image menu. The Levels dialog box appears.

2 Adjust the Input Levels gamma slider for each channel until the image on-screen matches the color proof.

3 Write down the gamma value for each channel (the gamma level is in the middle text box above the Input Levels histogram); then click Cancel to close the Levels dialog box without modifying the image. Because you are calibrating your system, you want to change the overall gray balance used in the Adobe Photoshop color conversions, not just the balance of an individual image.

4 Open the Printing Inks Setup dialog box, and enter the values for the channels in the Gray Balance text boxes; then click OK. If the existing values are not all 1.0, multiply the new values by the old values.

Once again, keep in mind that changing the settings in the Printing Inks dialog box affects the display of images while in CMYK mode, as well as the conversion from RGB to CMYK. It has no effect on the separation data if you change the settings while an image is in CMYK mode and you do not reconvert the image.

Saving and loading printing inks settings

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box to save these settings for use with other Adobe Photoshop images.

Chapter

3

SCANNING, OPENING, SAVING, AND EXPORTING IMAGES

Chapter 3: Scanning, Importing, and Exporting Images

Images can be brought into the Adobe Photoshop program by scanning a photograph, a slide, or an image; by capturing images from video; or by importing electronic artwork created with a drawing program. You can import an image document in one format and export it in another, depending on your needs. As a result, you can easily transfer Adobe Photoshop documents to other applications and computer platforms.

SCANNING IMAGES

The Adobe Photoshop program, in conjunction with certain brands of scanners, allows you to control the process through which a photograph or a slide is converted into a digitized image. To scan images, you use the Acquire command in the File menu.

Adobe Photoshop software works with any scanner that has an Adobe Photoshop-compatible plug-in module. To install the module, drag it into your plug-ins folder. All scanner plug-in modules installed in your Plug-ins folder appear in the File > Acquire submenu. See "Using Plug-in Modules" on page 41 for more information about using and installing plug-in modules.

Adobe Photoshop also supports the TWAIN standard for image acquisition to allow scanning from any device that supports the TWAIN interface. If you are using a scanner that supports TWAIN, see *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started* for instructions on installing and setting up the TWAIN module.

If the scanner you are using does not have an Adobe Photoshop-compatible scanner driver, you can use the manufacturer's software to scan your images and then save the images as TIFF or PICT files. Use the Open command in the File menu to open the TIFF or PICT files in Adobe Photoshop. See "Importing Images" on page 41 for more information.

When you're scanning an image, you make several choices that affect the quality and usefulness of the resulting file. Before you scan an image, be sure to follow the instructions in this chapter for determining the scanning resolution and optimal dynamic range, and for developing a procedure for eliminating unwanted color casts.

Determining the scan resolution

The correct resolution for a scan is determined by the capability of your output device. For example, if the image will be used only on-screen, the resolution need not be any greater than the resolution of the screen, typically 72 pixels per inch (ppi) for a Macintosh monitor and 96 ppi for an IBM-compatible PC monitor.

Note: *Scan resolution, as it is used here, is the same as image resolution—that is, it is the resolution of the image when you open the file in Adobe Photoshop. See "Resolution Basics" on page 4 for a complete discussion of resolution.*

If the image resolution is too low, the PostScript language may use the color value of a single pixel to create several halftone dots when printing. This results in *pixelization*, or coarse-looking output.

If the resolution is too high, the file contains more information than the printer needs. The file size directly affects the length of time required for the printer to process the image. The size of a file is proportional to its image resolution. For example, the file size for an image with a resolution of 200 ppi is four times greater than an image of identical dimensions and a resolution of 100 ppi.

The scanning resolution you use for printed output depends on the quality of output that you need as well as on the resolution of your printer and the size of the original document compared to the scanned image.

Scan resolution and screen frequency

Screen frequency is the resolution of the screen you will use when you print your final image. See "Screen Frequency" on page 5 and "Selecting Halftone Screen Attributes" on page 245 for more information about screen frequency and printing.

As a general rule, to produce a high-quality halftone image, the image resolution should be twice the lines-per-inch (lpi) value of the halftone screen used to print the image. For example, to print a high-quality image using a 133-lpi screen, you would need an image resolution of approximately 266 ppi.

In some cases, however, depending on the image and the output device, ratios of as low as 1.25 produce excellent results.

Note: *If your image resolution is more than 2.5 times the screen ruling, an alert message appears when you attempt to print the image. This means that the image resolution is higher than the printer can accommodate and is unnecessarily increasing the file size and print time. Use the Image Size command to lower the resolution, and save a copy of the high-resolution file if necessary.*

See the chart on the next page for a comparison of the same image scanned and printed using different image resolutions and screen frequencies.

Scan resolution and image output size

The size of the final image compared to the original image is also a consideration in setting scan resolution. If you are making the image larger, you need additional data to produce a final image with the correct image resolution. If the final image will be smaller than the original, you need less data.

If you are unsure of the appropriate resolution for a resized image, you can have Adobe Photoshop calculate a recommended resolution using the Auto option in the Image Size dialog box. See "Using the Image Size Command" on page 191 for more information.

Scanning using the file size setting

The best way to ensure that you have all the data you need for your Adobe Photoshop image is to create a dummy file in Adobe Photoshop that tells you what size you need.

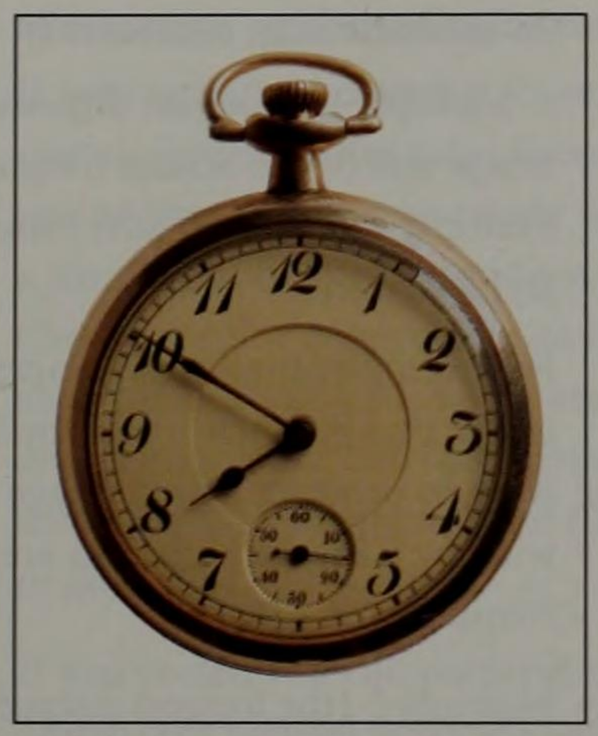
To calculate the file size before scanning an image:

1 Open Adobe Photoshop, and choose New from the File menu.

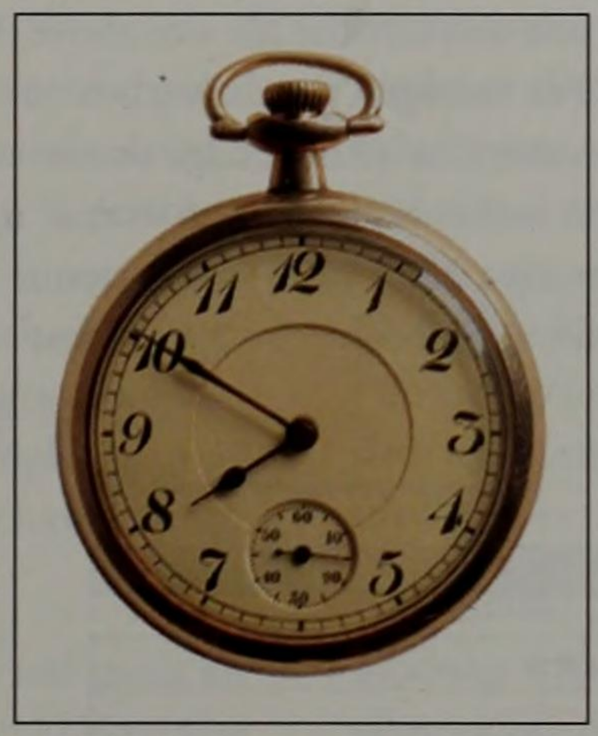
2 Enter the width, height, and resolution for your final printed image. The resolution should be twice the screen frequency you will use to print. Make sure that the mode you plan to work with is selected.

Screen Frequency and Image Resolution Examples

THIS CHART COMPARES THE SAME IMAGE PRINTED AT DIFFERENT SCREEN FREQUENCIES (LPI) AND IMAGE RESOLUTIONS (PPI). AS A GENERAL RULE, THE IMAGE RESOLUTION SHOULD BE TWICE THE SCREEN FREQUENCY TO ACHIEVE THE BEST PRINTED RESULTS.

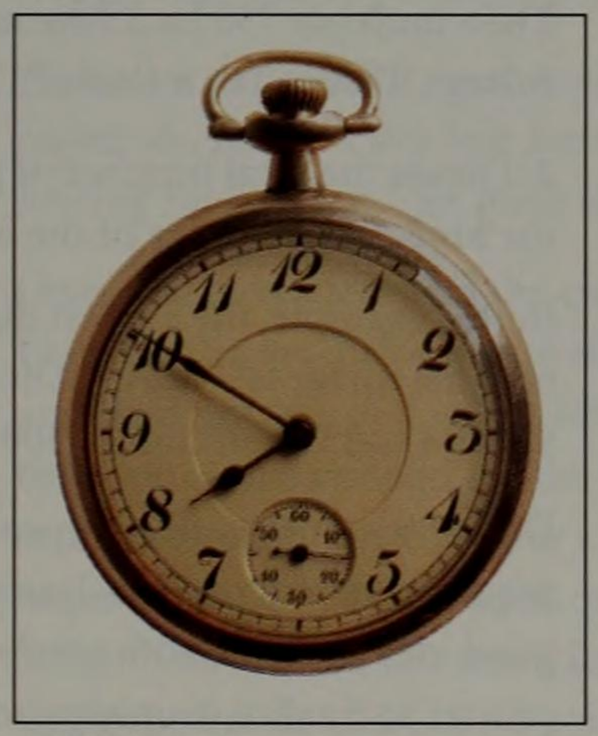


177lpi/300ppi



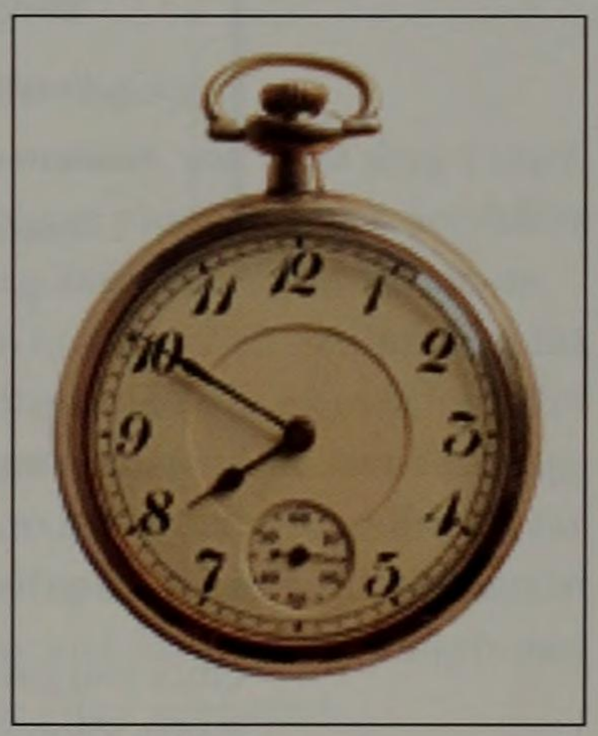
177lpi/150ppi

177lpi/72ppi

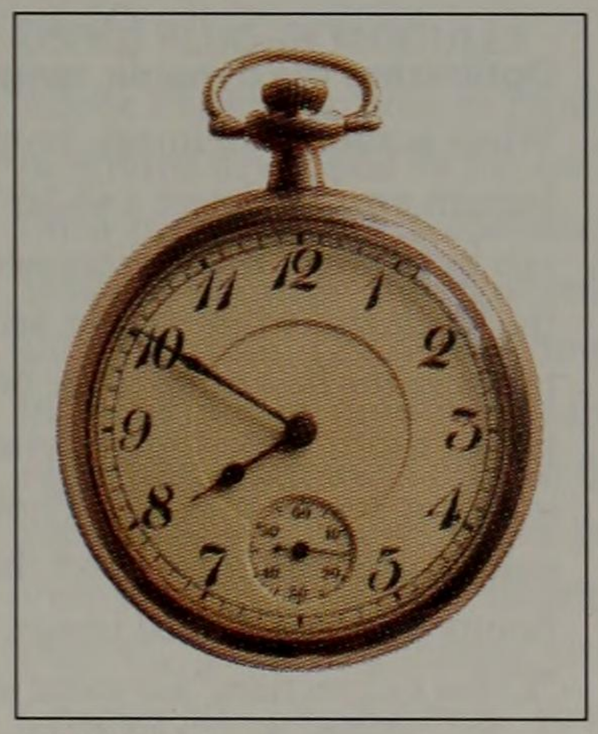


128lpi/300ppi

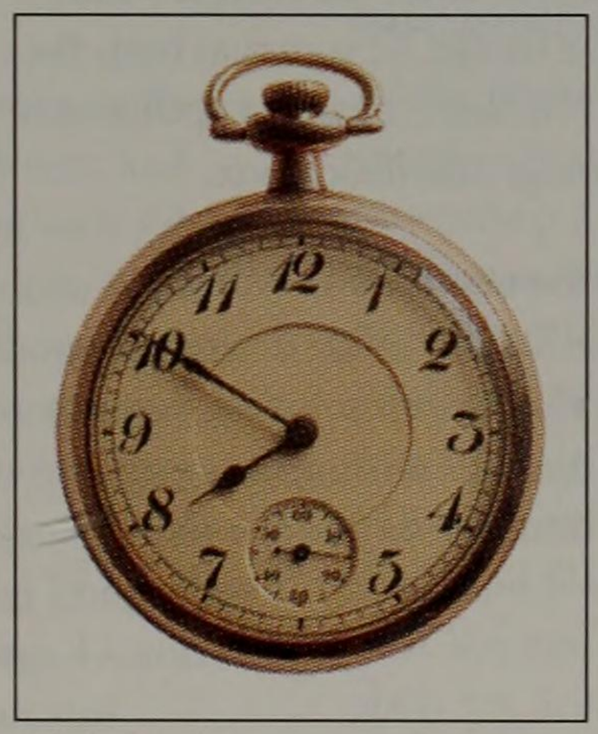
128lpi/150ppi



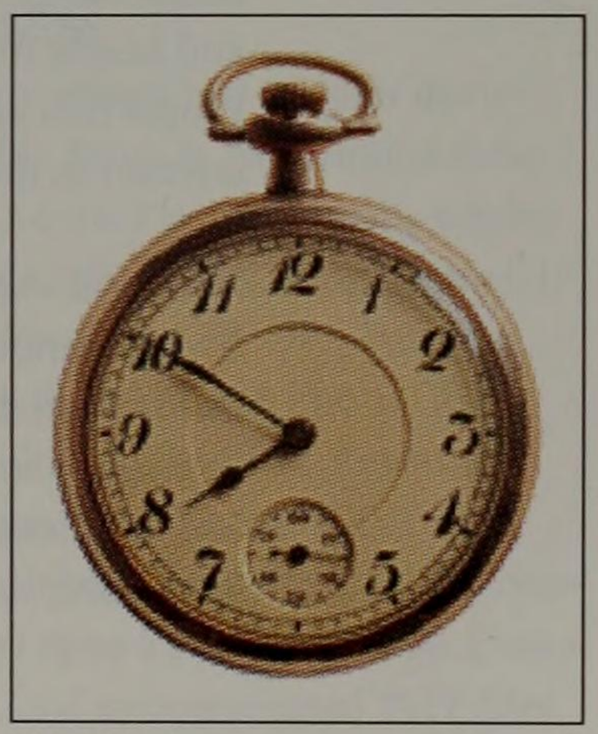
128lpi/72ppi



85lpi/300ppi

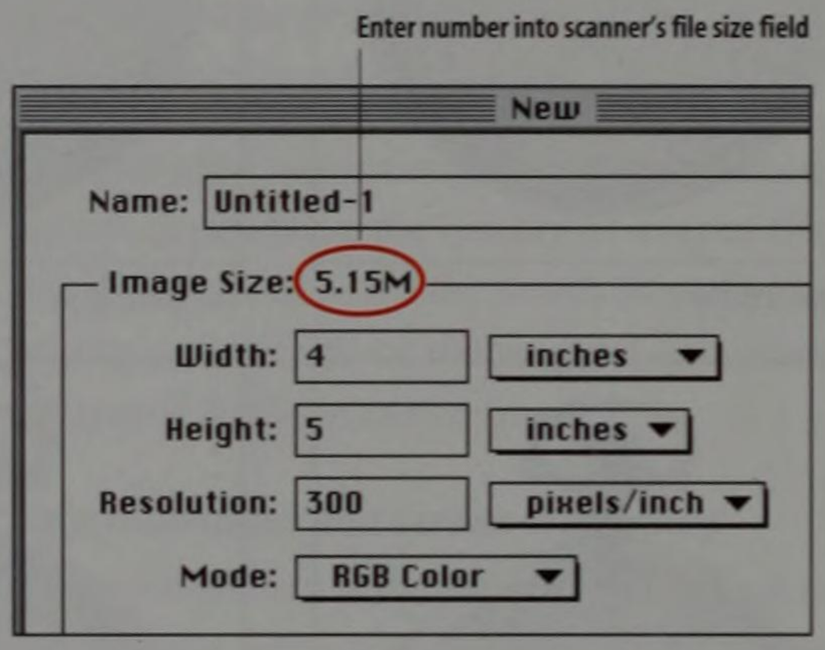


85lpi/150ppi



85lpi/72ppi

The New dialog box displays the file size above the dimensions. For example, the dialog box below shows the values for a final image that is 4 inches wide and 5 inches high, printed with a 150-line screen using a 2 to 1 ratio (resolution is set at 300). The file size needs to be 5.15 megabytes.



To produce the scan, enter the resulting file size in your scanner settings (it does not matter what resolution or image dimensions appear in the scanner settings).

Once you have scanned the image and imported it into Photoshop, use the Image Size command in the Image menu to enter the correct width and height for the image. Be sure that both the Proportion and File Size constraint options are selected in the Image Size dialog box.

Scanning using the resolution setting

If you cannot use file size as the determining factor in setting your scan resolution, you can calculate a scan resolution using the original and final image dimensions and the screen frequency.

To estimate scan resolution:

1 Multiply the longest dimension of the final image size by the screen frequency; then multiply this value by the ratio of screen ruling (typically 2:1).

For example, suppose you are scanning an image that is 2 inches wide by 3 inches high. You want to produce a final image that is 4 inches wide by 5 inches high. You are using a screen frequency of 150.

Multiply 5 (the longest output dimension) by 150 (the screen frequency) to get 750 pixels. Then multiply 750 by 2 (the ratio to screen ruling). This equals a total of 1500 pixels needed.

2 Divide the total number of pixels needed by the longest dimension of the original image.

In this example, the longest dimension of the original image is 3 inches. Dividing 1500 by 3 yields a scan resolution of 500 dpi.

Different color separation procedures might require different pixel-to-line screen ratios. It's a good idea to check with your service bureau or printer to finalize your requirement before you scan the image.

Optimizing the dynamic range of the scan

When scanning an image, keep in mind that the human eye can detect a wider tonal range than can be printed. If your scanner lets you define the black and white points, set the points to produce the best tonal range before scanning the file, to capture the widest dynamic range. After opening the file in Adobe Photoshop, use the color correction tools to set the white and black points for the digitized image. See Chapter 12, "Color Correction," for more information about setting the black and white points for an image.

Eliminating unwanted color casts

If your original image has an unwanted color cast, or your scanner introduces an unwanted cast to your image, you might want to perform a simple test before scanning your image. To check for color casts, create an Adobe Photoshop file that contains an 11-step gray wedge, and print the file. You can then sample the grays using the Info palette to see if they have any hue or color tint.

If you prefer, you can perform the test using an 18-percent neutral gray card and an 11-step gray wedge, available at photography stores.

Note: *It is critical that your monitor be calibrated before you perform this test. See Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System," for more information.*

Once you have identified the color cast, use the Levels or Curves dialog box to eliminate the cast, and then save the dialog box settings. The next time you scan an image, use the same dialog box settings to eliminate the color cast before you make other color corrections. See Chapter 12, "Color Correction," for more information on using the Levels and Curves commands.

USING PLUG-IN MODULES

Adobe Photoshop plug-in modules are software programs developed by Adobe Systems, and third-party vendors in conjunction with Adobe Systems, to extend the standard Adobe Photoshop program. The Adobe Photoshop software includes plug-in modules for importing and exporting images and plug-in filter modules for producing special effects. For information on individual modules, see "Importing Images" on page 41, "Exporting Images" on page 47, and Chapter 10, "Using Filters." You can also purchase third-party plug-in modules. The instructions for using the modules are shipped with the disk.

Import modules (also known as *acquire modules*) allow you to control a scanner or video frame capture system, or to import documents in a variety of formats. Export modules let you save an Adobe Photoshop document in a file format not supported by the standard Adobe Photoshop program, or export images to devices such as printers that are unavailable through the Chooser.

For detailed instructions on using plug-in modules with Adobe Photoshop, refer to the appropriate documentation included with the module software disk.

Installing plug-in modules

To use a plug-in module, you must drag a copy of the module to your plug-ins folder. See *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started* for information on installing plug-in modules. See "Setting Plug-Ins Preferences" on page 13 of this manual for information on designating a new location for plug-in modules. Once installed, the modules appear in the Acquire or Export menu, as file formats in the Open, Save As, and Save a Copy dialog boxes, or as filters in the Filter submenus.

IMPORTING IMAGES

Adobe Photoshop allows you to open documents in many file formats, including Adobe Photoshop 3.0, Adobe Photoshop 2.0, Adobe Illustrator, Amiga IFF, BMP, CompuServe GIF, EPS, EPS PICT Preview, EPS TIFF Preview, FilmStrip, JPEG, Kodak® CMS Photo CD, MacPaint, PCX, PICT File, PICT Resource, PIXAR, PixelPaint, Raw, Scitex™ CT, Targa, TIFF, and files scanned using the TWAIN interface. You can also open a portion of large Photoshop 3.0, Scitex, and uncompressed TIFF files using the Quick Edit module.

Note: *PixelPaint and the CompuServe GIF formats are used only for 8-bit (indexed color) and grayscale files. The MacPaint file format is used only for 1-bit files.*

Import choices appear in the Format menu in the Open dialog box or in the File > Acquire submenu. Photoshop 3.0, Photoshop 2.0, Adobe Illustrator, JPEG, PICT File, Raw, Scitex CT, and TIFF are built-in file formats. The other formats and the TWAIN interface are plug-in modules.

Opening files

You use the Open command to open all file types in Photoshop (except for those that use Acquire modules).

To open a document:

1 Choose Open from the File menu.

All the files recognized by Adobe Photoshop 3.0 are listed. If the file you want does not appear, click the Show All Files option. Photoshop then displays all the files in the folder in the file listing. To locate files in other folders, click the Find button and type the file name.

The Show Thumbnail option lets you preview files before opening them (if a preview has been saved with the image). This option requires the Apple QuickTime™ extension. Files created with a version of Adobe Photoshop prior to 2.5.1 must be resaved for the preview to appear.

2 Select the file.

The Format menu displays the file type. The file size appears next to the file type.

3 Click Open.

The file opens in the selected format. For a detailed discussion of the file formats, see the specific file type in "Exporting Images" later in this chapter.

In some cases, a dialog box appears, allowing you to set the import options. The formats requiring an import dialog box are discussed in the following sections.

Opening and placing Adobe Illustrator™ files

The Open command lets you open an Adobe Illustrator file as a new Adobe Photoshop document. The Place command places an Adobe Illustrator file into an existing Adobe Photoshop document.

Note: *The Open and Place commands do not import pattern files, stroked text, or any artwork that has been placed into the Adobe Illustrator file. If you want to open the Adobe Illustrator file as a new Adobe Photoshop document, use the Open command instead of the Place command.*

When you open or place an Adobe Illustrator image, Adobe Photoshop *rasterizes* the image. Rasterizing converts the mathematically defined lines and curves of the vector image drawn in Adobe Illustrator to the points (or pixels) displayed on a grid in Adobe Photoshop. See "Vector and Raster Images" on page 3 for more information on these display types.

To open an Adobe Illustrator image as an Adobe Photoshop document:

1 Choose Open from the File menu, and click the file. (If the file does not appear, make sure that the Show All Files option is checked).

2 Select the file you want to open, and click OK. The Rasterizer dialog box appears.

3 Indicate the file dimensions, resolution, and mode. To maintain the same file size ratio, select the Constrain Proportions option.

4 Select the Anti-aliased option to improve the quality of the image being rasterized as it is opened.

To place an image from Adobe Illustrator into an Adobe Photoshop document:

1 To improve the quality of the image as it is rasterized, choose Preferences > General from the file menu, click the More button, and select the Anti-aliased PostScript option in the More Preferences dialog box.

When placing line art, you might not want to select this option in order to maintain the line art's hard edges.

2 Open the Adobe Photoshop document in which you want to place the image.

3 Choose Place from the File menu, and select the file you want to place.

The image appears as a floating selection inside a box in the center of the Adobe Photoshop document. The image maintains the aspect ratio of the Adobe Illustrator file.

Drag a handle to resize the box. Hold down the ⌘ key as you drag to change the aspect ratio. Click anywhere on the border of the box (or on the X across the floating selection to move the entire image.

Once you have placed the image, move the pointer inside the box (the pointer turns into a gavel), and click to confirm the placement. Move the pointer outside the box (the pointer turns into the international No symbol), and click to cancel the placement.

Placed images are rasterized when you open them in Adobe Photoshop. You can use the Anti-alias PostScript option in the More Preferences dialog box in conjunction with the rasterization.

To change the Clipboard preferences:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box.

3 Select the Anti-alias PostScript option to improve the quality of the selection being rasterized as it is pasted into Adobe Photoshop. Using this option can increase the time it takes to import the selection.

Note: *You can also choose to copy Adobe Illustrator art and paste it as a path (instead of as pixels) into an Adobe Photoshop document.*

Opening Photo CD files

To open Photo CD files in Adobe Photoshop, use the Kodak CMS Photo CD file format in the Open dialog box Format menu.

Note: *The Kodak Precision Color Management System (KPCMS), required to use the Kodak CMS Photo CD format, is automatically installed in your System Folder when you install Adobe Photoshop.*

The Kodak KCMS Photo CD plug-in allows you to read Photo YCC data from the disk and convert it to either an Adobe Photoshop RGB or a Lab color space. You can transform both the source image and the destination image using the profiles (or PT) you have installed in your System folder. Using the Precision CMS application allows you to deliver the highest quality image to Adobe Photoshop.

You cannot save files in the Photo CD format from Adobe Photoshop.

To open a Photo CD file using the Kodak CMS Photo CD file format:

1 Choose Open from the File menu

2 Choose Kodak CMS Photo CD from the Format menu (you may need to select Show All Files).

3 Select the file, and click Open. A dialog box appears.

4 Choose a resolution from the menu.

5 Deselect Landscape to open a portrait in its original orientation. (When this option is selected, portrait images are opened in Landscape orientation.)

6 Click Source. The Source Precision Transform dialog box appears.

The first time you open a Photo CD file, no Source and Destination profiles are selected. After you choose the profiles, they remain selected until you change them.

7 Choose a device and a description from the list then click OK to return to the first dialog box.

8 Click Destination, and choose RGB or Lab from the Device menu; then click OK.

The description changes to match your choice. You can choose other options if you have the profile installed in your System folder. See the Read Me file for more information.

9 Click Image Info to get scanner information about the image; then click OK to return to the original dialog box.

10 Click OK to open the image.

Opening EPS PICT or EPS TIFF preview files

Some graphics applications, such as Adobe Illustrator, on Macintosh and IBM-compatible PC computer systems let you display, or preview, a PICT representation of a PostScript language image saved in the EPS format. The PICT preview image gives you an idea of what the image will look like when it is printed and lets you accurately place the image on the page. See "Saving in Non-Photoshop Formats" on page 49 for more information on creating and saving these previews.

You can use this format to open files saved in applications which create previews but are not supported by Adobe Photoshop (such as QuarkXPress). An opened preview file can be edited and used like any other low-resolution file.

Opening PCX files

PCX format, established by Zsoft for its PC Paintbrush software, is commonly used by PC computers. Most PC software supports version 5 of the PCX format. Version 3 files do not support a custom color palette. For this reason, when you open a version 3 PCX file the palette is ignored, and a standard VGA color palette is used instead.

Opening Raw files

A Raw format consists of a stream of numbers that describes the color information in a file. The color value of each pixel in the file is described in binary format, where 0 equals black and 255 equals white. For RGB and CMYK color images, more than one channel is needed to describe the color.

The Raw format is designed to accommodate images saved in undocumented formats, such as those created by scientific applications. The Raw import format supports only uncompressed files. Compressed files, such as PICT, LZW, and GIF files cannot be opened using this format.

When you choose Raw from the File Format menu in the Open dialog box, the Raw dialog box appears.

Specify the document parameters by entering the width, height, number of channels, and header (if desired).

If you are missing the dimensions or header value, you can have Adobe Photoshop estimate the parameters. Either enter the correct height and width values to estimate the header size, or enter the correct header size to estimate the height and width, and then click the Guess button.

If more than one set of height-width values matches the file size data, the first click of the Guess button selects the height-width ratio closest to a square, the second click selects the next ratio that divides evenly, and so on, until the evenly divisible ratios have been exhausted.

To reverse the order of the width and height values, click Swap.

Adobe Photoshop automatically retains the header when you save the file. To discard the header when saving, deselect the Retain Header When Saving option. See "Saving Raw Files" on page 53 for a detailed description of the Raw format.

Using the Acquire command

Choose the Acquire command to open anti-aliased PICT files; PICT Resource files; Quick Edit versions of Photoshop 2.0, Scitex CT, and uncompressed TIFF files; and files scanned using the TWAIN interface. You also use the Acquire command to use any third-party acquire modules you've installed.

To use an import module:

Choose Acquire from the File menu; then select the import module from the submenu.

A dialog box appears. The options for some import modules are discussed in the following sections.

Acquiring an Anti-aliased PICT file

The Anti-aliased PICT module lets you import object-oriented PICT files, such as those created with MacDraw and Canvas, as soft-edged, or *anti-aliased,* files. Because the entire PICT file must be in memory for this module to operate, you may not be able to use the module with large PICT files.

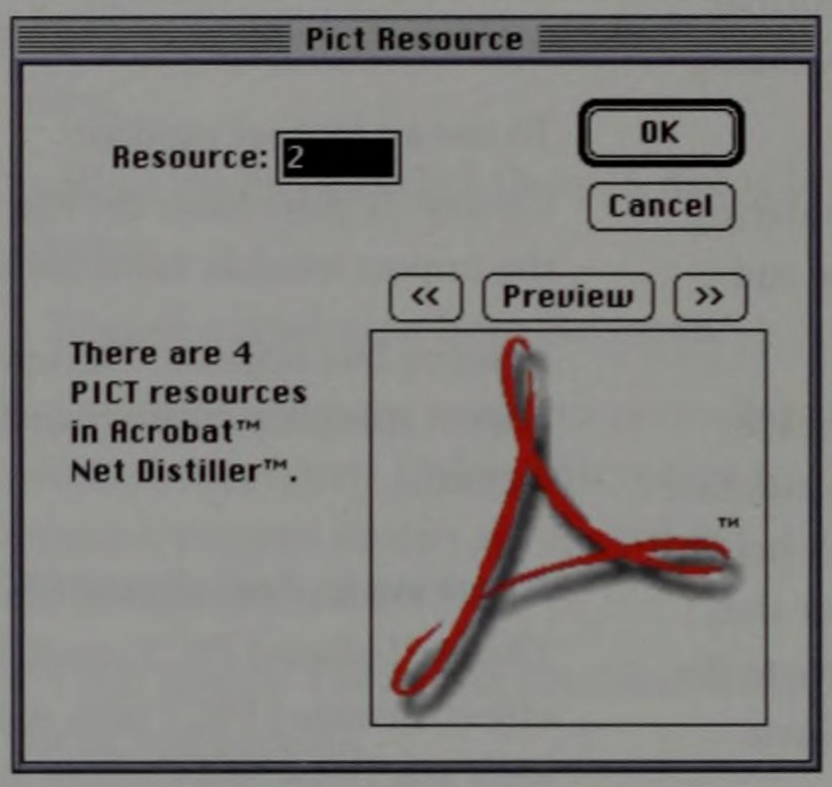
The Anti-aliased PICT dialog box indicates the current file size and dimensions. To change the image dimensions, enter new values in the Width and Height text boxes; the file size is updated to reflect the new dimensions. To maintain the same image proportions, select the Constrain Proportions option. You can choose to open the Anti-aliased PICT file in either Grayscale or RGB mode.

Although QuickDraw patterns such as stripes do not display correctly, they will print as they should.

Acquiring PICT Resources

The PICT Resource module lets you read PICT resources from a file—for example, to read resources from another application.

You need to specify the resources you want to read in the PICT dialog box.



The Preview button lets you preview a resource; the arrow buttons on either side of the Preview button let you step forward and backward through the resources. Note that the number displayed in the Resource box refers to the resource's position in ascending order in the resource fork and not to the resource's identification number.

Note: *You can also open a file in the PICT Resource file format using the Format menu in the Open dialog box. Using Open, however, automatically opens the first resource in the file in an Adobe Photoshop document and does not display any other PICT resources in the file.*

Acquiring Quick Edit files

The Quick Edit module lets you open a portion of a large file. Working with Quick Edit files can significantly decrease the time it takes to open large files, especially files over 4 MB. You can also open a section of a file when you don't have enough RAM to open the entire file or to speed up processing while you're trying out painting techniques or special effects. The Quick Edit module opens Photoshop 2.0, Scitex CT, and uncompressed TIFF files. You use the Export > Quick Edit Save command in the File menu to save the section back to your original file.

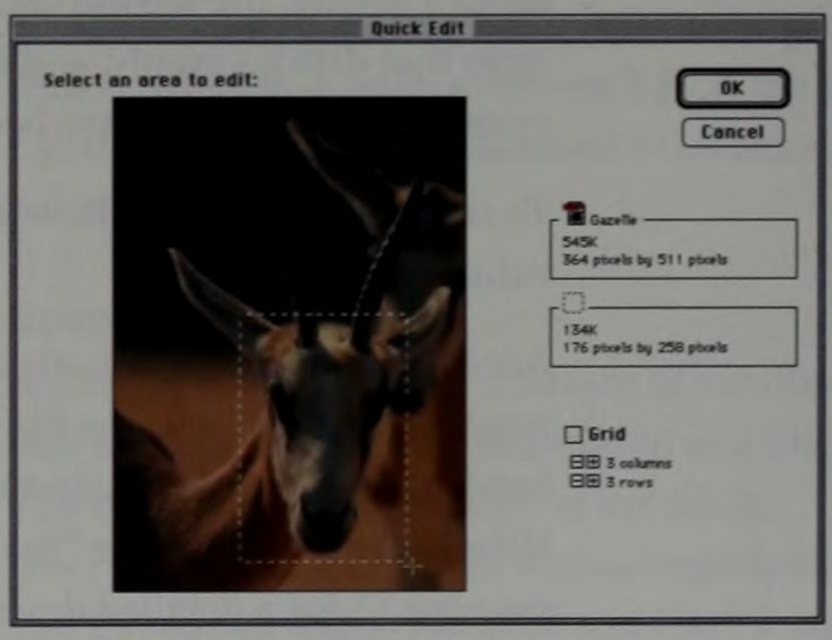
The settings you use in the Quick Edit dialog box are saved in the Photoshop Quick Edit Prefs files in the Preferences folder in the System folder.

To use Quick Edit:

1 Choose Acquire > Quick Edit from the File menu.

2 Select the file you want to open, and click Open. The Quick Edit dialog box appears.

3 Drag to select an area of the image.



As you drag, the dialog displays the files size and grid dimensions of the selection to the right of the image. There are several shortcuts that allow you to make a precise selection when you're using the selection marquee:

- Hold down the spacebar and drag to move the selection marquee.
- Use the arrow keys to move the marquee one pixel at a time.
- Press + to increase the marquee by one pixel; press — to decrease the marquee by one pixel.

4 Click Grid to divide the image into tiles. The selection marquee surrounds the middle tile in the image.

To change the grid, click the plus and minus boxes under the option. For example, to divide the image into strips, decrease the grid to one column. You can use the following shortcuts to move around in the grid:

- Click to select a different tile.
- Type F to move to the first tile, or press N to move in sequence through the tiles.
- Use the arrow keys to move to the right or to the left, or to move up and down in the grid.
- Press ⌘-A to select the entire image, or press ⌘-N to deselect the current tile.

5 Click OK to open the image.

When you're working in a section of the file, Quick Edit appears in the document window's title bar.

6 Choose Export > Quick Edit from the File menu to save the file back to its original file.

Acquiring an image using the TWAIN interface

TWAIN is a cross-platform interface for acquiring images captured by certain scanners and frame grabbers. The device manufacturer of the TWAIN device must provide a Source Manager and TWAIN Data source for your device; otherwise, the module will not work.

The first time you use the TWAIN device, choose TWAIN Select Source, and select the device you're using. You do not need to repeat this step for subsequent use of the TWAIN module unless you switch devices.

If more than one TWAIN device is installed in your system and you want to switch devices, use the TWAIN Select Source command to choose the new device.

EXPORTING IMAGES

The Adobe Photoshop program lets you save documents in many file formats, including Photoshop 3.0 and Photoshop 2.0, Amiga IFF, BMP, CompuServe GIF, EPS, Filmstrip, JPEG, MacPaint, PCX, PICT File, PICT Resource, PIXAR, PixelPaint, Raw, Scitex CT, Targa, and TIFF. In addition, Adobe Photoshop includes export modules for saving Amiga HAM files, for printing images to a color ImageWriter® II, for exporting paths to Adobe Illustrator, and for saving files opened using Quick Edit.

Note: *The PixelPaint and CompuServe GIF formats are used only for 8-bit (indexed color), and grayscale files. The MacPaint file format is used only for 1-bit files.*

Export choices appear either in the menu in the Save As or Save a Copy dialog box, or in the Export menu. Photoshop 3.0, Photoshop 2.0, EPS, JPEG, PICT File, Raw, Scitex CT, and TIFF are built-in file formats. The other formats are plug-in modules. If these modules do not appear in your menus, install them following the instructions in *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started.*

Saving Files

The Save command saves the document in its current file format. Use the Save As and Save a Copy commands to save a file in a different format.

Saving a copy of a file

To save a copy of a file, including all its channels and layers, you use the Save a Copy command in the File menu.

Important: *When you use the Save a Copy command the file is saved to disk but does not replace or affect the current open file you're working in.*

The Save a Copy command lets you save a flattened version of your file—that is, a file in which all the visible layers have been merged. You can also choose to delete any alpha channels in the document. This results in a much smaller file that you can use to export the finished image. When you use Save a Copy, the original source file remains intact.

Note: *To save a duplicate of an image, use the Duplicate command in the Image menu. See "Duplicating Images" on page 159 for information on this command.*

Saving Adobe Photoshop 3.0 and Adobe Photoshop 2.0 files

Adobe Photoshop 3.0 is the default file format for newly created images. This encoded format is the only format that supports all available Adobe Photoshop image modes (Bitmap, Grayscale, Duotone, Indexed Color, RGB, CMYK, Lab, and Multichannel), alpha channels, and layers.

Note that only the Photoshop 3.0 format supports layers. Saving in any other format will merge all layers and flatten the Adobe Photoshop document. If you want to preserve layers and layer masks, be sure to save a copy of the document in Photoshop 3.0 format before saving the document in another file format. The Save a Copy command is a convenient way to save a flattened version of a file without losing any of the original file information. See Chapter 8, "Using Layers," for more information on layers, layer masks, and saving layered documents.

To change the name or location of a Photoshop 3.0 file, use the Save As command. Since Photoshop 3.0 file format is the only format that supports layers, when you're working in a Photoshop 3.0 file, and choose Save As, this in the only available format. Use the Save a Copy command to save a Photoshop 3.0 file in a different format.

If you're exporting Photoshop 3.0 files to a page layout program that doesn't support the Adobe Photoshop format, use the Save a Copy command to save in another format.

Choose the Photoshop 2.0 format when you need to open a Photoshop 3.0 file in version 2.0 of Adobe Photoshop, or when you are exporting

to an application that only supports Photoshop 2.0 files. Saving in Photoshop 2.0 format flattens your document and discards layer information.

Saving Adobe Photoshop 3.0 files as Adobe Photoshop 2.5 files

If you're planning to use an Adobe Photoshop 3.0 document in an application that supports only Photoshop 2.5 files (such as Adobe Premiere), you can save the file in Photoshop 3.0 format. By default, the Photoshop 3.0 format saves a copy of the flattened data that can be used by programs which read Photoshop 2.5 files. Your original information remains in the file but is ignored by the application.

Important: *Adobe Photoshop 2.5 and Adobe Photoshop 2.5.1 can only open files that contain no more than 16 channels. Documents with more channels will not open. Editing or saving files in programs that use Photoshop 2.5 formats discards the layer data in Photoshop 3.0 files.*

Saving Photoshop 3.0 files so they can be used as Photoshop 2.5 files does increase the file size. If you are working only in Adobe Photoshop 3.0, you can turn off the option that saves the flattened version of the image.

To turn off Photoshop 2.5 compatibility:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box.

3 Deselect the 2.5 Format Compatibility option in the More Preferences dialog box.

Saving in non-Photoshop formats

You can save Adobe Photoshop documents as EPS or TIFF documents and then place these documents into page layout programs that support these file formats. You can also save Adobe Photoshop documents in formats that can be read by IBM PC-compatible computers, Macintosh computers, and Scitex image-processing systems.

To save a document in another file format:

1 Choose Save As from the File menu. The Save As dialog box appears.

2 Choose a format from the File Format menu. In some cases, a dialog box appears. See "Exporting Images" on page 47 for information on the formats available.

3 Type a filename and choose a location for the file.

Note: *If you want to create a 72 dpi preview image of a non-EPS file as you save, select the Full Size image preview option in the More General Preferences dialog box. See "Using Image Previews" on page 12 for more information. To save a preview for an EPS file, use the Preview menu in the EPS Format dialog box. See "Saving an EPS Preview" on page 50 for more information.*

4 Click Save.

Certain file formats do not support some of the image types available in the Adobe Photoshop program. For example, you can't save an RGB image in MacPaint format because MacPaint accepts only black-and-white image data. Formats that aren't available are dimmed.

Saving Amiga IFF files

The Amiga Interchange File Format (IFF) is used to transfer documents to and from Commodore Amiga computers. In addition, this format is supported by a number of paint programs on IBM computers, including DeluxePaint from Electronic Arts; IFF is the best export format to use with that program.

To save files in the HAM version of this format, use the Amiga HAM Export module, described on page 54.

Saving BMP files

BMP is a commonly used file format on DOS and MS/Windows-compatible computers.

In the BMP Options dialog box, specify either Microsoft Windows or OS/2® format and a 1-bit to 24-bit depth for the image.

Saving CompuServe GIF files

The CompuServe® Graphics Interchange Format (GIF) is commonly used to upload documents to the CompuServe Information Service (and other online services) and to pass documents between other types of computers. GIF is a compressed format that is designed to minimize file transfer time over phone lines. The CompuServe GIF format is used for gray-scale and indexed color files.

In the GIF Options dialog box, specify an image resolution from 1 bit to 8 bits per pixel. (Note that there are no format options associated with this file format when you save a bitmapped image.)

Saving EPS files

The Encapsulated PostScript language file (EPS) format is supported by most illustration and page layout programs, and in most cases is the preferred format for these applications. Note that EPS is also the only file format that supports transparent whites in Bitmap mode.

Note: *When exporting Adobe Photoshop documents to Adobe Illustrator, make sure that the image is in CMYK mode before saving it in EPS format. If you are not using the DCS format, do not use JPEG compression when you save the CMYK file. This prevents any problems if the document is separated in Adobe Separator or QuarkXPress.*

When you save a file in EPS format, the EPS Format dialog box appears. The options in this dialog box are explained in the following sections.

Saving an EPS preview

You can choose to save a Macintosh (PICT), TIFF, or JPEG preview of a EPS file. These preview images give you an idea of what the image will look like when it is printed and allow you to accurately place the image on the page. Choose a TIFF option to save a preview for use with an IBM-compatible PC application. Choose a Macintosh option to save a PICT preview.

Note: *To use the 24-bit JPEG preview option, you must have QuickTime installed.*

Setting an encoding option

The encoding options in the EPS Format dialog box control what type of information is saved in the document, either ASCII or binary. The Binary option results in a file that is about half the size of an image saved with the ASCII encoding option and takes half as long to transfer to the printer.

Page layout applications (such as Aldus PageMaker® and Aldus FreeHand®) may not support binary EPS documents. For these applications, you should select the ASCII encoding option.

Some commercial print spooling and network printing software does not support binary encoding. If you experience printing errors, it may be that your print spooler requires ASCII encoding.

The Encoding menu also allows you to save the EPS file in JPEG format. Choose one of four JPEG options from the Encoding menu.

Note: *If you are not using the DCS format, do not use JPEG compression when you save a CMYK file in EPS format.*

Saving clipping paths

If you plan to use a path from the document as a clipping path, select the path and set a flatness value if needed. See "Using Clipping Paths" on page 88 for more information about clipping paths and flatness values.

Including halftone screen information and transfer functions

You can choose to include the EPS file halftone screen information (including the frequencies and angles of the screens) and transfer function information when you save the file. If you include the halftone screen information and place it into another application, such as Adobe Separator, the PostScript language interpreter overrides the application's own settings when the color separations are generated. The transfer information overrides the printer's default functions if you have checked the Override Printer's Default Functions option in the Transfer Functions dialog box. For more information on the transfer function, see "Compensating for Dot Gain Using the Transfer Functions" on page 34.

Saving in DCS format

When you save a CMYK document in EPS format, you have the option of saving the document in an extension of the standard EPS format developed by Quark called Desktop Color Separations (DCS). DCS can be read by certain applications that use this format, such as QuarkXPress. Four of the files contain the high-resolution color information; the fifth is called the master file. For CMYK and grayscale images, you also have the option of including a low-resolution file within a PostScript header in the master file. You use this file for checking proofs. If you want to be able to color-proof the image accurately from within the target application, include the CMYK version in the master file. Keep in mind, however, that doing this may substantially increase the size of the file. If you're certain that you will print directly to film, you don't need to select this option.

Saving a bitmapped file in EPS format

In addition, when you save a bitmapped image in EPS format, you have the option of making the white areas in the document appear transparent.

Saving Filmstrip files

The FilmStrip format is used for animation or movie files, such as those created by Adobe Premiere.

Saving JPEG files

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) compression economizes on the way data is stored and identifies and discards extra data not essential to the display of the image. Because it discards data, the JPEG algorithm is referred to as lossy. This means that once an image has been compressed and then decompressed, it will not be identical to the original image. In most cases, the difference between the original image and the image compressed using the Excellent JPEG option is indistinguishable.

In the JPEG dialog box, choose a quality setting for the compression. A trade-off exists between the image quality and the amount of compression: an image compressed using the Excellent quality option is less compressed (and thus takes

up more disk space) than an image compressed using the Fair quality option. In general, images compressed using the Excellent quality option have compression ratios between 5:1 and 15:1. JPEG images are automatically decompressed when they are opened.

Note: *To save EPS files using JPEG compression, choose an option from the Encoding menu in the EPS Format dialog box. See "Setting an Encoding Option" on page 50 for more information on this option.*

Saving MacPaint files

The MacPaint format is commonly used to transfer bitmapped images between Macintosh applications. You can use this format only for Adobe Photoshop images that are in the Bitmap mode; in addition, the images must be no larger than 576 by 720 pixels. The MacPaint file format is used only for 1-bit files.

In the MacPaint dialog box, you can choose to center the image on the page or to place it into the upper left corner of the page when it is opened.

Saving PCX files

PCX format, established by Zsoft for its PC Paintbrush software, is commonly used by IBM PC-compatible computers.

Saving PICT Files

The PICT format is widely used among Macintosh graphics and page layout applications as an intermediary file format for transferring documents between applications. The PICT format is especially effective at compressing images that contain large, flat areas of color. This compression can be dramatic for alpha channels, which often consist of large, flat areas of white and black.

In the PICT dialog box, specify a resolution of 16 bits per pixel or 32 bits per pixel. You can also choose from four JPEG compression options for the file.

Saving a file as a PICT Resource

The PICT Resource format lets you export an Adobe Photoshop document as a startup screen or include the document as a PICT resource in an application program.

If you want to use the image as a resource in an application program, accept the default ID of 0 (for a startup screen), or enter a new resource ID. You can also choose 16-bit or 32-bit resolution, and choose to save with one of four JPEG compression options.

Saving PIXAR files

The PIXAR format is designed specifically for exchanging files with PIXAR image computers. PIXAR workstations are designed for high-end graphics applications, such as those used for three-dimensional images and animation. No format options are associated with the PIXAR file format.

Saving PixelPaint files

The PixelPaint file format lets you open documents in the PixelPaint and PixelPaint Professional graphics applications. You should use this information for writing files for PixelPaint 1.0 and 2.0; PixelPaint Professional no longer allows a document to be saved in this format. PixelPaint format allows you to specify the image size (canvas) you want to use and whether you want the image to appear in the center or in the upper left corner of the canvas when you open the document. PixelPaint format is used only for indexed color and grayscale files.

Saving Raw files

The Raw format is a flexible file format for transferring documents between applications and computer platforms. Raw format consists of a stream of bytes describing the color information in the file. Each pixel is described in binary format, where 0 equals black and 255 equals white. Adobe Photoshop designates the number of channels needed to describe the image, plus any additional channels in the document. You can specify the file type, the file creator, and header information.

The file type is generally a four-character ID that identifies the file; for example, TEXT identifies the document as an ASCII text document. The file creator is also generally a four-character ID. Most Macintosh applications have a unique file creator ID that is registered with the Apple Computer Developer Services group.

The header parameter is the number of bytes of information that will appear at the beginning of the document, before the actual image information. This value defines the number of zeros that will be placed at the beginning of the document as placeholders. By default, there is no header (header size = 0). You can enter a header when you open the document in the Raw format. See "Opening Raw Files" on page 44 for more information. You can also save the file without a header and then use a file-editing program, such as Norton Utilities® for Macintosh from the Symantec Corporation, to replace the zeros with header information.

You can choose to save the image in an interleaved or noninterleaved format. If you choose the interleaved format, the color values (red, green, and blue, for example) are stored sequentially. The choice you make depends on the requirements of the application you plan to use to open the document.

Saving Scitex CT files

The Scitex Continuous Tone (CT) format is available for RGB and CMYK color images and grayscale images. Scitex computers are used for high-end image processing. Contact Scitex to obtain utilities that will allow you to transfer a document saved in the Scitex CT format to a Scitex system. When you select the Scitex CT option, the active Adobe Photoshop document is converted directly to the Scitex format; you do not select options for the conversion.

Saving Targa files

The TGA (Targa) format is designed for use on systems that use the Truevision® video board and is commonly supported by MS-DOS color applications. If you are saving an RGB image, you can choose the resolution you want.

Saving TIFF files

The Tagged-Image File Format (TIFF) is used to exchange documents between applications and computer platforms. The TIFF format supports LZW compression. LZW is the same compression used by the GIF format; however, unlike GIF, LZW TIFF supports image types other than indexed color.

When you save an Adobe Photoshop image in TIFF format, you can choose to save in a format that can be read either by Macintosh or by IBM PC-compatible computers. You can also choose to compress the document to a smaller size automatically by clicking the LZW Compression check box.

Adobe Photoshop reads and saves captions in TIFF files. This feature is of particular use with the Associated Press Picture Desk system, which uses the same TIFF caption fields. To access the captions, choose the File Info command in the File menu.

Using the Export command

Adobe Photoshop includes plug-in modules for saving files in Amiga HAM format; sending files to an ImageWriter printer; exporting paths to Adobe Illustrator; and saving Quick Edit versions of Photoshop 2.0, Scitex CT, and uncompressed TIFF files.

To use an export module:

1 Choose Export from the File menu, and select an export format from the submenu.

2 Select the file you want to export, and click OK. A dialog box appears. The options for the import modules are discussed in the following sections.

Exporting Amiga HAM files

Adobe Photoshop includes a plug-in module for exporting images in Amiga's Hold and Modify (HAM) format. HAM is an encoding scheme that packs the approximate equivalent of 12 bits of image data into 6 bits per pixel. This format is generally not supported on the Macintosh and is designed specifically for transferring Macintosh PICT images to the Amiga. Although Adobe Photoshop can read Amiga images, it cannot write them without this plug-in module.

Originally, HAM images could be only one of two sizes (320 by 200 pixels or 320 by 400 pixels). Now, however, many illustration and page layout programs can handle nonstandard HAM images. For these images, the programs use nonsquare pixels.

To maintain the proportions of your Adobe Photoshop image in the target application, use the Image Size command in the Image menu to resize the image 83 percent vertically and 120 percent horizontally if it is a noninterlaced image, and 166 percent vertically and 60 percent horizontally if it is an interlaced image. Because the Macintosh always uses square pixels, the image will appear distorted; however, it will be displayed correctly on the Amiga.

Printing an ImageWriter color file

ImageWriter Color is a plug-in module that lets you print color Adobe Photoshop images on the ImageWriter II with a color ribbon. When you choose this export module, the Page Setup dialog box appears.

Exporting paths to Adobe Illustrator

The Paths to Illustrator module lets you export pen tool paths as Adobe Illustrator documents. This feature makes it easier to work with combined Adobe Photoshop and Adobe Illustrator artwork or to use Adobe Photoshop features on Adobe Illustrator artwork. For example, you might want to export a pen tool path and stroke it to use as a trap with an Adobe Photoshop clipping path that you are printing in Adobe Illustrator. Or you might want to bring Adobe Illustrator text or objects into Adobe Photoshop, apply Adobe Photoshop features such as filters, and then export the objects as

paths back into Adobe Illustrator. You can also use this feature to align Adobe Illustrator text or objects with Adobe Photoshop paths.

To use the Paths to Illustrator module:

1 Create the path in Adobe Photoshop using the pen tool or the Make Path command. See Chapter 5, "Using Paths," for information on using the pen tool and the Make Path and Save Path commands.

2 Choose Export > Paths to Adobe Illustrator from the File menu. This saves the path in a document you can use in Illustrator.

Open the path in Adobe Illustrator as a new Adobe Illustrator document. You can now manipulate the path or use the path to align Adobe Illustrator objects. Note that the crop marks in Adobe Illustrator reflect the dimensions of the Adobe Photoshop document. The position of the path within the Adobe Photoshop document is maintained, provided you don't change the crop marks or move the path.

Exporting Quick Edit files

Use this format to save Quick Edit files back to their original file format. See "Acquiring Quick Edit Files" on page 46 for step-by-step instructions on using this module.

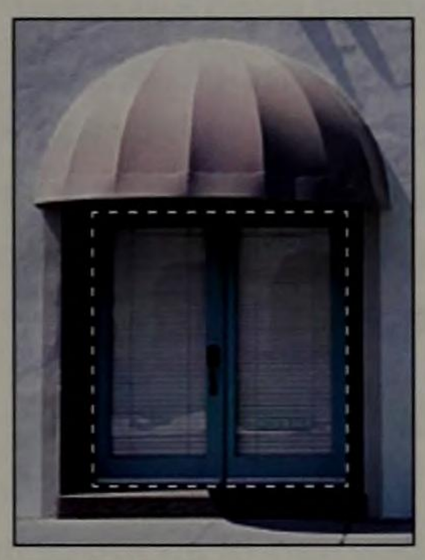
4

WORKING WITH SELECTIONS

Chapter 4: Working with Selections

To edit part of an image in Adobe Photoshop, you first select the area you want to edit. Once you have made a selection, you can move, copy, paint, or apply numerous special effects to the selected area.

For example, if you want to change the color of an area in an image, you first select the area and then fill the selection. The selected area is surrounded by a selection border, also called a selection *marquee.*



Original selection

Filled Selection

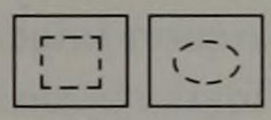
This chapter provides an overview of the selection tools and their options. It also explains how to work with selections, including deselecting, increasing and decreasing selections, cutting and pasting selections, and applying special effects. For general information on using the Options palette, see "Using the Options Palette" on page 97.

MAKING SELECTIONS

Adobe Photoshop provides several ways to select parts of images: using the marquee tool, the lasso tool, the magic wand tool, and the Color Range command. The selection tools allow you to make selections in a variety of ways and with a range of precision. (The pen tool on the Paths palette can also be used to make selections. For information on using the pen tool see "Drawing Paths" on page 82.)

Note: *When making a selection in a document that contains layers, make sure that the layer you want is the active layer. See Chapter 8, "Using Layers," for information on layers.*

Using the marquee tool



The marquee tool lets you select rectangular or elliptical areas by dragging around an area on the image.

To use the marquee tool:

1 Click the marquee tool in the toolbox. The Marquee Options appear in the Options palette.

2 Choose an option from the Shape menu in the Marquee Options palette:

- The Rectangular option draws a rectangular marquee. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to constrain the rectangular marquee to a square.
- The Elliptical option draws an elliptical marquee. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to constrain the elliptical marquee to a circle.
- The Single Row and Single Column options allow you to define the marquee as a 1-pixel-wide row or column. Click near the row or column you want to select; then drag the marquee to the exact location.

Note: *To toggle between the rectangular and elliptical marquees, hold down the Option key and click the marquee tool.*

3 If you've selected the rectangular or elliptical marquee, choose an option from the Style menu in the Marquee Options palette:

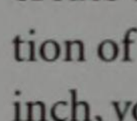
- The Normal option lets you drag to determine the marquee style.
- The Constrained Aspect Ratio option sets a height-to-width ratio for the marquee. Enter the value in pixels (including decimal values) for the aspect ratio. For example, to draw a marquee that is twice as wide as it is high, you would enter 2 for the width and 1 for the height in the marquee.
- The Fixed Size option lets you specify set values for the marquee's height and width. Enter the pixel values for the fixed size marquee in whole numbers. The number of pixels needed to create a 1-inch selection depends on the resolution of the image. For a file that has 72 pixels per inch, you need 72 pixels to make 1 inch. For a file that has 200 pixels per inch, you need a value of 200 to make 1 inch.

4 To define a feather edge as you make a selection, enter a pixel value in the Feather text box in the Marquee Options palette. See "Softening the Edges of a Selection" on page 65 for more information on feather edges.

5 Hold down the mouse button and drag to make a selection.

Note: *By default, the marquee is drawn from its edge. To draw the marquee from its center, hold down the Option key while you drag.*

Using the lasso tool



The lasso tool lets you make a selection by drawing a freehand outline around an area. To draw straight lines, hold down the Option key and click to define the endpoints.

To use the lasso:

1 Click the lasso tool in the toolbox. The Lasso Options appear in the Options palette.

2 Choose from the following options:

- To define a feather edge as you make a selection, enter a pixel value in the Feather text box in the Lasso Options palette.
- By default, a lasso selection is anti-aliased. Deselect Anti-aliased in the Lasso Options palette to turn off this option.

See "Softening the Edges of a Selection" on page 65 for more information on feather edges and anti-aliasing.

3 Drag around the area you want to select. To draw straight line segments, hold down the Option key and click where you want the segments to begin and end.

Using the magic wand tool

The magic wand tool lets you select portions of an image based on the color similarities of adjacent pixels. This tool can be useful for selecting part of an image (for example, a red flower) without having to trace the outline with the lasso tool. When you use the magic wand, Adobe Photoshop determines whether the adjacent pixels are within the color values, or *tolerance*, that you specify.

To use the magic wand:

1 Click the magic wand in the toolbox.

2 Enter a tolerance value in the Magic Wand Options palette.

The tolerance can range from 0 to 255. Enter a low tolerance value to select colors very similar in color value to the pixel you click. Enter a higher tolerance to select a broader range of colors.

3 Click the color you want to select in the image.

All adjacent pixels within the tolerance range are selected.

Tolerance: 30

Tolerance: 60

Using the Color Range command

The Color Range command selects a specified color within a selection or within an entire image. You can choose from a preset range of colors or you can build the selection by sampling colors from the image.

Unlike the other selection tools in Adobe Photoshop, the Color Range command operates on the current selection. This feature enables you to select subsets of colors. For example, to select colors containing both cyan and green (that is, to exclude blue from a cyan selection), you can select Cyans in the Color Range dialog box, click OK, and then reopen the Color Range dialog box and select Greens. You can also use the Highlights, Midtones, and Out-of-Gamut options to select subsets of colors. Note that you must click OK and then reopen the Color Range dialog box to modify a selection. If you want to replace a selection, be sure to deselect everything before applying the Color Range command.

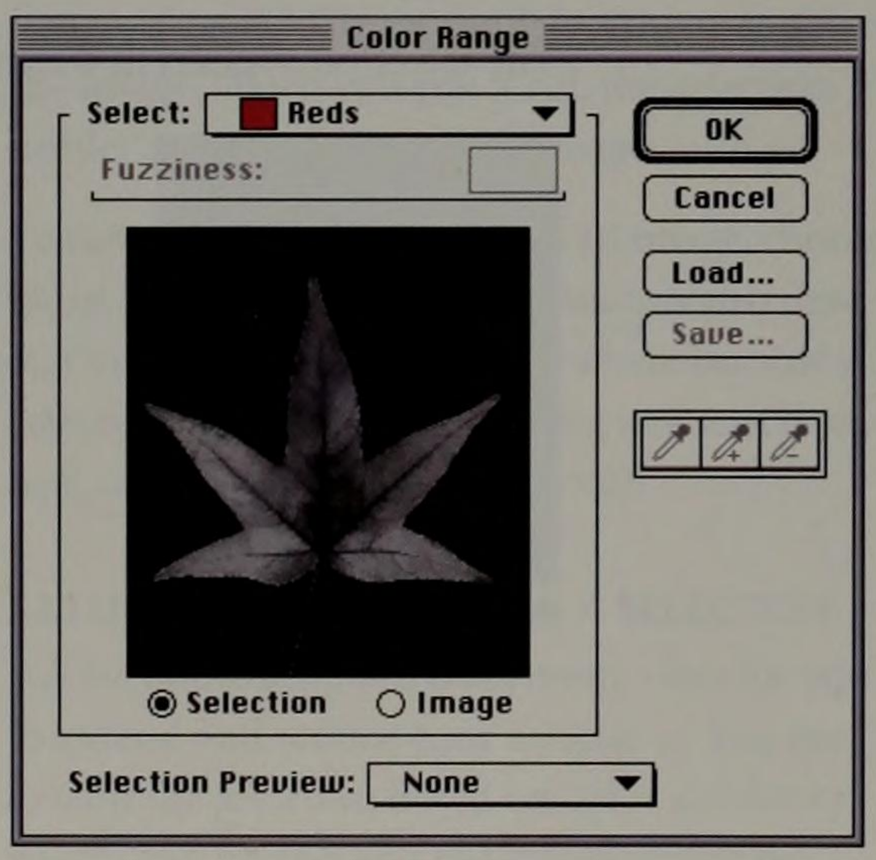
To select a range using preset colors:

1 Choose Color Range from the Select menu. The Color Range dialog box appears.

The Color Range dialog box contains a preview area that shows either the selection you're making or the image you're working in. When it first opens, the preview area shows a selection that corresponds to the areas in the image that contain the foreground color.

2 Choose a color range option from the Select menu. Note that the Out-of-Gamut option works only on RGB images. (An out-of-gamut color is an RGB color that cannot be printed using process color printing. See "Color Gamuts" on page 9 for more information.)

When you click the Selection option, the selected areas appear in the preview area.



3 To preview the selection in the image window, choose one of the following options from the Selection Preview menu at the bottom of the dialog box:

- None displays no preview in the image window.
- Grayscale displays the selection as it would appear in a grayscale channel.
- Black Matte displays the selection in color against a black background.
- White Matte displays the selection in color against a white background.
- Quick Mask displays the selection using the current Quick Mask settings. (See "Using Quick Mask Mode," on page 152 for more information.)

4 Click OK to make the selection.

The selection appears in the image.

Reds in image selected

To select a color range using sampled colors:

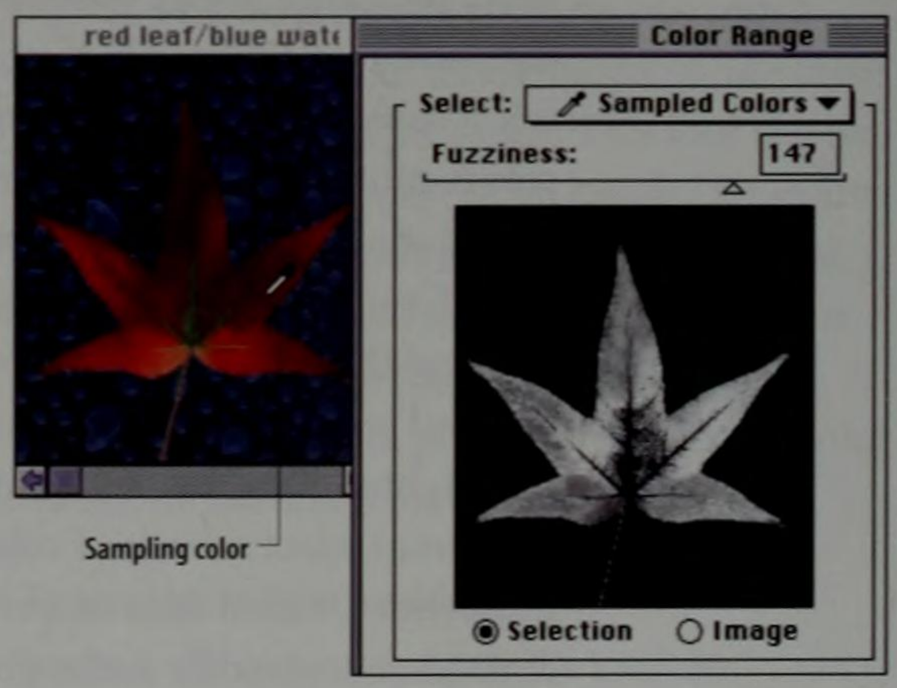
1 Choose Color Range from the Select menu. The Color Range dialog box appears.

2 Choose Sampled Colors from the Select menu in the Color Range dialog box.

Leave the preview area set to Selection when you want to see the selection as you build it. Choose the Image preview option when you want to preview the entire image, for example, if the area of the image you want to sample is not visible—as when you're working in a magnified view of the image. You can then switch back to the Selection option to see any changes to the selection.

Note: *To toggle between the Image and Selection previews, hold down the Control key.*

3 Move the cursor over the image or the preview area (it turns into the eyedropper). Sample the colors you want to include in the selection.



4 Adjust the range of colors using the Fuzziness slider or by entering a value in the Fuzziness text box. To decrease the range of colors selected, decrease the fuzziness. The Fuzziness option works like the Tolerance option in the Magic Wand and Paint Bucket Options palettes.

Fuzziness: 50

Fuzziness: 150

5 Use the plus and minus eyedroppers in the Color Range dialog box to add or delete colors from the selection. You can click the eyedroppers in the preview box or in the image.

Adding colors to selection

6 To preview the selection in the image window, choose one of the options from the Selection Preview menu at the bottom of the dialog box. See "Selecting a Preset Color Range" on page 59 for a discussion of these options.

7 Click OK to make the selection.

The selection appears in the image.

To save and load color range settings:

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Color Range dialog box to save the settings used to create a color selection and then reuse those settings.

Selecting and deselecting an entire image

When you want to cut, copy, fill, or edit an entire image, choose All from the Select menu to select the image. When you select All, the selection border surrounds the entire image.

To deselect all selected areas in an image, choose None from the Select menu. You can also deselect everything by clicking anywhere outside a selected area on the image using any selection tool (except the magic wand tool).

EXTENDING AND REDUCING A SELECTION

Adobe Photoshop provides many ways for you to extend and reduce your selections. You can extend the selection based on color similarity, or you can extend and reduce selections by adjusting the selection borders. To fine-tune a selection, you can add unselected pixels to a selection or you can expand and contract the selection border. Before adding to or subtracting from a selection, make sure you have the same

feather and anti-aliased settings in the Options palette that you used when you made the original selection.

Adding to a selection

You can add to an existing selection or select more than one area of an image at a time. The resulting selection contains all the pixels in both the original and the new selection.

To add to a selection:

1 Make a selection.

2 Hold down the Shift key and select the area you want to add to the selection. You can use any selection tool to add to a selection.

Original selection

Extended selection

Subtracting from a selection

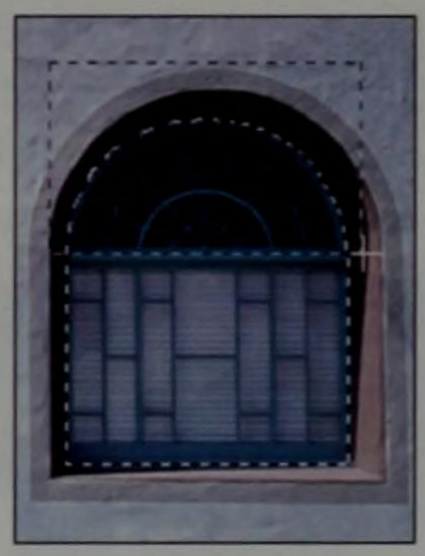
When you subtract from a selection, the resulting selection contains all the pixels in the original selection that are not in the new selection.

To subtract from a selection:

1 Make a selection.

2 Hold down the Command key (⌘) and select the area you want to subtract from the selection. You can use any selection tool to subtract from a selection.

Original selection



Area to be subtracted

Resulting selection

USING THE GROW AND SIMILAR COMMANDS

The Grow and Similar commands allow you to expand a selection to include areas similar in color to the current selection. These commands use the tolerance specified in the Magic Wand Options palette to define the color range of pixels to be included in the expanded selection.

Note: *You cannot use the Grow or Similar commands on bitmapped images.*

To extend a color-based selection:

- Choose Grow from the Select menu to include adjacent pixels that fall within the specified tolerance range.
- Choose Similar from the Select menu to include pixels throughout the image, not just the ones next to the selection, that fall within the specified tolerance range.

Choose either command repeatedly to increase the selection in increments.

Original selection

Grow command applied

Similar command applied

SMOOTHING A SELECTION

In some instances, making a color-based selection leaves stray pixels both inside and outside the selected area. You can clean up a selection by using the Smooth command to include or eliminate stray pixels in the selection. The Smooth command increases or decreases a selection to include or eliminate isolated unselected areas that break up the continuity of a selection. Smoothing is especially effective when you are blending, cloning, or making other changes that you want to appear seamless in the final selection.

To smooth a selection:

1 Choose Modify > Smooth from the Select menu. The Smooth Selection dialog box appears.

2 Enter a pixel radius in the Sample Radius text box and click OK.

Adobe Photoshop checks the radius around each pixel to find any unselected pixels that fall within the specified radius range. For example, if you enter 16 for the sample radius, the program uses each pixel as the center of a 32 pixel diameter (16 pixels in every direction). If most of the pixels in the radius are selected, any unselected pixels are added to the selection. If most of the pixels are unselected, any selected pixels are deleted from the selection.

Note: *The relative distance in pixels varies depending on the resolution of the image. For example, 5 pixels is a longer distance in an image with a resolution of 72 dpi than it is in an image with a resolution of 300 dpi.*

Expanding and contracting a selection border

Once you have made a selection, you can modify the selection by expanding or contracting the selection border by a specified number of pixels.

To expand a selection border:

1 Choose Modify > Expand from the Select menu. The Expand Selection dialog box appears.

2 Enter a pixel value (between 1 and 16) in the Expand By text box and click OK.

The selection border is increased by the specified number of pixels.

To contract a selection border:

1 Choose Modify > Contract from the Select menu. The Contract Selection dialog box appears.

2 Enter a pixel value in the Contract By text box and click OK.

The selection border is decreased by the specified number of pixels. The Contract command does not shrink a selection away from the edges of the image (for example, if you have made the selection using the All command in the Select menu).

Selecting the intersections of selections

You can use any selection tool to select the intersection of two or more overlapping selection borders. The resulting selection contains all the pixels that were selected in both selections.

To select the intersection of two or more selection borders:

1 Click a selection tool.

2 Hold down the ⌘ and Shift keys and drag to define the area of intersection.

Selecting a border around a selection

You can define a selection and then select an area of a specified width outlining the selection using the Border command. Note that the Border command works only on a selection. When there is no selection, the option is dimmed.

To select an area around a selection border:

1 Choose Modify > Border from the Select menu. The Border dialog box appears.

2 Enter the width in pixels for the border area and click OK.

The original selection border is surrounded by another border. The area between the two selection borders is selected.

Original selection *Border: 5 pixels*

Selecting the unselected areas in an image

Sometimes it is more convenient to select large parts of an image by first selecting the parts you don't want to modify and then automatically selecting the remaining portions of the image.

To select the part of the image that is not currently selected, choose Inverse from the Select menu. Choose the command again to return to the original selection.

Door & awning selected

Inverse command selects everything but the door & awning

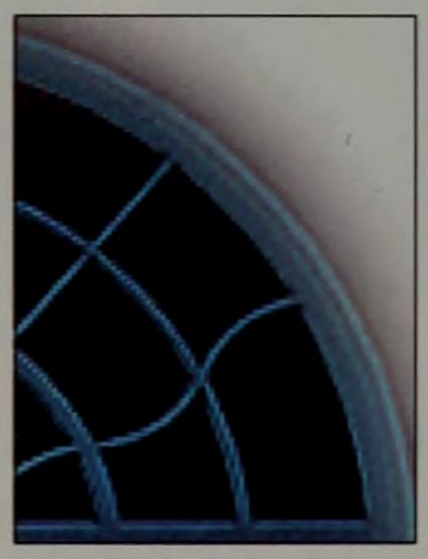
SOFTENING THE EDGES OF A SELECTION

In some cases, you might want to soften the effect of pasting or moving a selection by smoothing the hard edges of the selection. You can make the transition between the pixels in the selection and the surrounding pixels more gradual by feathering or by anti-aliasing.

The effect of softening the edges is apparent only when you modify a selection by cutting, moving, pasting, or filling it. For example, if you paint on a soft-edged selection, the color of the paint blends with the color of the edge pixels. If you adjust the contrast of a soft-edged selection, the contrast change fades out toward the edge of the selected area.

Feathering blurs the edges of the selection by building a transition boundary between the selection and the surrounding pixels. The transition gradually blends the edges of the selection. This smoothing can cause some loss of detail at the edge of the selection.

Anti-aliasing produces a smooth edge by partially selecting the pixels that lie only partially inside the selection border. Since anti-aliasing removes jagged edges, it is especially useful when you're creating composite images by cutting and pasting. No detail is lost, since only the edge pixels change.



Feathered edge

Anti-aliased edge

Defining a feather edge

Use the Feather option in the Marquee Options palette and the Lasso Options palette to define a feather edge *as you make a selection*. The Feather value specifies how far the feather edge extends. The Feather value can range in width from 1 to 250 pixels.

Feathering an existing selection

To define a feather edge for an existing selection, choose the Feather command in the Select menu, and enter a value in the Feather Selection dialog box.

The following illustration shows a feather radius value applied to a selection that was then pasted into another image.

Original selection *Feather radius: 10 pixels*

Using the Anti-aliased option

Use the Anti-aliased option in the Lasso Options and Magic Wand Options palettes when you want to make a subtle transition between the edges of a selection and the surrounding pixels. Anti-aliasing partially fills edge pixels so that they are semitransparent. The following illustration shows a selection pasted into another image with and without anti-aliasing.

Anti-aliased option on *Anti-aliased option off*

Hiding a selection border

When you want to view a selection without the border, for example, to preview a moved selection, you can temporarily hide the selection border.

To hide a selection border:

Choose Hide Edges from the Select menu.

Any changes you specify, such as fills or color adjustments, are still applied to the current selection, but the border remains hidden. The Hide Edges command affects the current selection only. The selection border reappears when you make another selection.

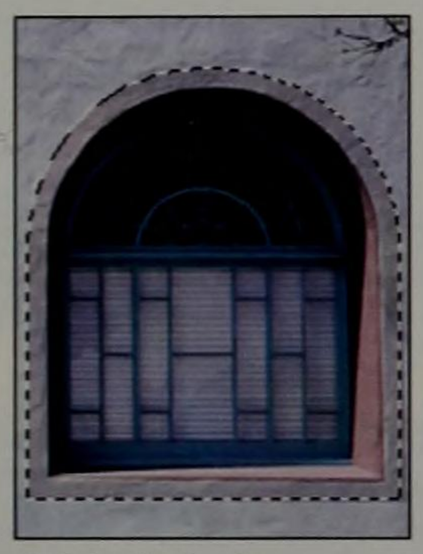
To redisplay the selection border around the current selection, choose Show Edges from the Select menu.

ABOUT FLOATING SELECTIONS

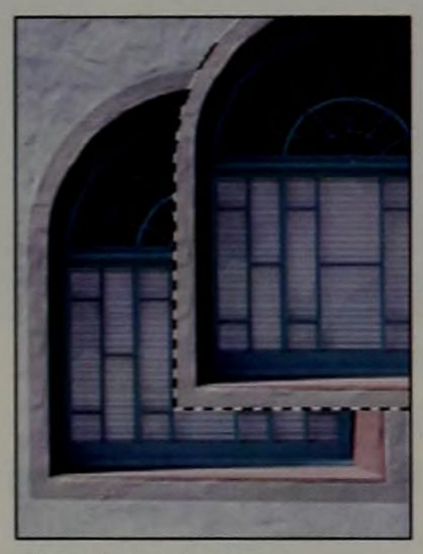
An important concept in image editing is the difference between a *floating* and a *nonfloating* selection. When you select part of an image using a selection tool, that selection is nonfloating. Moving or deleting a nonfloating selection affects the pixels in the background. The original location of the selection is filled with the background color.

A floating selection is a selection that you've moved or pasted into an image but have not yet deselected. Newly created text also appears

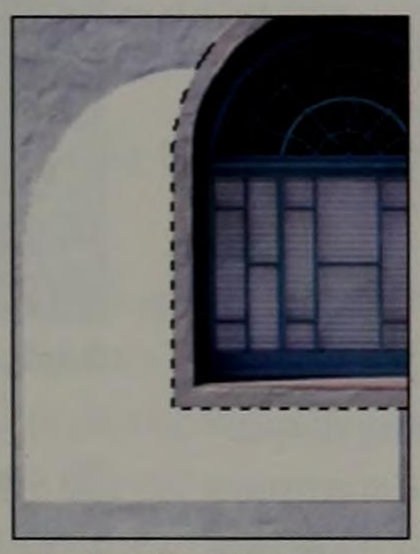
as a floating selection. Moving a floating selection on a background does not affect the underlying pixels.



Original selection



Floating selection



Nonfloating selection

The selection is floating because it sits on a plane above the current target layer or the background. In effect, a floating selection is a temporary layer in the document. Floating selections are best used for copying, cutting, pasting, and moving. Once you deselect a floating selection, the selection is lost and the change is permanent.

For more complex editing, it's best to convert a floating selection into a layer. Once the selection is in a layer, you can try out different blending effects and positions without merging the data into the underlying layer. See "Pasting Selections onto Layers" on page 131 for more information on floating selections and layers.

To float or defloat a selection:

Choose Float or Defloat from the Select menu.

You can also use this command to determine the status of the current selection. If Float appears in the menu, the selection is nonfloating. If Defloat appears, the selection is floating.

MOVING A SELECTION

You drag a selection to move it around. When the Info palette is open on your desktop, you can track the exact distance you are moving a selection.

If the selection is nonfloating and in the background, the area left by the selection is filled with the current background color. If the selection is floating and in the background, dragging does not affect the original location of the selection.

You can also move just the selection border if you want to fine-tune the position of the selection or use the border to select a different area in the image.

To move a selection:

1 Click the move tool in the toolbox. (If you have a selection tool selected, the cursor turns into the move tool whenever you move inside a selection. If you have any other tool selected, hold down the ⌘ key. The pointer changes to the move cursor when you move it inside the selection).

2 Drag the selection to the position you want.

To constrain the movement to a 45-degree angle, hold down the Shift key as you drag. To move the selection in 1-pixel increments, use the arrow keys on the keyboard. The selection

moves in the direction of the arrow. To move the selection in 10-pixel increments, hold down the Shift key and press an arrow key.

Note: *If multiple areas are selected, all the selected areas move as you drag.*

To move just the selection border:

1 Click the move tool or a selection tool in the toolbox and position the pointer inside the selection border. The pointer changes to the move cursor.

2 Hold down the ⌘ and Option keys and drag the selection border to the position you want.

To move the selection border in 1-pixel increments, hold down the ⌘ and Option keys and use the arrow keys on the keyboard.

COPYING A SELECTION

You can copy a selection using the Copy command in the Edit menu by holding down the Option key and dragging a selection within a document, or by dragging a selection from one document to another.

Duplicating a selection as you move it

You can use the Option key to make a copy of a selection as you drag it. You can drag the selection or press an arrow key to create multiple duplicates.

To make a duplicate of a selection:

1 Click a selection tool.

2 Hold down the Option key and drag the duplicate selection to the position you want.

Original selection

Duplicate selection

To create multiple duplicates of a selection:

1 Hold down the Option key.

2 Press the arrow key pointing in the direction you want to move the duplicates.

Each time you press the arrow key, a duplicate of the selection is created and offset by 1 pixel from the last duplicate.

Copying selections between applications

A selection cut or copied using the Cut or Copy command in the Edit menu remains on the Clipboard until you copy or cut another selection. By default, when you quit Adobe Photoshop, or switch to another application, the

contents of the Clipboard are converted to PICT format. This conversion lets you paste the Clipboard's contents into a document created in another application.

To save time, you can disable this automatic conversion if you don't intend to paste the Clipboard contents in other applications. The automatic conversion does not affect the pasting of selections between Adobe Photoshop documents.

To change the Export Clipboard preference:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box.

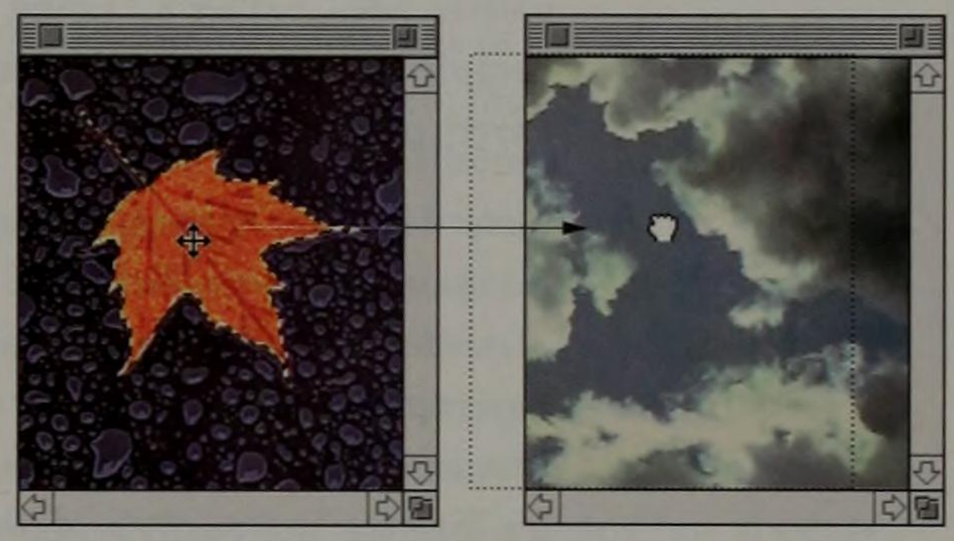
3 Select the Export Clipboard option to save the contents of the Clipboard when you exit Adobe Photoshop. If you turn off this option, the contents of the Clipboard are deleted when you switch applications or leave the program.

Copying a selection from one document to another

While you can use the Copy and Paste commands to copy a selection from one document to another, it is often faster and easier to use the drag and drop method. This method bypasses the Clipboard.

To copy a selection from any other open Adobe Photoshop document:

Drag the selection from one window to another (the cursor becomes the move cursor when you are inside a selected area).



Selection dragged to new document

Result

PASTING A SELECTION

Adobe Photoshop offers a range of pasting options that control how the pasted selection appears in the image. You use the Paste command in the Edit menu to paste a selection into another part of an image or into another document. When you choose the Paste command, the last selection you cut or copied appears in the center of the image and becomes the current selection. If there's already a

selection, the pasted selection appears on top of it. Pasted selections are floating until they're deselected.

Because floating selections are temporary layers, they are controlled by the options in the Layers palette. See Chapter 8, "Using Layers," for a complete description of layers and using the Layers palette.

Note: *The paste controls available in the Composite Controls dialog box in earlier versions of Adobe Photoshop are now available in the Layers palette and in the Layer Options dialog box in Adobe Photoshop 3.0. For more information, see "Specifying Opacity and Blending Modes" on page 139.*

Controlling the opacity and mode of a floating selection

By default, a pasted selection completely covers the pixels it's floating over. You can make a floating selection partially transparent and paste it using a specific painting mode. You can even specify which pixels in a floating selection replace the pixels in the underlying layer. If you want to paste a floating selection without permanently changing any of its pixels, convert the selection into a layer. See "Pasting Selections onto Layers" on page 131 for more information.

To control the opacity of a floating selection:

Use the opacity slider in the Layers palette to control the appearance of the floating selection.

To use a painting mode while pasting:

Choose an option from the Mode menu in the Layers palette.

The mode determines which pixels in the floating selection will replace the underlying pixels, based on a comparison of the pixels. For example, Normal mode pastes all the pixels in the floating selection; Darken mode pastes only pixels that are darker than the pixels in the underlying image; and Lighten mode pastes only pixels that are lighter than the pixels in the underlying image.

See "Specifying Opacity and Blending Modes" on page 139 for examples of the mode effects.

Pasting using different resolutions

When you're pasting between documents that have different resolutions, the pasted selection retains its current pixel dimensions when pasted. This can make the selection appear out of proportion to the new image. To match the images, use the Image Size command to make both images the same resolution before copying and pasting. See "Using the Image Size Command" on page 191 for more information on resizing.

Pasting into another selection

You can paste a cut or copied selection (the *source selection*) inside another selection in the image (the *target selection*).

To paste one selection into another:

1 Cut or copy the part of the image you want to paste.

2 Use a selection tool to select the part of the image you want to paste the selection into.

Source selection

Target selection

3 Choose Paste Into from the Edit menu. The source selection appears as the current selection and is masked by the target selection.

4 Drag the source selection until the part you want to see is in the target selection; then deselect the selection.

Source selection pasted into target selection

Selection moved

You can use the Paste Into command to replace a selection that was cut or to place a copied selection exactly on top of itself.

Pasting from another application

Adobe Photoshop also allows you to paste PostScript artwork copied to the Clipboard from applications such as Adobe Illustrator (version 5.0 and higher), Adobe Dimensions™, and Adobe Type Align™. When pasting this artwork, you can choose to paste in pixels or have the artwork *rasterized* as it is pasted; that is, the artwork is converted from the mathematically defined lines and curves of the vector images drawn in Adobe Illustrator to the points (or pixels) displayed on a grid in Adobe Photoshop. You can also choose to use anti-aliasing in conjunction with the rasterization. When you paste a selection from one of these applications, a dialog box appears so that you can choose your pasting options.

DELETING A SELECTION

To cut a selection to the Clipboard, choose Cut from the Edit menu. To delete a selection, choose Clear from the Edit menu, or press Delete. A floating selection is deleted and the layer remains intact. A nonfloating selection is replaced by the background color in the background or, if the selection is on a layer, by the layer transparency.

MATTING A MOVED OR PASTED SELECTION

When you move or paste an anti-aliased selection, some of the pixels surrounding the selection border are included with the selection. This can result in a fringe or halo around the edges of the selection. You use the commands in the Matting menu to edit these unwanted edge pixels.

Defringing a selection

The Defringe command replaces the color of any "fringe" pixels with the colors of nearby pixels that contain pure colors (pure color pixels don't contain any of the background color). For example, if you select a white object on a blue background and move the selection, some of the blue background is moved with the object. The Defringe command removes the blue pixels.

To decrease a fringe:

1 Move or paste the selection, or use the Float command in the Select menu to make the selection containing the fringe into a floating selection.

2 Choose Matting > Defringe from the Select menu. The Defringe dialog box appears.

3 Enter a value in the dialog box for the distance used to find replacement pixels; then click OK.

In most cases, a distance of 1 or 2 pixels is sufficient to locate pixels that effectively remove a fringe.

Floating selection

Defringe value: 2 pixels

Removing matte from a selection

The Remove Black Matte and Remove White Matte commands are useful when you have a selection that has been saved in an alpha channel and includes some partially selected pixels. For example, this might occur if you have applied a blur filter to the selection. When you paste this selection into a new background, some of the white or black background is also pasted.

The Remove Black Matte mode removes the remnants (ghosting) of black around the edges of images created on black backgrounds. The Remove White Matte mode eliminates the remnants (ghosting) of white around the edges of images created on white backgrounds.

To remove a matte from a selection:

Choose Matting > Remove Black Matte or Matting > Remove White Matte from the Select menu.

APPLYING EFFECTS TO A SELECTION

You use the commands in the Image menu to duplicate, rotate, and flip selections and to apply special manipulation effects such as skewing, scaling, distortion, and perspective. Unless noted, all the manipulations start from a point of origin that you specify. Adobe Photoshop applies the chosen manipulation or special effect to the current selection. If nothing is selected, the effect is applied to the entire image.

Using interpolation

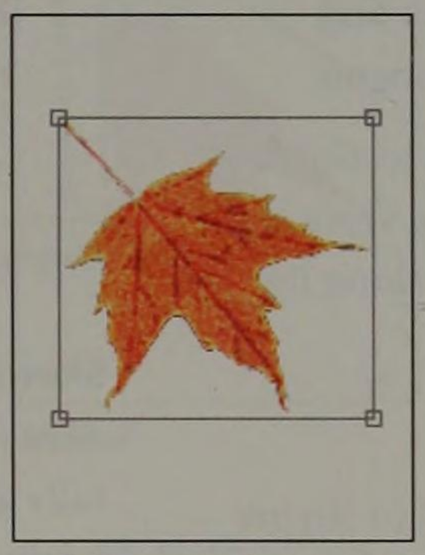
To calculate the color values of pixels that are added or deleted during manipulation, Adobe Photoshop uses the interpolation method selected in the General Preferences dialog box.

This option has a direct effect on the speed and quality of the manipulation. The default Bicubic interpolation is the slowest method, but it yields the best results. For more information on selecting an interpolation method, see "Selecting an Interpolation Method" on page 187.

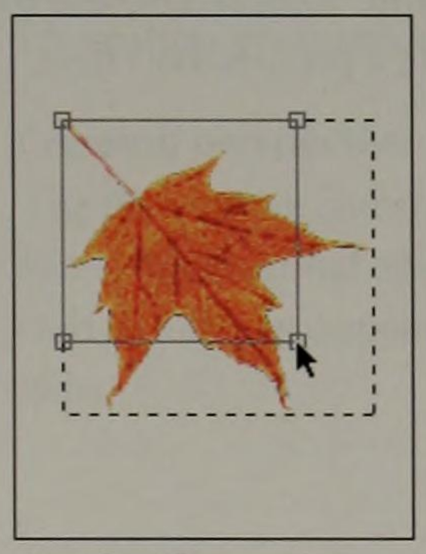
Previewing and applying effects

When you scale, skew, distort, rotate, or apply perspective to a layer using the Free option, Adobe Photoshop displays a preview of the effect. As you drag a handle and pause, the preview of the effect appears. To apply the effect, move the pointer inside the selection (the pointer turns into a gavel) and click. If you don't want to apply the effect, move the pointer anywhere outside the selection (the pointer turns into the No symbol) and click.

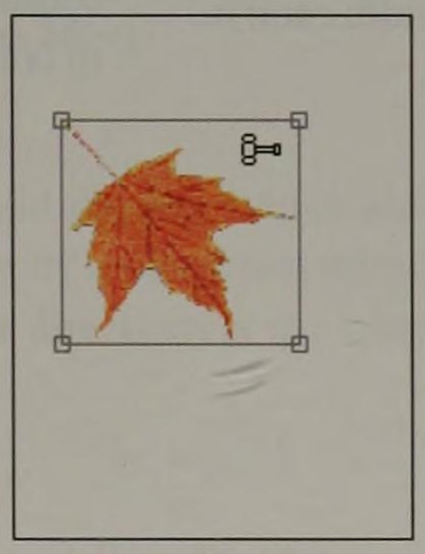
Select image . . .



and choose Scale command.



Drag handle to scale . . .



and click inside box.

Rotating a selection

The Rotate command lets you make gradual or dramatic adjustments to all or part of an image.

To rotate a selection:

1 Select the part of the image you want to rotate.

2 Choose Rotate from the Image menu and one of the following commands from the submenu:

- The 180°, 90° CW (clockwise), and 90° CCW (counterclockwise) commands rotate the image to the specified angle.
- The Arbitrary command specifies an angle for the rotation. When you choose this option, the Arbitrary Rotate dialog box appears so that you can enter the rotation angle. This value can range from –359.9 to +359.9 degrees. You must also indicate a clockwise or counterclockwise direction for the arbitrary rotation.
- The Free command allows you to rotate the selection to a new orientation. When you choose this option, four handles appear around the selection. Drag one of the handles to change the selection's position. Holding down the Shift key constrains the rotation to 15 degree increments. When you release the handles, a preview of the rotation appears. Click inside the selection to apply the free rotation.

Rotating an entire image

It's best not to make any selection when you want to rotate an entire image (and the document size is the size of the actual image). If you select the entire image using the All command in the Select menu and apply an arbitrary or 90-degree rotation, the resulting image is cropped. If there is no selection, both the image and the document are rotated and there is no cropping. When necessary, Adobe Photoshop makes the document area larger to accommodate the rotated image.

Flipping a selection

You can flip a selection horizontally or vertically.

To flip a selection:

1 Select the part of the image you want to flip.

2 Choose Flip from the Image menu and Horizontal or Vertical from the submenu.

3 The Horizontal option flips the selection horizontally, along the vertical axis. The Vertical option flips the selection vertically, along the horizontal axis.

Scaling a selection

The Scale command lets you extend or shrink the length or width of a selection. You can also constrain the selection's height-to-width ratio to prevent distortion.

To scale a selection:

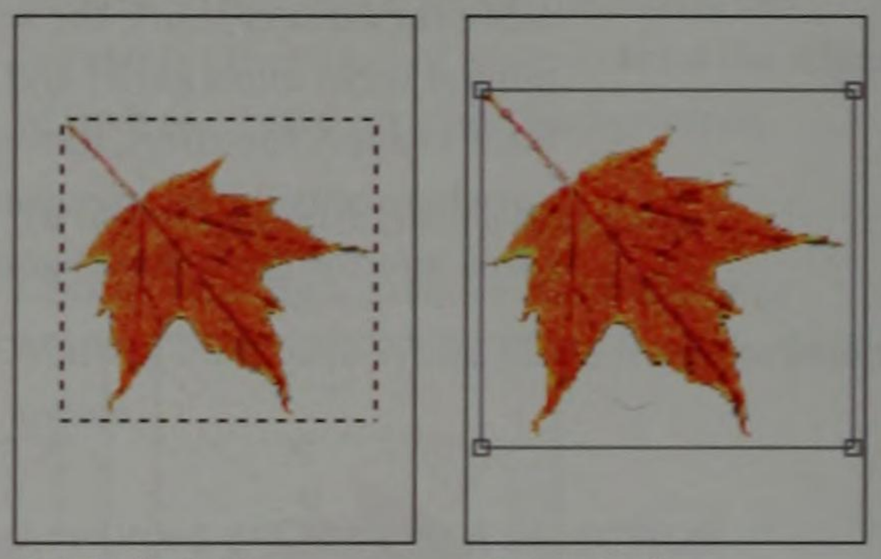
1 Select the part of the image you want to scale.

2 Choose Effects > Scale from the Image menu. Four handles appear around the selection.

3 Drag a handle to alter the selection. A preview of the scaled image appears.

To maintain the selection's height-to-width ratio and prevent the image from becoming distorted, hold down the Shift key as you drag.

4 Click inside the selection to apply the scaling. Click outside the selection to cancel the scaling.



Original selection *Constrained*

Skewing a selection

Skewing slants a selection vertically or horizontally along the edge of a selection. To slant a selection in one direction, use the Skew command. You can also use the Skew command to create a perspective effect.

To skew a selection:

1 Select the part of the image you want to skew.

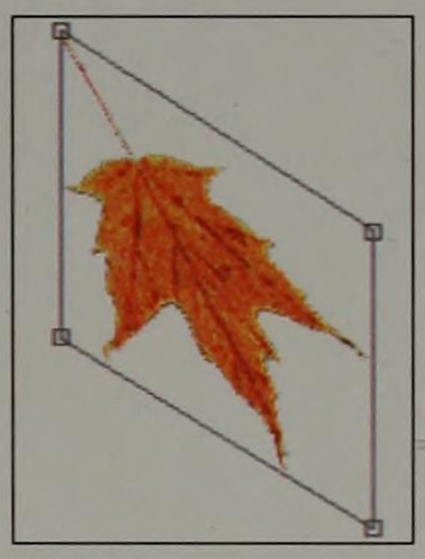
2 Choose Effects > Skew from the Image menu.

3 Drag a handle in the direction you want the selection to slant. A preview of the skewed selection appears.

If you release the mouse button and drag another handle, the second handle moves independently. This technique lets you create a perspective effect. To retain the skewing effect, hold down the Shift key as you drag.

4 Click inside the selection to apply the skewing. Click outside the selection to cancel the skewing.

Original selection



Skewed

See "Selecting an Interpolation Method" on page 187 for more information on how Adobe Photoshop generates this effect.

Creating perspective

The Perspective command allows you to create a three-dimensional effect by moving two selection handles in opposite directions at the same time.

To use the Perspective command:

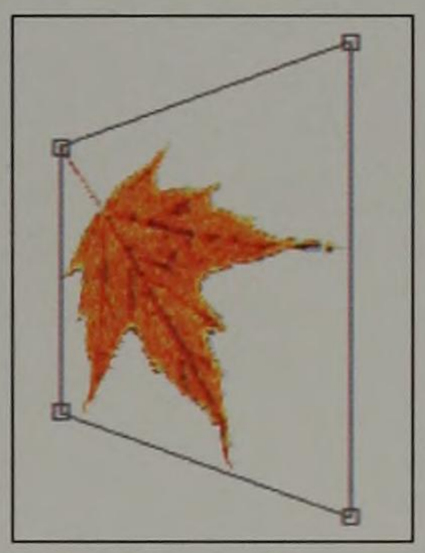
1 Select the part of the image you want to appear in perspective.

2 Choose Effects > Perspective from the Image menu.

3 Drag a handle to create the effect you want. A preview of the altered selection appears.

4 Click inside the selection to apply the perspective change. Click outside the selection to cancel the perspective change.

Original selection



Perspective applied

Note: *To create a perspective effect with a vanishing point at an angle other than 90 degrees, use the Distort command.*

Distorting a selection

The Distort command enables you to change the proportions of your selection by dragging the corner handles of the selection independently.

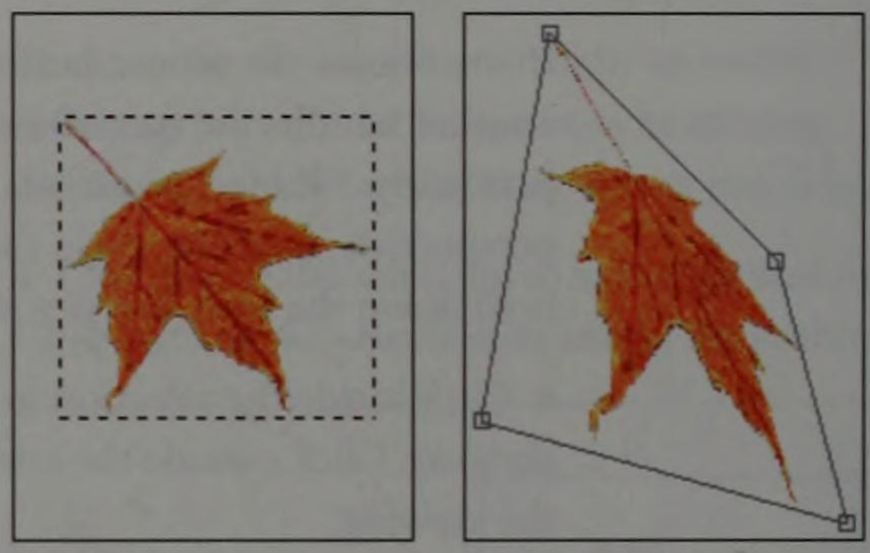
To distort a selection:

1 Select the part of the image you want to distort.

2 Choose Effects > Distort from the Image menu.

3 Drag the handles to create the distorted shape you want. A preview of the distorted selection appears.

4 Click inside the selection to apply the distortion. Click outside the selection to cancel the distortion.



Original selection *Distort applied*

Chapter

5

USING PATHS

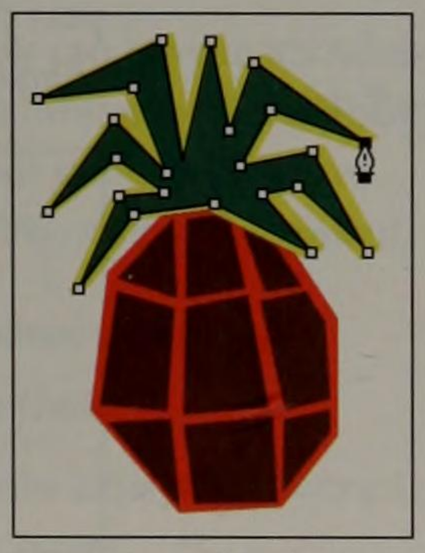
Chapter 5: Using Paths

A *path* is any line or curve you draw using the Adobe Photoshop pen tool. Drawing paths is like putting a piece of tracing paper over a image and drawing *Bezier curves,* which are curved lines that can be easily edited. This chapter describes how to use the Paths palette to access the pen tool, and how to draw paths.

The pen tool lets you draw smooth-edged paths with precision. Paths are useful for defining areas to fill, or for drawing shapes that can be stroked using a painting tool. Paths provide an excellent alternative to using the lasso tool, which tends to produce irregularly-shaped selections. The pen tool, on the other hand, always gives you smooth anti-aliased outlines.

Paths are also useful for long-term storage of simple masks because paths are small, compact, and take up much less disk space than pixel selections. You can also resize or scale a path without losing any resolution or quality. You can copy paths from one Adobe Photoshop document to another or copy and paste paths to and from Adobe Illustrator documents.

Pen tools used to create an accurate selection



Pen tools used as drawing tools

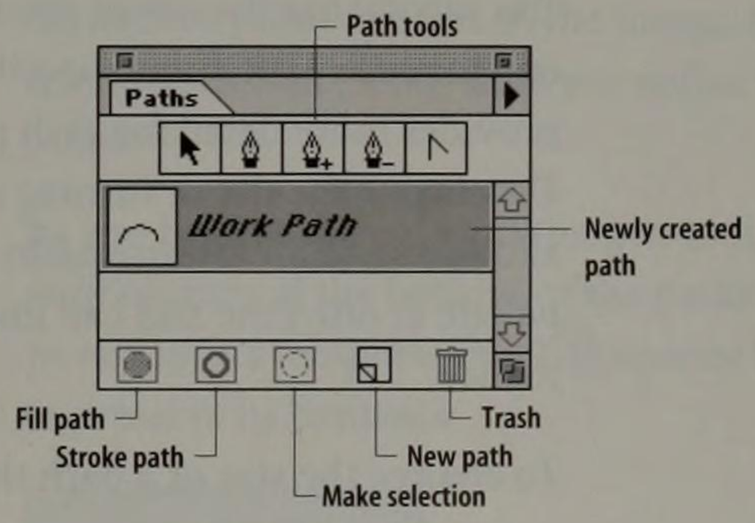
USING THE PATHS PALETTE

You use the Paths palette to create, save, and work with paths. This section describes techniques for displaying the palette, selecting and hiding paths, and changing the path thumbnails. The remaining sections in this chapter describe how to use the Paths palette to create and edit paths, convert paths to selections and selections to paths, and use clipping paths.

To use the pen tool to create paths, you must first display the Paths palette.

To display the Paths palette:

Choose Palettes > Show Paths from the Window menu.



The Paths palette lists the paths. A thumbnail of the path contents appears to the left of the path name. Use the scroll bars or resize the palette to see additional paths.

To select a path:

In the Paths palette, click the path name. The name of the selected path is highlighted and the path appears in the image. You can select only one path at a time.

To deselect a path:

Click outside the path name in the palette.

To hide or show a path:

1 In the Paths palette, select the name of the path you want to hide.

2 Choose Turn Off Path from the Palette menu. The path temporarily disappears from the image and becomes deselected.

Shortcut: *Shift-click a path name in the Paths palette to toggle between hiding and showing the path. Clicking anywhere in the Paths palette (off the path list) also deselects the path.*

3 To redisplay the path, click the path name in the Paths palette.

Hiding and resizing path thumbnails

You can change the size of or turn off the thumbnail for each path. Increasing the thumbnail size provides more detail for each path shape. Decreasing the size or turning off the thumbnail allows you to view more paths in the Paths palette at one time and can improve performance.

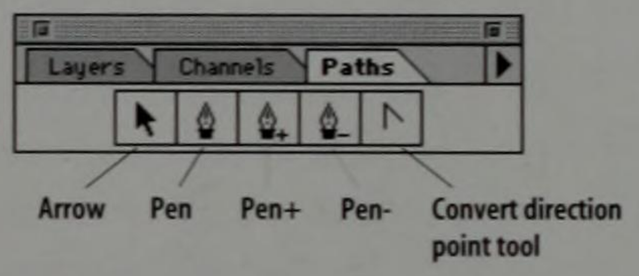
To change the size of a path thumbnail:

1 Choose Palette Options from the Paths palette menu.

2 Click a size or click None to turn off the display of thumbnails.

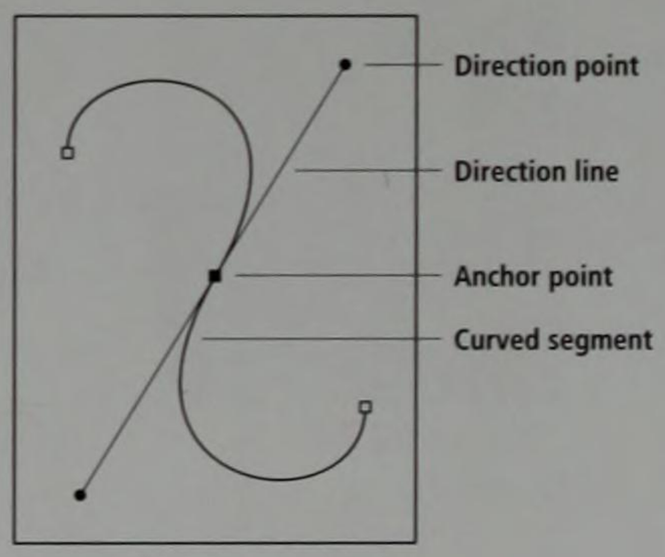
CREATING PATHS

You use the tools in the Paths palette to draw and edit paths.



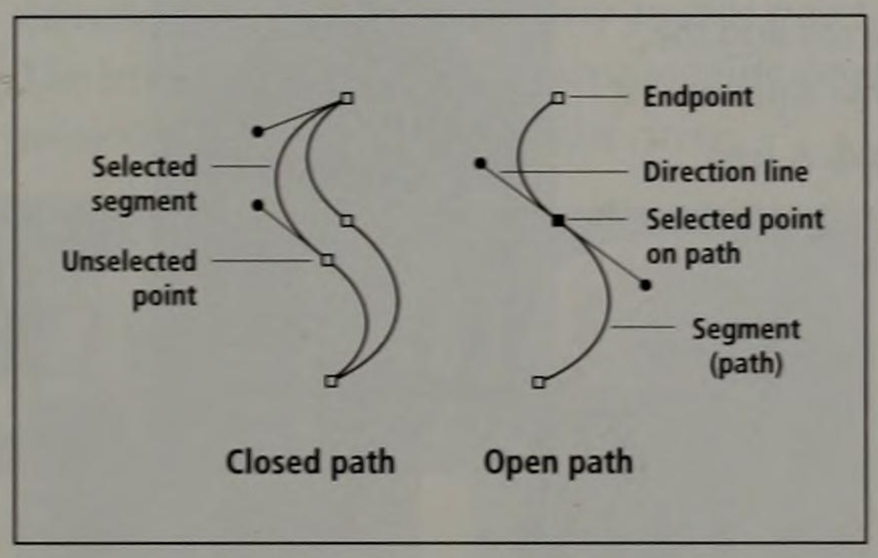
- The arrow tool lets you select paths and parts of paths.
- The pen tool lets you draw smooth-edged straight lines or smooth, flowing curves. The pen tool is similar to the pen tool in Adobe Illustrator.
- The pen+ tool lets you add anchor points to a path.
- The pen– tool lets you delete anchor points from a path.
- The convert direction point tool lets you convert straight line segments to curved segments and vice versa.

You create a path by clicking to set *anchor points*; you adjust the shape of the path by dragging the anchor points or the *direction lines* associated with each anchor point. A path *segment* is the part of the path between two anchor points. A *subpath* is a series of connected path segments.



A curved path

A path can be either open or closed. A *closed path* is continuous and has no beginning or end, for example, a circle is a closed path. An *open path* has distinct endpoints.



To preview lines and curves before setting the second and subsequent anchor points, double-click the pen tool to display the Pen Tool Options palette and select the Rubber Band option.

Creating new paths

You can create paths two ways: by creating a new path in the Paths palette and then beginning to draw with the pen tool, or by drawing with the pen tool and then saving the path.

If you create a new path and then begin drawing, the path you draw is saved automatically.

The number of paths you can have in an Adobe Photoshop document is limited by the amount of RAM available on your system. Paths are saved with your Adobe Photoshop document.

To create a new path before drawing:

1 Choose one of two options:

Click the New Paths icon at the bottom of the Paths palette menu.

• Choose New Path from the Paths palette menu.

The New Paths dialog box appears.

2 Enter a name for the path and click OK.

New paths are added to the bottom of the Paths palette.

Drawing straight line paths

When you draw straight line paths, you click to indicate the endpoints of the path segment. Adobe Photoshop connects the two points with a straight line.

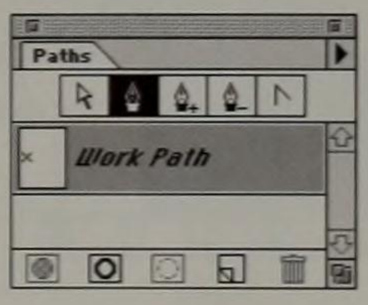
To draw straight line paths:

1 Select the pen tool in the Paths palette. When you first begin drawing a path in a document, the Paths palette is empty.

2 Move the pointer to where you want the straight line to begin and click.

An anchor point appears in the image. It remains selected (solid) until you define the next point.

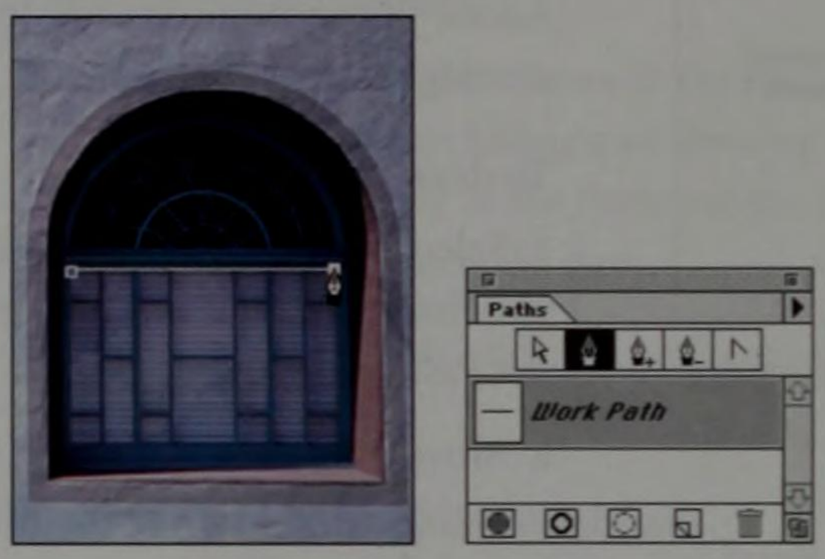
As you begin drawing with the pen tool, *Work Path* appears at the bottom of the paths list. A *work path* is a temporary path that must be saved to preserve its contents.



3 Click where you want the first segment of the straight line path to end. *Do not drag. Dragging begins a curve instead of a line.*

Every segment or subpath you draw becomes part of the work path. If you have a work path already on the palette, the path you're drawing replaces the contents of the work path.

The second anchor point is now selected and the first anchor point changes to a hollow square, indicating that it is no longer selected. A line appears between the two points.



To constrain a line to the nearest 45-degree axis, hold down the Shift key while you click to add anchor points.

4 Continue clicking to set anchor points for additional straight segments.

5 To complete the path, choose one of two options:

- To create an open path, click the pen tool in the Paths palette to end the path.
- To create a closed path, position the pointer where you created the first anchor point. A small loop appears next to the pointer when you place it on the first anchor point, indicating that the next click will close the path. Click to close the path.

6 Save the path by choosing one of two options:

- Drag the path to the New Paths icons at the bottom of the Paths palette.
- Choose Save Path from the Paths palette menu.

The Save Paths dialog box appears.

7 Name the path and click OK.

Drawing curved paths

When you draw curved paths, you drag direction points to indicate the slope and length of the curve.

To draw a curved path:

1 Select the pen tool in the Paths palette.

2 Position the pointer where you want the curve to begin, and drag in the direction you want the first half of the curve to be drawn. Release the mouse button when you have the length and slope you want for the curve.

The pointer changes to an arrowhead when you press the mouse button. As you drag in the image, a direction line appears. The direction points at either end of this line move in opposite directions around the stationary anchor point. The length and slope of the direction line determine the length and slope of the curve.

3 Position the pointer where you want the curve to end, press the mouse button and drag in the direction opposite the first anchor point for a smooth curve. Drag in the same direction as the first anchor point for a wavy curve.

4 Drag until the curved segment is the way you want it and release the mouse.

You can also constrain the direction line to a 45-degree angle by holding down the Shift key as you drag.

5 Continue adding anchor points and dragging to create additional curved segments.

6 To complete the path, choose one of two options:

- To create an open path, click the pen tool in the Paths palette to end the path.
- To create a closed path, position the pointer over the first anchor point you created. A small loop appears next to the pointer when you place it on the first anchor point, indicating that the next click will close the path. Click to close the path.

7 Save the path by dragging it to the New Path icon at the bottom of the Paths palette or by choosing Make Path from the Paths palette menu.

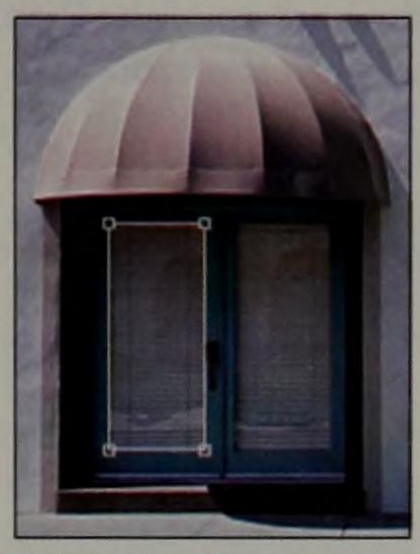
Drawing subpaths

A subpath is a series of continuous path segments. To create a new subpath, you must close the subpath or end an open subpath. If you don't close or end a subpath, a line will always be drawn between the last two points you clicked, creating a continuous path.

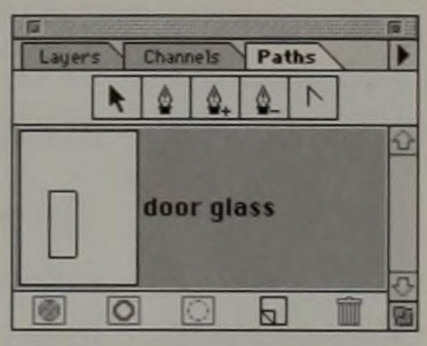
To create a subpath:

1 Use the pen tool to draw the first path segment or segments.

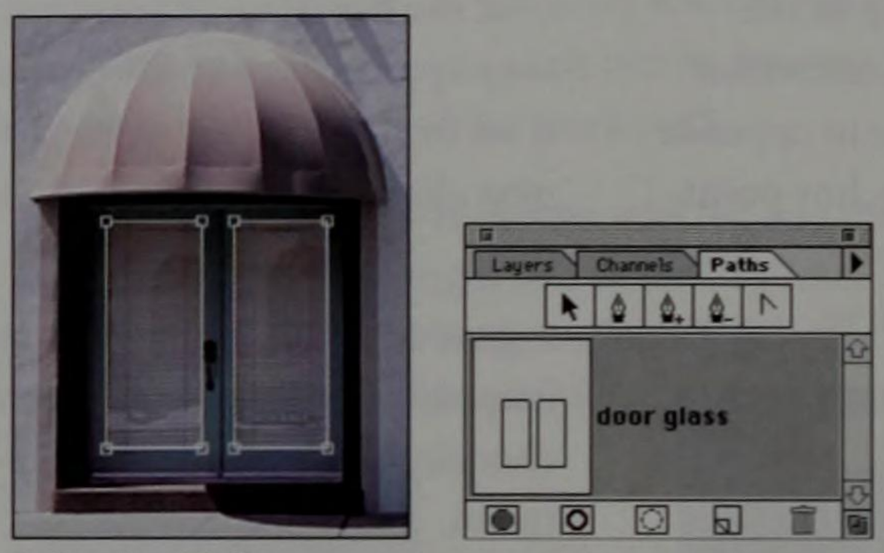
2 Close the subpath or end an open subpath by clicking the pen tool, the arrow tool, or the first point in the segment.



Original path



3 Begin the next subpath.



Subpath added

Saving and renaming paths

You must save a work path to keep its contents. Once you have saved a path, any changes you make to the path are saved automatically. For example, think of the path as a sheet of tracing paper. When you save a path, you create the sheet of paper. You can then go back to the paper and edit or add to its contents.

To save a path:

1 Draw a work path.

2 Choose one of these options:

Drag the name to the New Path icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.

• Choose Save Path from the Paths palette menu.

The Save Path dialog box appears.

3 Enter a name for the path, and click OK.

The path is saved with the image, in the same file format as the image. Any paths saved with an image appear in the Paths palette when you open the document.

To rename a saved path:

1 Double-click the path name in the Paths palette. The Rename Path dialog box appears.

2 Enter a new name and click OK.

COPYING AND MOVING PATHS

You can copy paths and move paths within an image and between documents in various ways. You can also change the position of paths in the Paths palette as you edit them.

Copying paths

You can copy paths various ways.

1 Select the path in the Paths palette.

2 Choose one of these options:

Drag the saved path to the New Path icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.

• Drag the path into the current document window.

• Choose Duplicate from the Paths palette menu. Enter a new name for the path and click OK.

Moving paths

You can move a path anywhere in an image.

To move a path:

1 Select the path in the Paths palette.

2 Select the arrow tool in the Paths palette.

3 Option-click the path in the image to select the path. (All the anchor points should appear solid.) If the path consists of subpaths, Option-clicking selects only that subpath.

To select additional subpaths to move them at the same time, Shift-Option-click.

4 Position the pointer over the path border and drag to the new location.

If you move any part of a path out of the window, it is still available.

Note: *If you drag a path so that the move cursor is over another open image, the path will be copied to the new document.*

Copying paths from one document or application to another

You can copy paths between Adobe Photoshop documents, and from an Adobe Photoshop document to another application's document such as Adobe Illustrator, Adobe Streamline, or Adobe Dimensions.

To copy paths between Adobe Photoshop and another application such as Adobe Illustrator:

Use the Copy and Paste commands in the Edit menu to paste between applications.

To copy paths between documents:

1 Open both documents.

2 Select the path that you want to copy in the image.

3 Drag the path to the image into which you want to paste it.

The path is centered in the new window, and if an active path exists, is added to the path.

To copy a path to another Adobe Photoshop document from the Paths palette:

1 Open both documents.

2 Select the path you want to copy in the original document's Paths palette.

3 Drag the path from the Paths palette into the second document window.

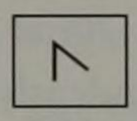
The path is copied where you release the mouse. If the path falls outside the window of the document you're copying to, the path is cropped but remains available. You can use the arrow tool in the Paths palette to position the path correctly.

EDITING PATHS

When you draw a simple curve, the first half of the direction line completes the definition of the curve. The second half of the direction line establishes the slope and direction of the next segment of the path. Curves use anchor points that are called *smooth points.* That is, both direction points at the ends of the direction line move in unison when you drag.

Converting a smooth point to a *corner point* lets you change the direction of a curve or switch between a curve and a straight line in the middle of a path. In a corner point, the direction points move independently. Using a corner point, you can modify the two halves of a direction line independently.

To change a smooth point to a corner point:



Select the convert direction point tool from the Paths palette, and position the pointer over the anchor point you want to change.

Shortcut: *If the pen tool is selected, you can move over a point and hold down the Control and ⌘ keys to display the convert direction point tool.*

4 Choose one of these options:

- Click the smooth anchor point to turn it into a corner point with no direction lines.

• Drag the corner point to make direction lines appear. To change the direction of the curve, click the convert direction point tool in the Paths palette; then click a direction point, and drag.

Each time you click the convert direction point tool on an anchor point, the point toggles between a smooth point (the direction lines move in unison) and a corner point (the direction lines move independently).

To move an anchor or direction point:

Select the arrow tool in the Paths palette and drag.

Shortcut: *Move the pen tool over a point and hold down the ⌘ key to display the arrow pointer.*

To add an anchor point:

1 Select the pen+ tool in the Paths palette, and position the pointer on the path where you want to add an anchor point. A plus sign appears next to the pointer to indicate that you are adding an anchor point.

2 Click the path where you want to add an anchor point.

The curve of the segment stays the same. If you drag the pen+, you can define direction points for the curve segment.

Shortcut: *Hold down the ⌘ and Option keys and move the arrow tool over the path border where there is no anchor point to display the pen+ cursor.*

To delete an anchor point:

1 Select the pen– tool in the Paths palette, and position the pointer on the path where you want to delete an anchor point. A minus sign appears next to the pointer to indicate that you are deleting an anchor point.

2 Click the path where you want to delete an anchor point.

The curve is reshaped to fit the existing anchor points. If you drag the pen– tool, you change the shape of the edited segment.

Shortcut: *Hold down the ⌘ and Option keys and move the arrow tool over an anchor point to display the pen– cursor.*

To select a segment, subpath, or path:

1 Select the arrow tool in the Paths palette,and click a segment of the path. The path or subpath appears with hollow squares, indicating it is active. Only the segment you click is selected.

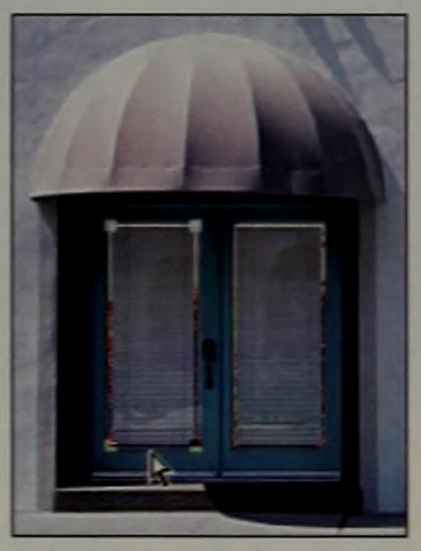
2 Use these techniques to add to the selection:

To add path segments to the selection, hold down the Shift key and click the path segments.

To select a subpath, hold down the Option key. To select multiple subpaths, hold down the Shift and Option keys as you click. If you click off the

path while holding down the Shift key and dragging, a marquee appears, allowing you to select multiple portions of the path.

Single segment selected



Entire subpath selected by holding down Option key

Second subpath added to selection by holding down Shift and Option keys

To duplicate a subpath within a path:

Select the subpath; then hold down the Option key as you drag.

FILLING AND STROKING PATHS

The Fill Path command in the Paths palette menu allows you to fill a path with the current foreground color, the background color, a saved section of a file, or a pattern. The Stroke Path command lets you paint a path border. If a subpath is selected, the Fill Path and Stroke Path commands become the Fill Subpath and Stroke Subpath commands, and only that portion of the path is filled or stroked.

Important: *When working in a document with layers, check which layer is active before filling or stroking paths.*

To fill a path:

1 Select the path in the Paths palette.

2 Choose Fill Path from the Palette menu. The Fill Path dialog box appears.

3 Set the Blending options as follows:

• Choose Foreground Color, Background Color, Pattern, Saved, Snapshot, Black, or White for the fill contents. For more information on these options, see "Using the Fill Command" on page 112.

• Specify the opacity for the fill. To make the fill more transparent, use a low percentage. A setting of 100 percent makes the fill opaque.

• Choose a color mode for the fill.

The Mode menu contains a Clear mode which lets you erase to transparency. You must be working in a layer to use this option. For more information about using color modes, see "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98.

• Select Preserve Transparency to limit the fill to areas on a layer that contain pixels. For more information on this option, see "Preserving a Layer's Transparency" on page 133.

4 Select one of the following Rendering options:

• The Feather Radius option defines how far inside and outside the selection border the feather edge extends. Enter a value in pixels.

• The Anti-aliased option creates a finer transition between the pixels in the selection and the surrounding pixels by partially filling the edge

pixels of the selection. See "Softening the Edges of a Selection" on page 65 for more information on these options.

5 Click OK to fill the path.

Selected area *Filled area*

Shortcut: *To automatically fill the target path using the current settings in the Fill Path dialog box, click the Fill Path icon at the bottom of the Paths palette or drag the path to the Fill Path icon. To display the Fill Path dialog box, hold down the Option key as you drag.*

To stroke a path:

1 Select the path in the Paths palette.

2 If desired, select the tool in the toolbox and the tool options in the Options palette that you will use to stroke the path.

3 Choose one of two options:

- Option-click the Stroke icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.
- Choose Stroke Path from the Paths palette menu. The Stroke Path dialog box appears.

4 Choose a tool from the Tool menu in the Stroke Path dialog box. If you selected a tool in the toolbox, it appears in the Tool menu. Click OK.

The tool applies its effects along the border of the path using the current settings in the tool's Options palette.

Choose the settings you want before choosing a tool from the Stroke Path dialog box. You can also click the tool you want to use in the toolbox before you choose Stroke Path. The tool selected in the toolbox appears in the Tool menu when you display the Stroke Path dialog box.

5 Click OK to stroke the path.

Selected paths *Stroked paths*

Shortcut: *To automatically stroke the target path using the current settings in the Stroke Path dialog box, click the Stroke Path icon at the bottom of the Paths palette or drag the path to the Stroke Path icon. Each click of the Stroke Path icon builds up the thickness of the stroke.*

ERASING AND DELETING PATHS

You can erase part or all of a path, and you can delete paths from the Paths palette.

You may want to delete paths when you have finished using them (for example, when they have been filled or stroked), or to keep the Paths palette to a manageable size and to avoid confusion with too many paths.

You cannot delete a work path. Whenever you start drawing and nothing is selected in the work path, the work path contents are deleted and replaced.

To erase a path:

1 Press Delete once to erase the last selected segment (and any selected subpaths connected to the segment).

2 Press Delete again to delete the rest of the subpath. If you press Delete when none of the path in the window is selected, the entire path is deleted from the window and from the Paths palette.

To delete a path:

1 Select a path in the Paths palette.

2 Choose one of two options:

• Drag the path to the Trash icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.

• Choose Delete Path from the Paths palette menu.

CONVERTING PATHS INTO SELECTIONS AND SELECTIONS INTO PATHS

The Make Selection command lets you convert paths into selections borders and convert selections into paths.

Defining paths as selections

You can define any path as a selection border using the Make Selection command. A path that overlaps a selected area can be added to, subtracted from, or combined with the selection. You cannot define work paths as selection borders.

To define a path as a selection border:

1 In the Paths palette, select the path you want to define as a selection.

To combine the path with an existing selection, make the selection using any of the selection tools.

2 Choose Make Selection from the Paths palette menu. The Make Selection dialog box appears.

3 Select one of the following Rendering options:

• The Feather Radius option defines how far inside and outside the selection border the feather edge extends. Enter a value in pixels.

• The Anti-aliased option creates a finer transition between the pixels in the selection and the surrounding pixels by partially filling the edge pixels of the selection. See "Softening the Edges of a Selection" on page 65 for more information on using these options.

4 Choose one of the following options to define the selection border:

• The New Selection option selects only the area defined by the path.

• The Add to Selection option adds the area defined by the path to the original selection.

• The Subtract from Selection option removes the area defined by the path from the original selection.

• The Intersect with Selection option selects the area common to both the path and the original selection. If the path and selection do not overlap, nothing is selected.

Shortcuts: *To define a path as selection with anti-aliasing but no feathering, click the Make Selection icon at the bottom of the Paths palette or drag the path name to the Make Selection icon. If you hold down the ⌘ key as you drag,*

the path is added to the current selection. If you hold down the Shift key as you drag, the path is subtracted from the current selection. If you hold down the Shift and ⌘ keys as you drag, the area that intersects the path and the selection becomes the new selection.

Converting selections into paths

Any selection made with an Adobe Photoshop selection tool can be redefined as a path. This is useful, for example, when you want to use the pen tool to edit a selection border. You can then redefine the path as a selection border or save the path with the document for later use.

Note that using the Make Path command eliminates any feathering applied to the selection. In addition, the Make Path command may alter the shape of the selection depending on the complexity of the path and the tolerance value you choose in the Make Path dialog box.

To define a selection as a path:

1 Make the selection.

Selection

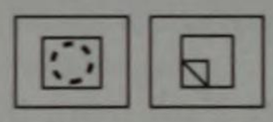
2 Choose Make Path from the Paths palette menu. The Make Path dialog box appears.

3 Enter a Tolerance value. Values can range from 0.5 to 10 pixels. The tolerance value you set determines how sensitive the Make Path command is to slight changes in the selection shape. The higher the tolerance value, the fewer the number of anchor points used to draw the path and the smoother the path.

Path tolerance: 2 pixels

Path tolerance: 10 pixels

4 Click OK. The converted selection appears as a Work Path at the bottom of the Paths palette.



Shortcut: *To convert a selection into a work path using the current tolerance value in the Make Path dialog box, drag the Make Selection icon at the bottom of the Paths palette over the New Paths icon.*

USING CLIPPING PATHS

Clipping paths let you export paths drawn with the pen tool and saved with the document in EPS format to an illustration or page-layout program. A clipping path makes everything except the Adobe Photoshop selected area transparent when the image is printed or previewed in another application. This allows you to place an image in another document without obscuring the other document's background.

These examples show the effect of using a clipping path. In the first example, the sand was selected and changed to white. When the starfish was placed in the Adobe Illustrator file, the white background blocked out the underlying area.

Background selected

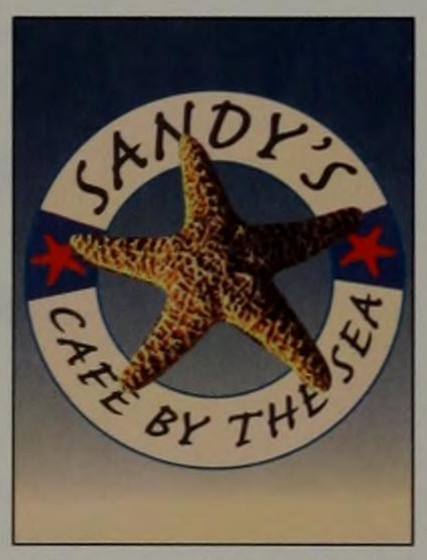
Background deleted

Image imported into Adobe Illustrator

In the following example, the starfish was selected and converted into a path. The path was then saved as a clipping path. When the Adobe Photoshop document was placed in the Adobe Illustrator file, only the starfish appeared and the rest of the Illustrator image was not affected.

Starfish selected

Selection defined as a a clipping path



Clipping path imported into Adobe Illustrator

Creating a clipping path

You specify a saved path as a clipping path.

To save a path as a clipping path:

1 Create and save the path using the Paths palette.

2 Choose Clipping Path from the Paths palette menu. The Clipping Path dialog box appears.

3 Choose the path from the Path menu in the Clipping Path dialog box.

4 If necessary, enter a flatness value.

The PostScript interpreter creates curved segments by linking a series of straight line segments. The *flatness* setting for a clipping path determines how closely the straight line segments approximate the curve. The lower the flatness value, the greater is the number of straight lines used to draw the curve and the more accurate the curve.

The Postscript interpreter attempts to limit errors by setting the flatness to an initial setting. If you leave this value empty, Adobe Photoshop uses the printer's default settings.

Flatness: 0.2

Flatness: 30

Values can range from 0.2 to 100. In general, a Flatness setting from 8 to 10 is recommended for high-resolution printing (1200 dpi to 2400 dpi); a setting from 1 to 3 is recommended for low-resolution printing (300 dpi to 600 dpi). When the flatness value is blank, the image is printed using the printer's default setting.

5 Click OK.

The path name is outlined in the Path palette so you can identify it as a clipping path.

If you plan to print the file using process colors, convert the file to CMYK mode. See "Converting to CMYK" on page 225 for a discussion of this mode.

6 Save the file in EPS format.

In most situations, you can use the default settings in the EPS Format dialog box. For more information on the EPS format, see "Saving EPS Files" on page 50.

Printing clipping paths

You may encounter unexpected results when printing a document containing clipping paths if the imagesetter has difficulty interpreting the clipping path or if the paths are too complex to print.

If you are using an older imagesetter and encounter printing problems, try using the Even Odd plug-in that comes with Adobe Photoshop. This plug-in converts a clipping path using the Non-Zero Winding rule to define the interior of the path, rather than the program's default method of the Even-Odd rule. For more information, see the Read Me file for the Even-Odd plug-in. For instructions on installing plug-ins, see *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started.*

If your printer generates a Limitcheck error or a general PostScript error, the clipping path may be too complex to print. You may be able to print a complex path on a low-resolution printer without difficulty, but run into problems when printing the same path on a high-resolution printer. That is because a low-resolution printer uses fewer line segments to describe curves than does a high-resolution printer, thus automatically simplifying the path.

You can simplify clipping paths by reducing the number of anchor points on the path. Use these guidelines.

To simplify a clipping path:

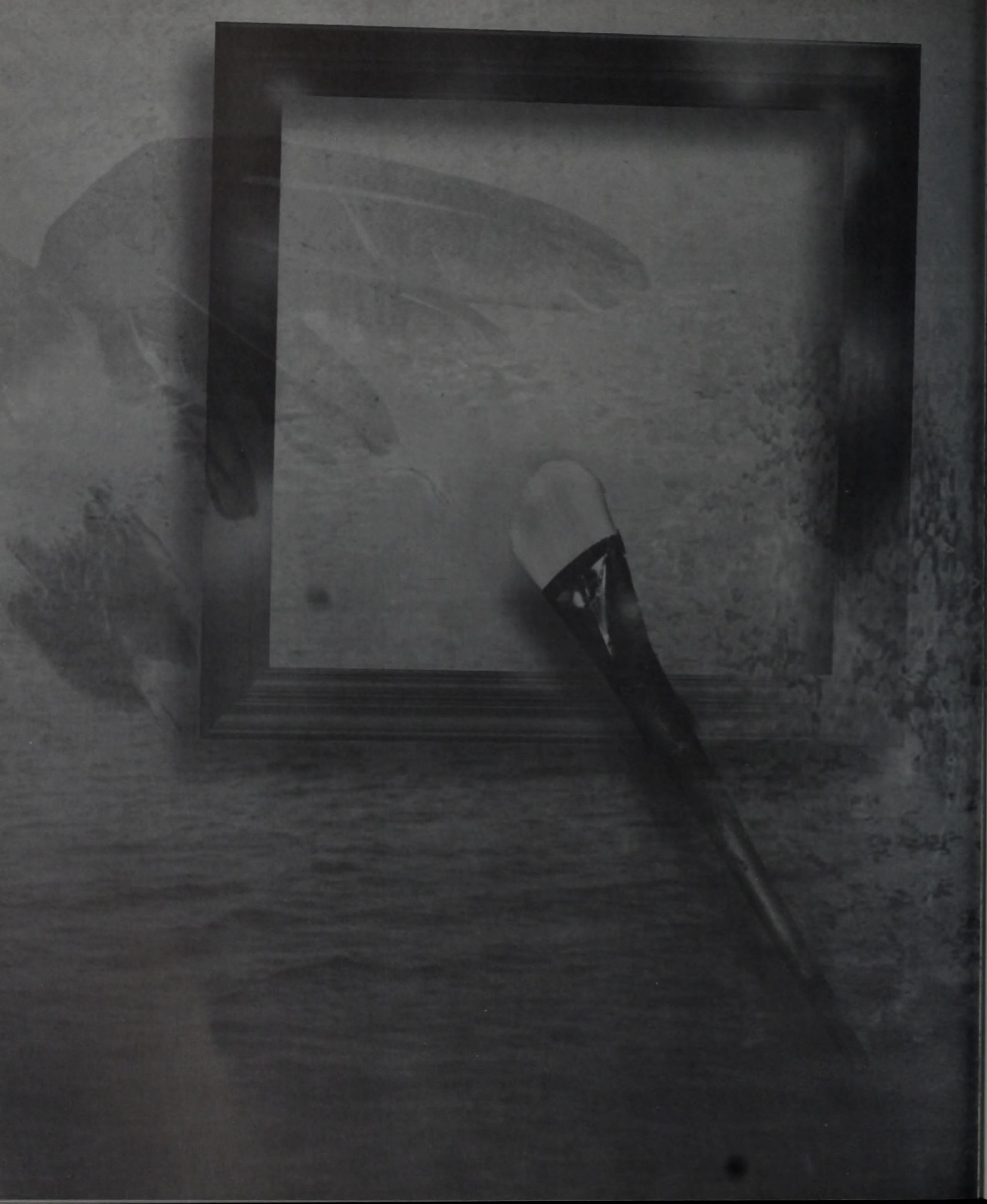
1 Convert the path to a selection by dragging it to the Make Selection icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.

2 Delete the original path from the Paths palette by dragging it to the Trash icon at the bottom of the Paths palette.

3 Choose Make Path from the Paths palette menu and increase the tolerance setting (4 to 6 pixels is a good starting point).

4 Save and name the work path.

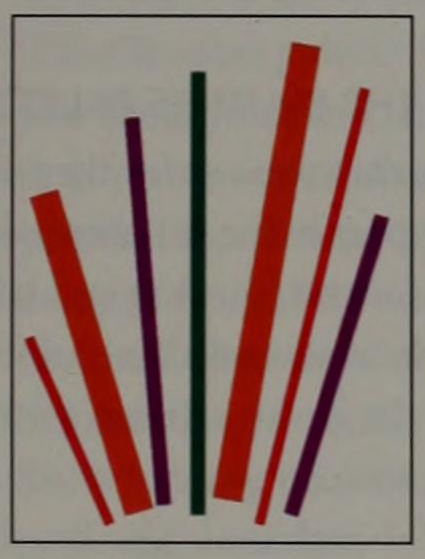
USING THE PAINTING, EDITING, FILL, AND TYPE TOOLS



Chapter 6: Using the Painting, Editing, Fill, and Type Tools

This chapter describes the painting and editing tools, the fill tools, the Fill command, and the type tool.

The painting tools in the toolbox let you add paint to a selected image or area. The painting tools include the line tool, the pencil tool, the airbrush tool, the paintbrush tool, and the rubber stamp tool.



Line tool

Pencil tool

Paintbrush tool

Airbrush tool

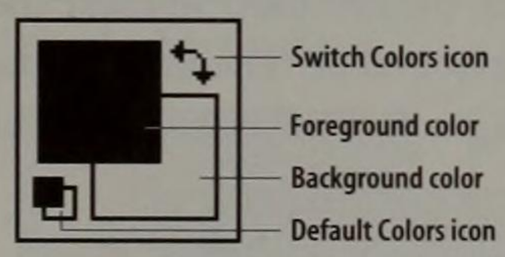
The editing tools include the eraser tool, the smudge tool, the blur/sharpen tool, and the dodge/burn/sponge tool.

The first part of the chapter covers the options that are common to more than one painting or editing tool. They include selecting a tool brush shape, setting brush options, specifying the paint opacity, indicating a paint mode, and setting fade-out rates. The next section of the chapter provides specific information on using the eraser, line, pencil, rubber stamp, smudge, blur/sharpen, and dodge/burn/sponge tools. The chapter then discusses the fill and stroke tools and concludes with a discussion of the type tool.

CHOOSING THE PAINTING COLOR

The painting tools paint with the foreground color shown in the top color selection box in the toolbox. To change the foreground color while painting, hold down the Option key. This temporarily turns the painting tool into the eyedropper tool. Click a color in the image with the eyedropper to make it the new foreground color.

The background color, shown in the lower color selection box, is used for making gradient fills and for filling in areas of an image deleted using the eraser tool. You can also open a document filled with the background color.



To switch the foreground and background colors, click the Switch Colors icon. To return to the default black foreground and white background colors, click the Default Colors icon. For more information about changing background and foreground colors, see Chapter 7, "Selecting Colors."

TOOL SHORTCUTS

The following techniques can save you time when working with the painting and editing tools:

- Be sure the Brushes/Options palette group and the Picker/Swatches/Scratch palette group are open on your desktop. For general information on using the palettes, see "Working With Palettes" on page 19.
- To bring the Options palette to the top of its group and or to display the Options palette for a specific tool, double-click that tool. If the Options palette is already at the top of the palette group, a single click on the tool changes the display.
- To switch between the modes of the blur/sharpen or dodge/burn/sponge tools, hold down the Option key, and click the tool.
- To draw a straight line with the painting tools or edit straight paths with the editing tools, choose the tool, and click a starting point. Hold down the Shift key, and click an end point. The tool is applied in a straight line between the two points.
- To constrain the angle of a line to a multiple of 45 degrees, hold down the Shift key as you paint with the line tool. To make the lines perfectly horizontal or vertical, click the line tool, and drag as you hold down the Shift key.

Constraining angles when using the line tool

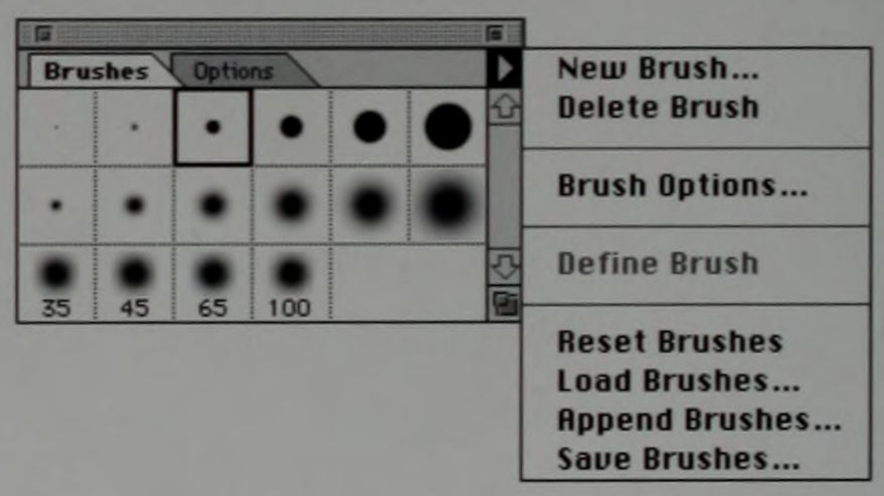
- To set the opacity for any selected tool, press a number from 0 through 9. Press 1 to set the opacity to 10 percent, press 5 to set the opacity to 50 percent, and so on. Press zero to choose 100-percent opacity.

Note: *When a selection tool is active, pressing a number key changes the opacity of the target layer.*

- To set the type of cursor you want to use with the painting and editing tools (standard, precise, or brush size), use the Preferences command. See "Setting Preferences" on page 12 for more information on tool cursors.

USING THE BRUSHES PALETTE

The brushes you use for the painting and editing tools appear in the Brushes palette. Round brush shapes for the painting and editing tools are available in several sizes. Adobe Photoshop retains the brush settings for each painting and editing tool, so you can select a different default brush for each tool. The Brushes palette also contains commands for creating and deleting brushes, defining brush options, and saving and loading sets of brushes.



Choosing a brush shape

Use the Brushes palette to choose a brush shape for any painting tool.

To choose a brush shape:

1 Click the tool you want to use in the toolbox.

2 Choose Palettes > Show Brushes from the Window menu. The Brushes palette appears; the brush for the current tool is selected.

3 Click the brush shape you want to use.

Brushes that are too large to fit in a square on the palette are shown with a number under the brush preview. The number indicates the diameter of the brush in pixels.

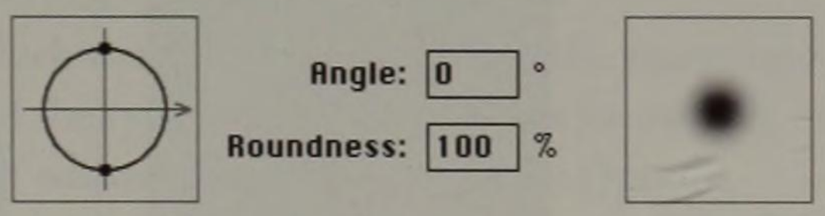
Creating and deleting brushes

If the Brushes palette does not contain the brush you need, you can create new brushes. New brushes are added at the bottom of the palette. If you find that you no longer use a brush, you can delete it from the Brushes palette. You can also use the Define Brush command to create brushes out of nonelliptical shapes or images. See "Creating Custom Brushes" on page 96 for more information.

To create a brush:

1 Choose New Brush from the Brushes palette menu. The New Brush dialog box appears.

The preview box in the lower-right corner of the dialog box shows the current brush tip. The box in the lower-left corner shows the current brush angle and roundness. These boxes change to reflect the new brush as you enter brush options.

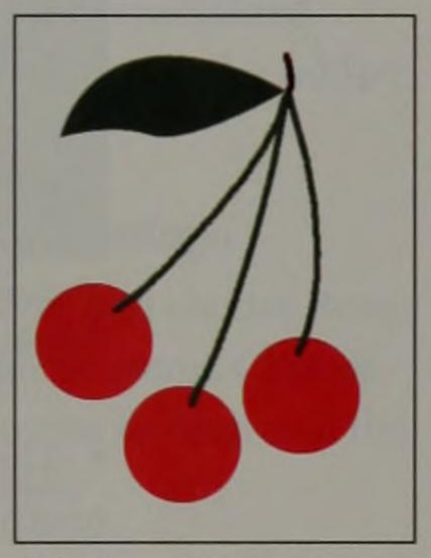


Brush angle and roundness

2 Set the following options for the brush:

- The Diameter option controls the size of the brush. Type a number or use the slider to enter a value in pixels.
- The Hardness option is a measurement of the hard center of the brush. Type a number or use the slider to enter a value that is a percentage of the brush diameter.

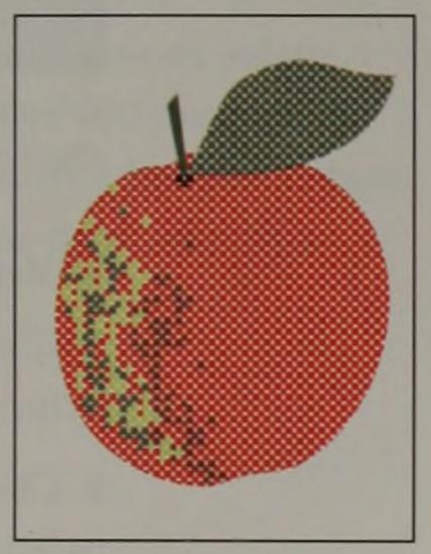
Painting with hard and soft brushes



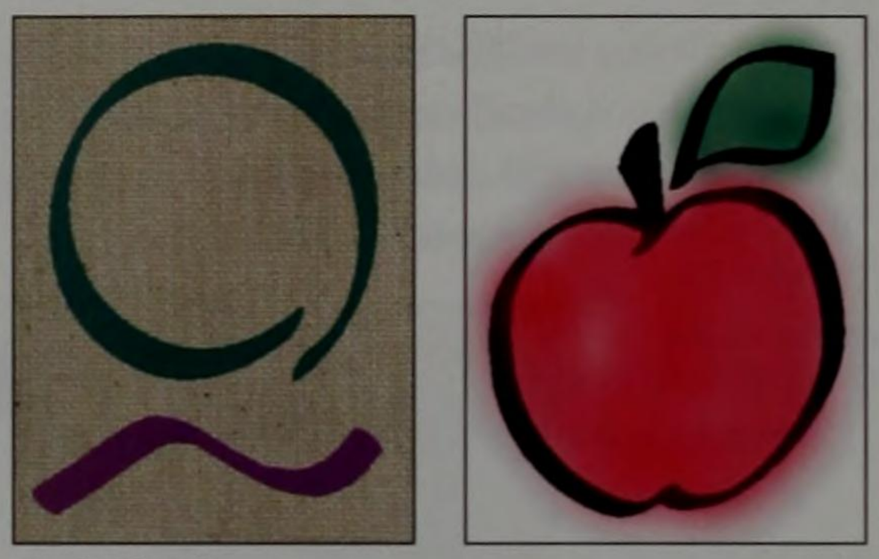
Painting with hard brushes

- The Spacing option specifies the distance between the brush marks in a stroke. To change the spacing, type a number or use the slider to enter a value that is a percentage of the brush diameter. You can deselect the spacing option. When spacing is off, the brush is sensitive to the speed with which you drag the mouse. For example, dragging the mouse quickly makes the brush skip pixels.

Increasing the spacing makes the brush skip



• The Angle option sets the angle of a non-circular brush's major axis from horizontal. Type a value in degrees, or drag the axis in the preview box to set a new angle.



Angled brushes create a chiseled stroke

• The Roundness option indicates whether the brush is a circle, an ellipse, or a straight line. A value of 100 percent indicates a circular brush. Type a number, or drag the dots in the left preview box to enter a value that is a percentage of a circle.

Adjusting roundness affects shape of brush tip

To delete a brush:

1 Click the brush you want to delete in the Brushes palette.

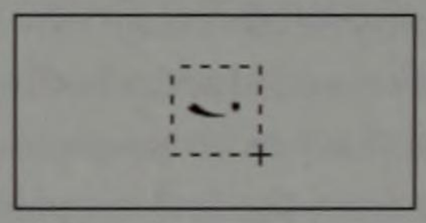
2 Choose Delete Brush from the Brushes palette menu.

Creating custom brushes

You can use part of an image to create a custom brush shape. To define brushes with soft edges, select brush shapes composed of pixels with gray values other than the extremes of 0 (black) and 255 (white).

To create a custom brush shape:

1 Use any selection tool to enclose the part of the image you want to use as a custom brush. The brush shape can be up to 1000 pixels by 1000 pixels in size. To be most effective, the shape should appear on a solid white background.



2 Choose Define Brush from the Brushes palette menu. The custom brush appears in the Brushes palette.

3 Choose Brush Options from the Brushes palette menu to adjust the Spacing option or to define the selection as Anti-aliased.

• In the Spacing option, enter a value that is a percentage of the brush diameter.

• Select the Anti-aliased option to make the brush paint with smooth edges. This option is not available for large brushes.

Painting with custom brushes

Setting brush options

You can define a number of options for the default brushes and any brushes you create. Only spacing can be changed for custom brushes.

To set brush options:

1 Click the brush you want to change, and choose Brush Options from the menu (or double-click the brush shape). The Brush Options dialog box appears.

2 Set the options as described in "Creating and Deleting Brushes" on page 95.

Saving, loading, and appending brushes

The Brushes palette can hold as many brushes as you want. However, to make the palette more manageable and to group related or special brushes, you might want to create your own sets of brushes.

To save and load brush sets, use the Save Brushes and Load Brushes commands in the Brushes palette menu. The Append Brushes command adds the brushes stored in a file to the current palette. To return to the default brushes, use the Reset Brushes command on the Brushes palette menu.

When you exit Adobe Photoshop, the current Brushes palette is saved in the Preferences file.

USING THE OPTIONS PALETTE

Each tool in the toolbox (with the exception of the type and move tools) has its own set of options, which appears inthe Options palette. The name and appearance of this palette changes depending on the currently selected tool.

To display the Options palette:

Choose Palette > Show Options from the Window menu or double-click a tool in the toolbox. When the Options palette is already open, double-clicking the tool displays the palette options for that tool.

The Options palette contains some settings that are common to several tools (such as painting modes and opacity), as well as specialized options like the cloning settings for the rubber stamp tool.

To return to a tool's default settings:

Click the tool in the toolbox, and choose Reset Tool from the Options palette menu. Choose Reset All Tools from the menu to return all the tools to their default settings.

SPECIFYING THE OPACITY, PRESSURE, OR EXPOSURE

When you're using the gradient fill, pencil, paintbrush, or rubber stamp tools, you can specify an opacity for the paint. When you're using the airbrush, smudge, blur/sharpen, or sponge tool, you can adjust the pressure applied by the tool. When you're using the dodge/burn tool, you can adjust the amount of exposure for the tool.

To adjust the opacity, pressure, or exposure:

Drag the slider in the tool's Options palette. Opacity can range from 1 to 100 percent. To use transparent paint, specify a low percentage value. To use more opaque paint, specify a high value.

Pressure and exposure can range from 1 to 100 percent. To create a strong effect, specify a high percentage value. To create a weaker effect, specify a low value.

Painting with various opacity settings

SELECTING A PAINTING OR EDITING MODE

You can control which pixels are affected by a painting or editing tool by choosing an option from the Mode menu in the tool's Options palette. When using modes it's helpful to think of the effects in terms of the following three colors:

- The *base color* is the original color in the image.
- The *blend color* is the color being blended (the painting or editing color).
- The *result color* is the color resulting from the blend.

The following sections describe each of the painting and editing modes. See the illustrations at the end of the section for examples of each mode.

Normal mode

Edits or paints each pixel to make it the result color. This is the default mode. (Normal mode is called Threshold when you're working in bitmapped images.)

Dissolve mode

Edits or paints each pixel to make it the result color; however, the result color is a random replacement of the pixels with the base color or the blend color, depending on the opacity at any pixel location. This mode works best with the paintbrush or airbrush tool and a large brush.

Behind mode

Edits or paints each pixel to make it the result color. Behind mode works only in layers that contain transparency. When you apply paint, it appears that you're painting on the *back* of the transparent areas in a sheet of acetate.

Clear mode

Edits or paints each pixel and makes it transparent. This mode is available for the line tool, the paintbucket tool, the Fill command, and the Stroke command. You must be in a layer to use this mode.

Multiply mode

Looks at the color information in each channel and multiplies the base color by the blend color. The result color is always a darker color. Multiplying any color with black produces black. Multiplying any color with white leaves the color unchanged. When you're painting with a color other than black or white, successive strokes with a painting tool produce progressively darker colors. The effect is similar to drawing on the image with multiple magic markers.

Screen mode

Looks at the color information in each channel and multiplies the inverse of the blend and base colors. The result color is always a lighter color. Screening with black leaves the color

unchanged. Screening with white produces white. The effect is similar to painting over an area with bleach.

Overlay mode

Multiplies or screens the colors depending on the base color. Patterns or color are overlaid on the existing pixels while preserving the highlights and shadows of the base color. The base color is not replaced but is mixed with the blend color to reflect the lightness or darkness of the original color.

Soft Light mode

Darkens or lightens the colors depending on the blend color. The effect is similar to shining a diffused spotlight on the image.

If the blend color (light source) is lighter than 50-percent gray, the image is lightened, as if it were dodged. If the blend color is darker than 50-percent gray, the image is darkened, as if it were burned in. Painting with pure black or white produces a marked darker or lighter area but does not result in pure black or white.

Hard Light mode

Multiplies or screens the colors depending on the blend color. The effect is similar to shining a harsh spotlight on the image.

If the blend color (light source) is lighter than 50-percent gray, the image is lightened, as if it were screened. This is useful for adding highlights to an image. If the blend color is darker than 50-percent gray, the image is darkened, as if it were multiplied. This is useful for adding shadows to an image. Painting with black or white results in pure black or white.

Darken mode

Looks at the color information in each channel and selects the darker of the base or blend color as the result color. Pixels lighter than the blend color are replaced, and pixels darker than the blend color do not change.

Lighten mode

Looks at the color information in each channel and selects the lighter of the base or blend color as the result color. Pixels darker than the blend color are replaced, and pixels lighter than the blend color do not change.

Difference mode

Looks at the color information in each channel and subtracts either the blend color from the base color or the base color from the blend color, depending on which has the greater brightness value.

Hue mode

Creates a result color with the luminance and saturation of the base color and the hue of the blend color.

Saturation mode

Creates a result color with the luminance and hue of the base color and the saturation of the blend color. If you paint with this mode in an area with a saturation of zero (gray), there is no change.

Color mode

Creates a result color with the luminance of the base color and the hue and saturation of the blend color. This preserves the gray levels in the image and is useful for coloring monochrome images and for tinting color images.

Luminosity mode

Creates a result color with the hue and saturation of the base color and the luminance of the blend color. This mode is the inverse of Color mode.

Effects of Painting Modes

Original

Normal

Normal, 70% opacity

Dissolve

Swatch

Multiply

Screen

Overlay

Soft light

Hard light

Darken

Lighten

Difference

Hue

Saturation

Color

Luminosity

SPECIFYING THE PAINT FADE-OUT RATE

You can specify the rate at which the pencil, paint brush, and airbrush strokes fade out to simulate actual brush strokes.

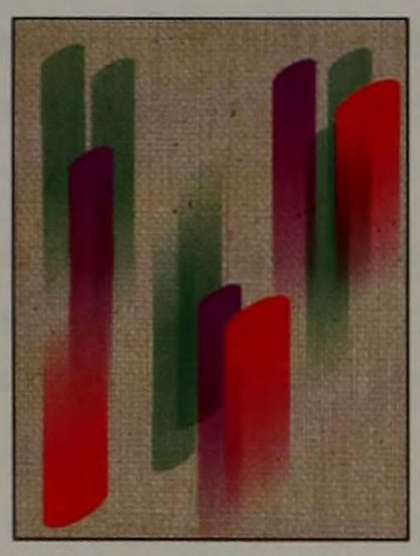
To set a fade-out rate:

1 Select the Fade option in the tool's Options palette.

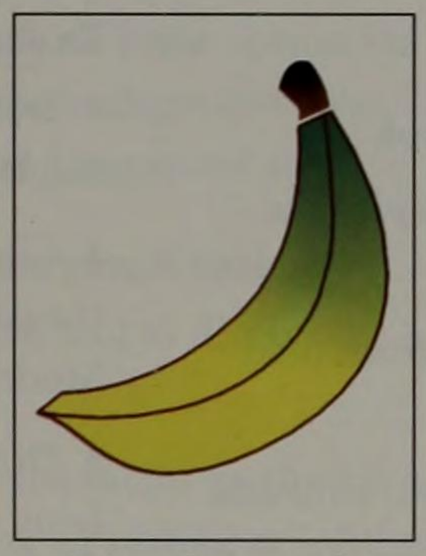
2 Enter a value in the Steps box.

The steps determine the rate of the fade from the beginning to the end of the stroke. Each step is equal to one mark of the brush tip. The value can range from 1 to 9999. For example, entering 10 steps produces a fade in 10-percent increments.

3 Choose Transparent or Background from the menu to set the end result of the fade.



Fade to transparent



Fade from foreground to background color

SPECIFYING STYLUS PRESSURE OPTIONS

Adobe Photoshop supports pressure-sensitive digitizing tablets with pens, such as the Wacom® and Calcomp tablets. When the Control Panel software for the tablet is installed, you can set the stylus pressures for the Adobe Photoshop pencil, paint brush, airbrush, rubber stamp, smudge, blur/sharpen, and dodge/burn tools.

To set the stylus pressure:

Open the tool's Options palette, and select from the following:

- Select Size if you want increasing pressure to result in a bigger brush stroke.
- Select Color if you want increasing pressure to paint with the foreground color, light pressure to paint with the background color, and medium pressure to paint with an intermediate color.
- Select Opacity if you want increasing pressure to result in more opaque paint.

SAMPLING MERGED DATA

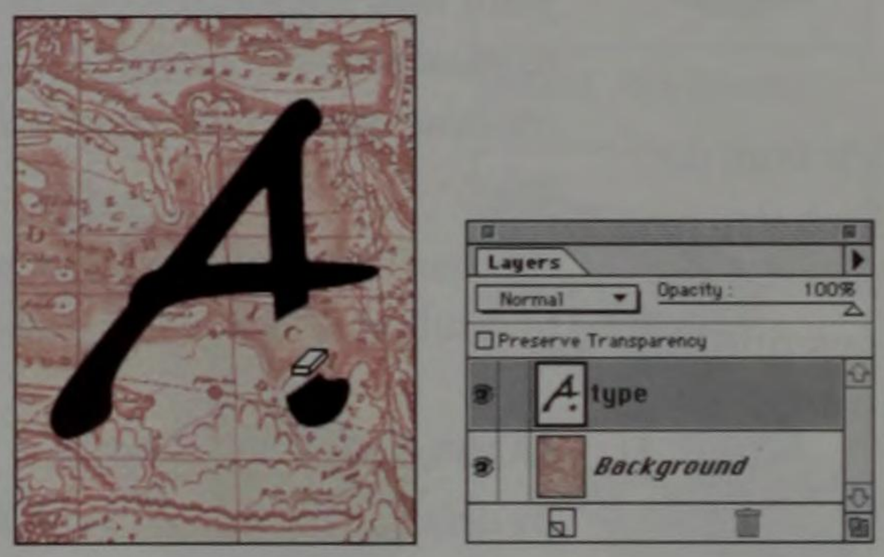
By default, when you're working with the magic wand tool, the smudge tool, the blur/sharpen tool, or the aligned and nonaligned Clone options in the rubber stamp tool, you are painting with (or sampling) only from the pixels on the target layer. This means that you can smudge or sample in a single layer even when other layers are visible. Your layer for sampling and the layer you're painting into don't have to be the same. For example, when using the Clone options, you can sample from one layer and paint into another layer.

You can choose, however, to paint using sampled data from all the visible layers. To do this, select the Sample Merged option on the tool's Options palette.

Note: *Except for the Clone options, painting into a new layer produces the best results when you're using the Sample Merged data option.*

USING THE ERASER TOOL

The eraser tool changes pixels in the image as you drag through them. If you're working in the background, the pixels are changed to the background color. If you're working in a layer, the color is replaced by transparency.



Erasing type from a layer exposes background

To choose options for the eraser tool:

1 Double-click the eraser tool to display the Eraser Options palette.

2 Choose the tool you want to use from the menu on the left of the palette.

You can choose from the paint brush, airbrush, pencil and block tools.

3 Drag the slider to set the eraser opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Click the Fade option to set a fade-out rate. See "Specifying the Paint Fade-Out Rate" on page 101 for information on using this option.

Note: *If you're using the paint brush tool, you can select Wet Edges to paint with a watercolor effect. With this option selected, the paints builds up along the edges of the brush stroke.*

To erase to a saved version of the image:

Select the Erase to Saved option in the Eraser Options palette before you begin erasing.

To erase an entire layer to transparency:

Select Erase Layer in the Eraser Options palette.

USING THE LINE TOOL

The line tool creates straight lines on an image. Line tool options allow you to specify the width of lines, to set anti-aliasing, and to create lines with arrowheads.

To paint a line:

Click the line tool and drag. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to constrain the angle of the line to 45 degrees.

To choose options for the line tool:

1 Double-click the line tool in the toolbox to display the Line Tool Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu on the left of the palette. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for information on modes.

3 Drag the slider to set the opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Type the line width in pixels and select or deselect Anti-aliased.

5 To include arrowheads, select Start, End, or both to specify where you want arrowheads.

6 Select Shape to set the following arrowhead characteristics:

- Enter values from 1 to 1500 pixels for the arrowhead width and length.

• Enter a value from +50 percent to – 50 percent for the concavity of the arrowhead. The concavity value defines the amount of curvature on the widest part of the arrowhead, where the arrowhead meets the line.

Note: *You can also use the line tool to measure distances in the document. To do this, define a line width of 0 in the Line Tool Options palette, and choose Palettes > Show Info from the Window menu. As you drag the pointer, the Info palette displays the* x *and* y *coordinates of the line starting point, the change in* x *and* y*, the distance, and the angle.*

USING THE PENCIL TOOL

The pencil tool creates hard-edged freehand lines and is used primarily with bitmapped images. The Auto Erase option for this tool lets you paint the background color over areas containing the foreground color.

To choose options for the pencil tool:

1 Double-click the pencil tool to display the Pencil Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu on the left of the palette. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

3 Drag the slider to set the opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Set the fade-out rate. See "Specifying the Paint Fade-Out Rate" on page 101 for more information.

To use Auto-Erase:

Click the pencil tool, and then click Auto-Erase in the Pencil Options. Click the mouse, and begin to drag. If you click the foreground color, the area is erased to the background color. If the point where you first click doesn't contain the foreground color, the area is painted with the foreground color.

USING THE AIRBRUSH TOOL

The airbrush tool lets you apply gradual tones (including sprays of color) to an image. The edges of the stroke are softer than those created with the paintbrush tool and simulates the effect produced by traditional airbrush techniques. To build up color, apply multiple strokes over the same area.

To choose options for the airbrush tool:

1 Double-click the airbrush tool in the toolbox to display the Airbrush Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu on the left of the palette. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for information on the modes.

3 Drag the slider to set the opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Click the Fade option to set a fade-out rate. See "Specifying the Paint Fade-Out Rate" on page 101 for information on using this option.

USING THE PAINT BRUSH TOOL

The paint brush tool creates soft strokes that are not as hard-edged as the lines drawn with the pencil tool and not as soft as the strokes painted with the airbrush tool.

To choose options for the paint brush tool:

1 Double-click the paint brush tool in the toolbox to display the Paintbrush Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu on the left of the palette. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for information on the modes.

3 Drag the slider to set the opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Click the Fade option to set a fade-out rate. See "Specifying the Paint Fade-out Rate" on page 101 for information on using this option.

5 Click Wet Edges to paint with a watercolor effect. With this option selected, the paint builds up along the edges of the brush stroke.

Painting with Wet Edges option on

USING THE RUBBER STAMP TOOL

The rubber stamp tool lets you paint a copy, or a modified copy, of an image or color into the same image or into another image. By default, the rubber stamp tool makes a copy of, or *sample*s, an image and paints an exact duplicate of that image. Other rubber stamp options let you paint with a pattern or with an "impressionistic" copy of the image. You can also restore painted areas to their last-saved states.

To choose options for the rubber stamp tool:

1 Double-click the rubber stamp tool to display the Rubber Stamp Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu on the left of the palette. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

3 Drag the slider to set the opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 Select an option from the menu; then click OK. See the following sections for a discussion of each of these options.

5 If you are using one of the Clone options, position the pointer where you want to take a sample, and Option-click. This sample point is the location from which the image will begin to be duplicated as you paint. If you are using one of the other options, you don't have to take a sample.

Shortcut: *Option-click with the rubber stamp tool to sample from any open Adobe Photoshop window without changing the active window.*

6 Drag to paint with the sampled image.

Clone options

The Clone options take a sample of the entire image, which you can then apply, or paint, over another image. Each stroke of the tool paints on more of the sampled image, starting at the point from which you took the sample.

The aligned Clone option applies a sampled image continuously, regardless of how many times you stop and resume painting. This option is useful if you want to use different sized brushes to paint an image. You can also use the aligned Clone option for painting two halves of an image on either side of another image.

In the following illustration, the image is sampled using the frog in the upper left as the sampling point; the frog in the upper right is then painted in. Note that the crosshair marker shows the part of the original sampled image that is currently being applied.

The nonaligned Clone option applies a sampled image from the initial sampling point each time you stop and resume painting. Because the rubber stamp tool samples the entire image, this option is useful for applying multiple copies of part of an image.

Sampling point

Several applications of paint; aligned Clone

Several application of paint; nonaligned Clone

Pattern options

The Pattern options let you select a pattern and then use the rubber stamp tool to paint with that pattern. The aligned Pattern option repeats the pattern as contiguous, uniform tiles, even when you stop and resume painting several times. The nonaligned Pattern option centers the pattern around the rubber stamp pointer each time you stop and resume painting.

To use the Pattern options with the rubber stamp tool:

1 Use the marquee tool with the rectangular option to define the pattern you want to use.

2 Choose Define Pattern from the Edit menu.

3 Double-click the rubber stamp tool to display the Rubber Stamp Options palette.

4 Select a pattern option from the menu.

5 Drag to paint with the pattern.

Aligned pattern

Nonaligned pattern

From Snapshot option

The From Snapshot option paints the contents of the snapshot buffer onto the image. By default, each image has an empty buffer associated with it. At any time, you can store the current selection in the buffer using the Take Snapshot command in the Edit menu. For example, you could use a painting tool or a filter to alter all or part of an image and then choose Take Snapshot to save the change. If you then undid the change and chose the From Snapshot option for the rubber stamp tool, you could apply the change selectively to areas of the image.

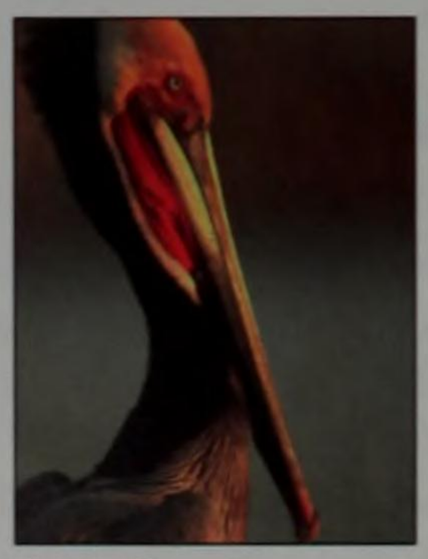
From Saved option

The From Saved option for the rubber stamp tool lets you restore an area of an image to its previously saved state. This option performs the same function as using the eraser tool with the Erase to Saved option selected.

When you use the From Saved option, Adobe Photoshop reads in the last-saved version of the image from the disk and restores the portions of the image you drag the rubber stamp tool through. When you begin using this option, it may take a few moments for the tool to start working while the image is being read in from the disk.

Impressionist option

When you use the Impressionist option, the program reads in the pixels from the last-saved version of the area you drag through and "smears" the pixels together to create an impressionistic effect. As with the From Saved option, this rubber stamp tool option may take a few moments to start working while the image is being read in from the disk.



Original image

Impressionist option

USING THE SMUDGE TOOL

The smudge tool simulates the actions of dragging a finger through wet paint. The tool picks up color from where the stroke begins and pushes it in the direction in which you drag.

Note: *The smudge tool cannot be used with bitmapped or indexed color images.*

To choose options for the smudge tool:

1 Double-click the smudge tool to display the Smudge Tool Options palette.

2 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

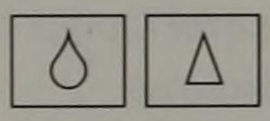
3 Drag the slider to set the pressure. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

4 To smudge using the foreground color at the beginning of each stroke, select the Finger Painting option.

Shortcut: *Hold down the Option key as you paint with the smudge tool to use finger-painting.*

Smudging an image

USING THE BLUR/SHARPEN TOOL



The blur/sharpen tool lets you blur hard edges or areas in an image to reduce detail, or sharpen soft edges to increase clarity or focus. Applying the blur tool decreases the contrast between pixels and produces a smoother image.

Note: *The blur/sharpen tool cannot be used with bitmapped or indexed color images.*

To choose options for the blur/sharpen tool:

1 Double-click the tool to display the Focus Tools Options palette.

2 Choose Blur or Sharpen from the Tool menu.

3 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

4 Drag the slider to set the pressure. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

Blurring an image

Sharpening an image

Shortcut: *To toggle between the blur and sharpen tools, press the Option key, and click the tool in the toolbox.*

USING THE DODGE/BURN/SPONGE TOOL

The dodge/burn/sponge tool lets you lighten or darken specific areas of an image, or change the color saturation of an area.

The dodge and burn tools are based on the traditional photographer's technique of increasing the amount of exposure given to a specific area on a print. Photographers hold back light during a exposure to lighten an area on the print (dodging), or increase the exposure to darken areas on a print (burning-in).

Note: *The dodge/burn/sponge tool cannot be used with bitmapped or indexed color images.*

To choose options for the dodge/burn tool:

1 Double-click the tool to display the Toning Tools Options palette.

2 Choose Dodge or Burn from the Tool menu.

3 Choose one of the following modes to limit the changes to specific portions of the image:

- Choose Midtones to change only the middle range of colors.
- Choose Shadows to alter the dark portions of the image.
- Choose Highlights to modify only the light pixels.

Original image

Dodging an image

4 Drag the slider in the Options palette to set the exposure. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for more information.

To use the sponge tool:

1 Double-click the tool to display the Toning Tools Options palette.

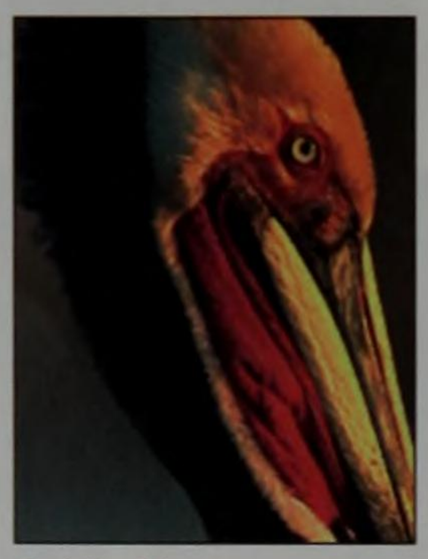
2 Choose Sponge from the Tool menu in the palette.

3 Choose one of the following modes to define the action of the sponge:

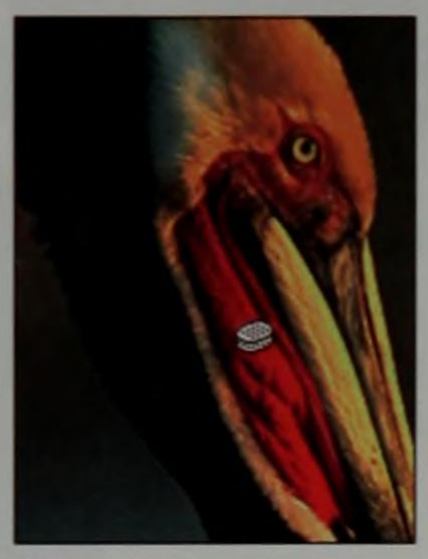
- Choose Saturate to increase the color's saturation.
- Choose Desaturate to dilute the color's saturation.

4 Drag the slider in the Options palette to set the pressure. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for more information.

The sponge tool is useful for subtly increasing the saturation in an area or for modifying out-of-gamut-colors by reducing their saturation. See "Managing Out-of-Gamut Colors" on page 196 for more information.



Original image



Saturation increased

Shortcut: *To toggle between the dodge, burn, and sponge tools, press the Option key, and click the tool in the toolbox.*

FILLING SELECTIONS

You can fill selections using the paint bucket tool, and the gradient fill tool. The paint bucket tool fills a selection with a color or a pattern. The gradient fill tool creates a gradient fill or gradual transition from the foreground to the background color or from a color to transparency.

The Fill command allows you to fill a selection, the background, or a layer with a color, pattern, or the contents of a saved file.

The default foreground color is black, and the default background color is white. See Chapter 7, "Selecting Colors," for information on choosing foreground and background colors.

Note: *If you're working on a layer and do not want to fill transparent areas, be sure the Preserve Transparency option is selected in the Layers palette. See "Preserving a Layer's Transparency" on page 133.*

To fill using shortcuts:

- Press Option-Delete to fill a selection with the foreground color.
- Press Delete to fill a nonfloating selection with the background color. You cannot use this shortcut with floating selections because floating selections are deleted when you press the Delete key.

Note: *You must be working in the background or in a layer with the Preserve Transparency option turned on, to use these shortcuts.*

USING THE PAINT BUCKET TOOL

The paint bucket tool uses the foreground color to fill adjacent pixels that are similar in color value to the pixel you click. The paint bucket tool options allow you to specify a mode and opacity, indicate how similar the colors of pixels must be to be filled (tolerance), and choose to fill with the foreground color or a pattern. You can also choose to create smooth edges for the filled selection.

Note: *The paint bucket tool cannot be used with bitmapped images.*

To choose options for the paint bucket tool:

1 Select the area you want to fill.

2 Double-click the paint bucket tool to display the Paint Bucket Options palette.

3 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for information on the other modes.

4 Drag the slider to adjust the fill opacity. See "Specifying the Opacity, Pressure, or Exposure" on page 97 for details.

5 Enter the tolerance for the fill.

The Tolerance option defines how similar a pixel must be to be filled. Values can range from 0 to 255. A low tolerance fills pixels that have color values very similar to the pixel you click.
A high tolerance fills pixels within a broader range of colors.

6 To smooth the edges of the filled selection, select the Anti-aliased option. See "Softening the Edges of a Selection" on page 58 for more information on anti-aliasing.

7 To fill the selection with the foreground color or with a pattern, choose an option from the Contents menu. See "Filling a Selection with a Pattern" on page 112 for information on defining and using patterns.

8 Click the part of the image you want to fill. All adjacent pixels within the specified tolerance are filled with the new color or with the pattern.

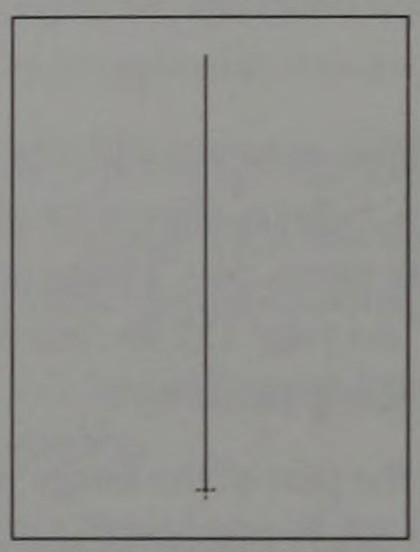
USING THE GRADIENT FILL TOOL

The gradient fill tool lets you create a gradient fill. A gradient fill displays a gradual transition from the foreground color to the background color or from transparency to the foreground color. If you don't select a specific part of the image, the gradient fill tool applies the fill to the entire image.

Note: *The gradient fill tool cannot be used with bitmapped or indexed color images.*

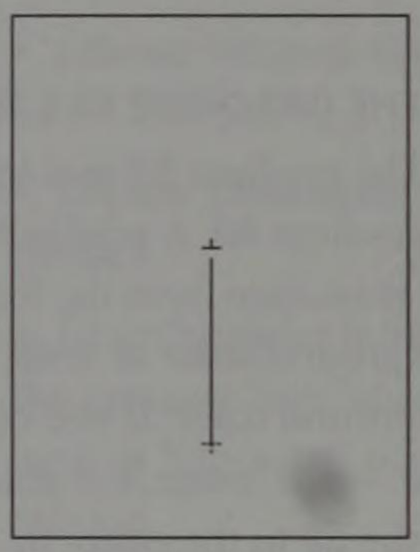
When you create a gradient fill, the gradient begins at the point where you start to drag and ends at the point where you release the mouse button. The portion of the image or selection before the starting point is filled with solid foreground color; the portion after the ending point is filled with solid background color.

A gradient fill can be applied as either a radial or a linear fill.

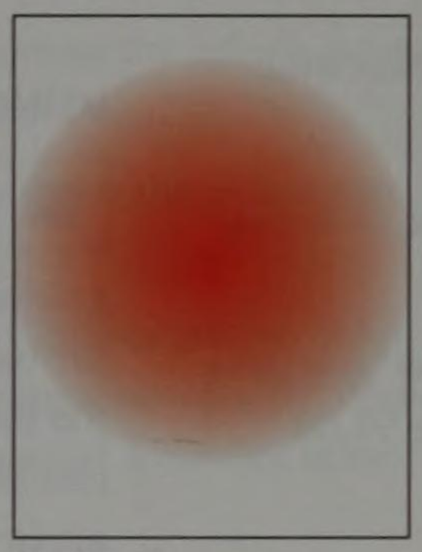


Gradient definition line

Linear fill



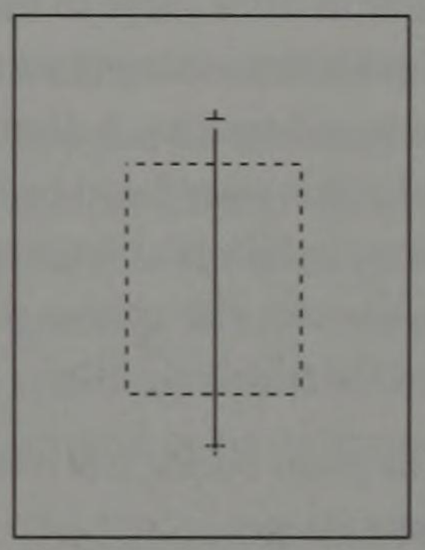
Gradient definition line



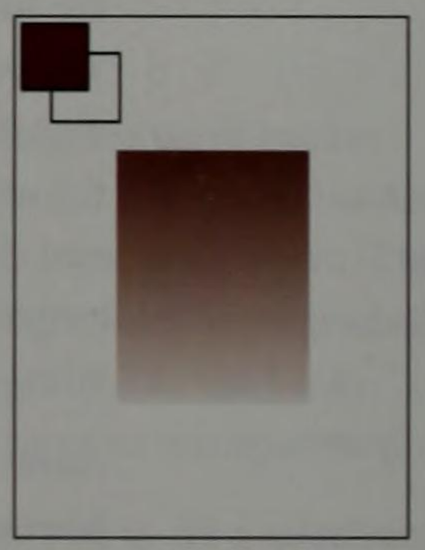
Radial fill

If the line you drag falls completely within the selected area, solid background and foreground colors fill the selection on either side of the gradient.

If the line you drag extends outside the selected area, only the part of the gradient that falls within the selection appears.



Gradient definition line extended beyond selection



Resulting gradient fill

Creating a linear gradient fill

A linear gradient fill creates a gradient from one point to another in a straight line.

To create a linear gradient fill:

1 Select the part of the image you want to fill.

2 Double-click the gradient fill tool in the toolbox to display the Gradient Tool Options palette.

3 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

4 Drag the slider to adjust the fill opacity.

5 Choose Linear from the Type menu.

6 To define how the fill makes the transition from the foreground color to the background color, choose one of the following options from the Style menu in the Gradient Tool Options palette:

• The Foreground to Background option makes the transition using the foreground and background colors in the same color space as the image (for example, a gradient fill in an RGB image uses the RGB color model).

• The Foreground to Transparent option makes the transition from the foreground color to no color (transparency).

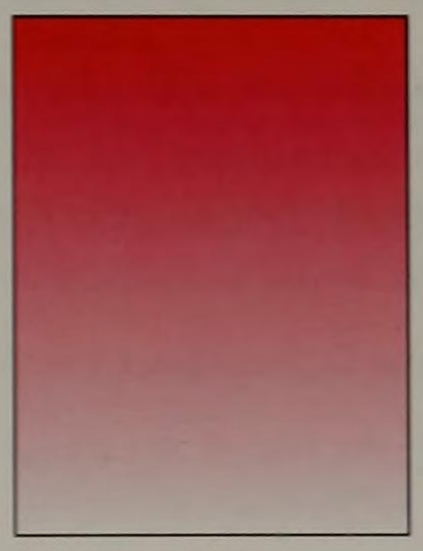
• The Transparent to Foreground option begins the fill with no color and makes the transition to the foreground color.

• The Clockwise Spectrum option makes the transition using the intermediate hues that lie between the two colors as you move clockwise around the color wheel (analogous to the color wheel in the Apple Color Picker).

• The Counterclockwise Spectrum option makes the transition using the intermediate hues that lie between the two colors as you move counterclockwise around the color wheel.

7 To define a midpoint for the fill, drag the slider.

The midpoint (or *skew*) of the gradient fill is the point at which the color is an even mix of the foreground and background colors. For example, drag the slider to a value of 25 percent to make the midpoint appear near the beginning of the fill (one-quarter of the way across the fill).



Midpoint: 30%

Midpoint: 60%

8 Position the gradient pointer where you want the fill to start, and drag to define the length and direction of the gradient. To constrain the line to a 45-degree angle, hold down the Shift key as you drag.

Creating a radial gradient fill

A radial fill creates a gradient fill from a center point outward in all directions.

To create a radial fill:

1 Select the part of the image you want to fill.

2 Double-click the gradient fill tool in the toolbox to display the Gradient Tool Options palette.

3 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

4 Drag the slider to adjust the fill opacity.

5 Choose Radial from the Type menu.

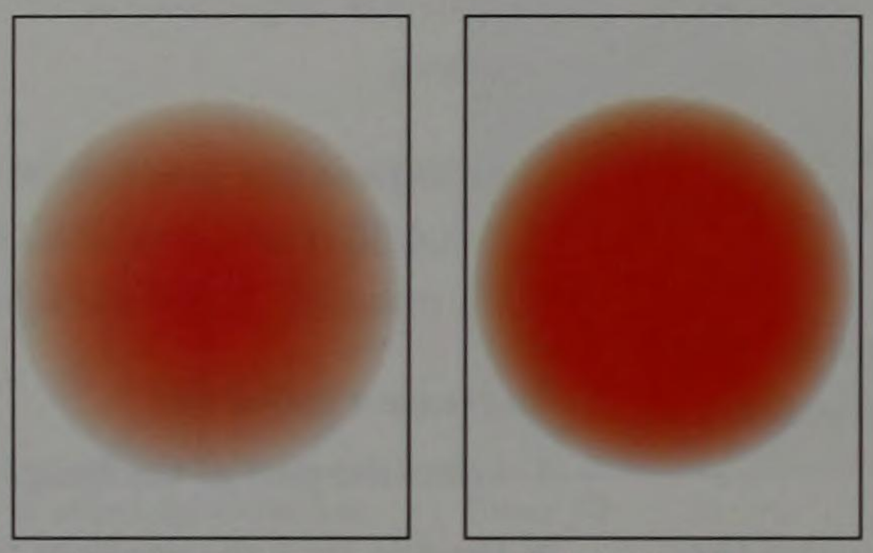
6 To define how the fill makes the transition from the foreground color to the background color, choose an option from the Style menu.

These choices are described in step 6 in the previous procedure.

7 To specify an offset value for the radial fill, drag the slider.

The offset value defines the point at which the radial fill displays the foreground color without any gradations. You enter this value as a percentage of the total distance from the starting point to the end point of the line you drag when you create the gradient fill. For example, a radial offset value of 50 percent makes the foreground

color appear as a solid color without gradations halfway between the starting and ending points of the fill.



Radial offset: 20% *Radial offset: 60%*

8 Position the gradient pointer where you want the fill to start, and drag to define the center point and radius of the gradient.

USING THE FILL COMMAND

The Fill command in the Edit menu allows you to fill a selection or a layer with a color, a saved portion of an image, or a pattern.

To fill a selection or a layer:

1 Select the part of the image you want to fill.

2 Choose Fill from the Edit menu to fill the selection. The Fill dialog box appears.

Shortcut: *You can also press Shift-Delete to display the Fill dialog box.*

3 Choose one of the following options from the Use menu to set the contents for the fill.

- Choose Foreground Color, Background Color, Black, 50% Gray, or White to fill the selection with a color.
- Choose Pattern to fill the selection with a pattern. Filling with patterns is discussed in the following section.
- Choose Saved to fill the selection with a saved version of the image. The Saved option restores the selected area of the image to its previously saved state.
- Choose Snapshot to fill the selection with the contents of the image buffer. See "From Snapshot Option" on page 105 for more information about taking and using snapshots.

4 Enter a value in the Opacity text box. A setting of 100 percent makes the fill fully opaque.

Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for information on the modes.

5 If you're working in a layer and want to fill only areas containing color values, select the Preserve Transparency option. See "Preserving a Layer's Transparency" on page 133 for more information.

6 Click OK to fill the selection.

Filling a selection with a pattern

You can also use the Fill command to fill selected areas of an image with a pattern. Before you fill a selection with a pattern, you must define the pattern using the Define Pattern command in the Edit menu. Each time you define a new pattern, it replaces the current pattern. If you want to reuse the patterns you create, save a document of pattern swatches.

To fill a selection with a pattern:

1 Click the marquee tool and, using the Rectangular option, drag to select the part of the image you want to use as the pattern.

2 Choose Define Pattern from the Edit menu.

3 Select the part of the image you want to fill.

4 Choose Fill from the Edit menu, and select Pattern from the Use menu in the Fill dialog box.

The pattern you defined is repeated as tiles within the selection.

Note: *Only one pattern can be defined at a time.*

Using PostScript patterns to fill a selection

The Adobe Photoshop software contains a folder of PostScript patterns that you can use to fill selections. Each file in this folder contains a single Adobe Illustrator-format pattern that can be scaled and rendered at any resolution.

To use a pattern from the PostScript patterns folder:

1 Choose Open from the File menu.

2 Choose the pattern file you want to use, and click Open. The Rasterizer dialog box appears.

3 Select the Rasterizer dialog box options you want to use. See "Opening and Placing Adobe Illustrator Files" on page 42 for information on choosing these options.

4 Click OK. The pattern opens in an Adobe Photoshop file.

5 Make a rectangular selection, or choose All from the Select menu.

6 Choose Define Pattern from the Edit menu. The pattern is defined as an Adobe Photoshop pattern.

7 Select the part of the image you want to fill.

8 Choose Fill from the Edit menu, and select Pattern in the Fill dialog box.

STROKING A SELECTION

The Stroke command allows you to fill a border around a selection or around the edge of a layer. As with the Fill command, you can specify the opacity of the fill and the painting mode to be used.

To stroke a selection or layer:

1 Select the part of the image you want to stroke.

2 Choose Stroke from the Edit menu. The Stroke dialog box appears.

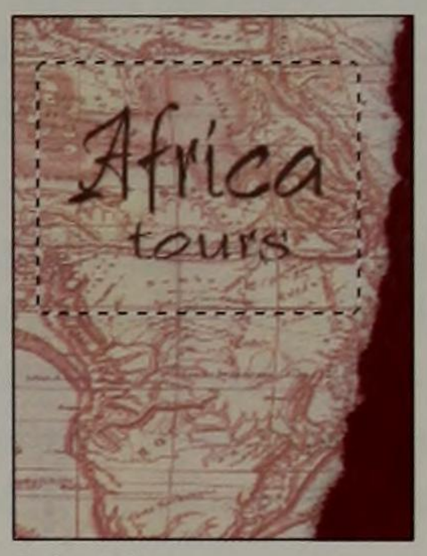
3 Specify the width and location of the border. Values for the width can range from 1 to 16 pixels.

4 Enter a value in the Opacity text box. A setting of 100 percent makes the stroke fully opaque.

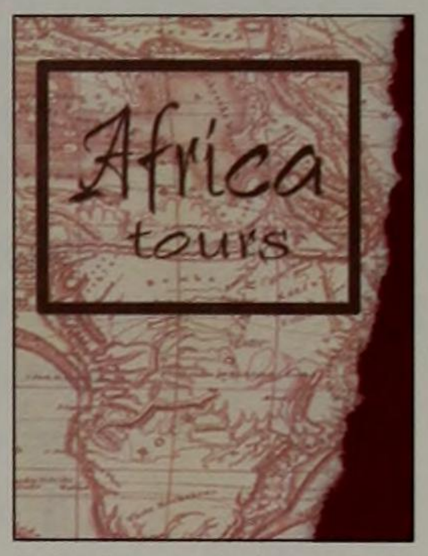
5 Choose a mode from the menu. See "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98 for more information.

6 If you're working in a layer and want to stroke only areas containing color values, select the Preserve Transparency option. See "Preserving a Layer's Transparency" on page 133 for more information.

7 Click OK to stroke the selection.



Selected area



Selection stroked: 10 pixels

PAINTING AND EDITING IN LAYERS

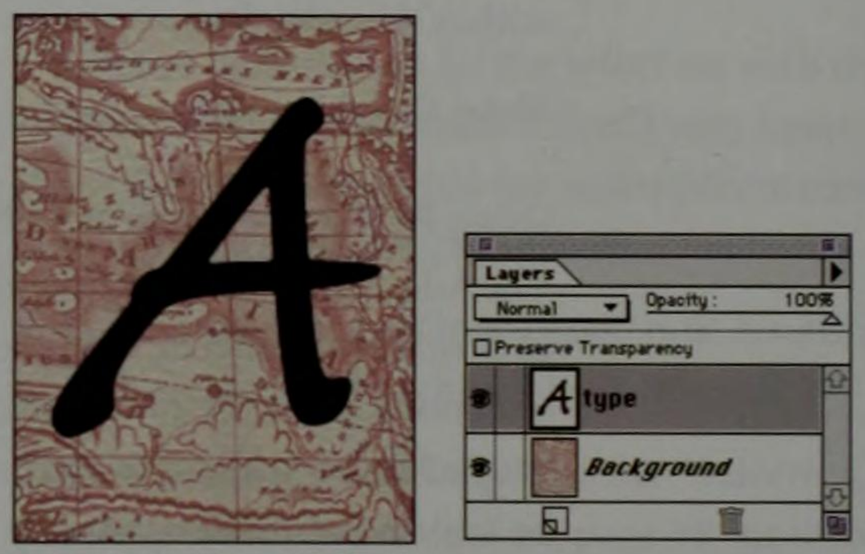
The Options palette determines the opacity and mode for the active painting or editing tool. When you use these tools to paint or edit a layer, keep in mind that the settings on the Options palette interact with the opacity and mode settings for the target layer, and that the actions affect the currently selected channel (which will usually be the composite channel).

For example, suppose you have a layer which uses the Dissolve mode and an opacity of 50 percent. You paint on this layer using the paintbrush with a Normal mode and an opacity of 100 percent. As it is displayed on the layer, the paint appears in Dissolve mode with a 50-percent opacity because this is the maximum the layer can display.

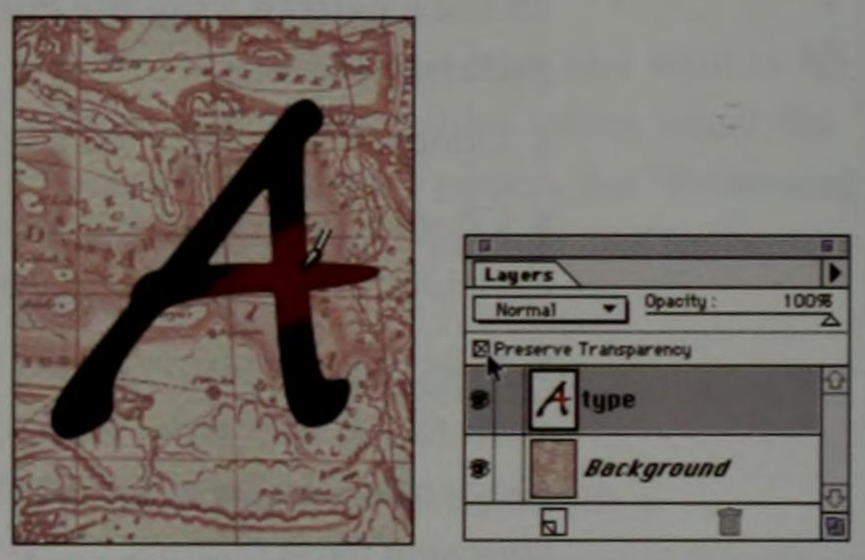
In the same way, if you were working on a layer created using Normal mode and 100-percent opacity, but were using the eraser tool with the paintbrush option set to 50-percent opacity, only 50 percent of the paint would disappear as you painted.

Because of this interaction, it's a good idea to keep the Layers palette and the Channels palette open on your desktop when you're painting or editing. Always check the active layer (and the active channel) before you begin to paint or edit. The active layer and channel names appear in the document's title bar.

When painting and editing in layers, you also need to know the Preserve Transparency setting for the current layer, and whether the layer has a layer mask. If Preserve Transparency is selected, your painting or editing will have no effect on transparent areas in the layer. Similarly, if you unknowingly paint in a mask, you will not get the results you expect.



Letter created on a layer



Letter painted with Preserve Transparency option on

For more information on layers, see Chapter 8, "Using Layers."

USING THE TYPE TOOL

T

The Adobe Photoshop program allows you to enter bitmapped type on an image using the type tool. This section describes how to select type options, including leading, type styles, and alignment.

Normally, large bitmapped characters appear jagged on the screen. However, if you use the Adobe Type Manager™ (ATM™) program, or

you are using TrueType™ fonts, characters appear almost as smooth and as well-defined as outline type.

Note that bitmapped type is different from the outline type generated in object-oriented applications such as Adobe Illustrator. In bitmapped applications such as Adobe Photoshop, type is rendered at the resolution of the image. For example, if the resolution of the image is 100 pixels per inch, the resolution of the type will also be 100 pixels per inch. You can't edit bitmapped type as text after you have placed it into the image.

To produce high-quality type, it's best to import your Adobe Photoshop image into a page layout program and create PostScript language type for the image.

Adding type to an image

You use the type tool to add bitmapped type to an image.

To enter type:

1 Click the type tool in the toolbox.

2 Click where you want the type to appear. The Type Tool dialog box appears.

3 Choose a font and specify a size for the type.

4 Enter values for the leading and spacing. See "Setting the Leading" on page 116 and "Setting the Letter Spacing" on page 116 for information on these options.

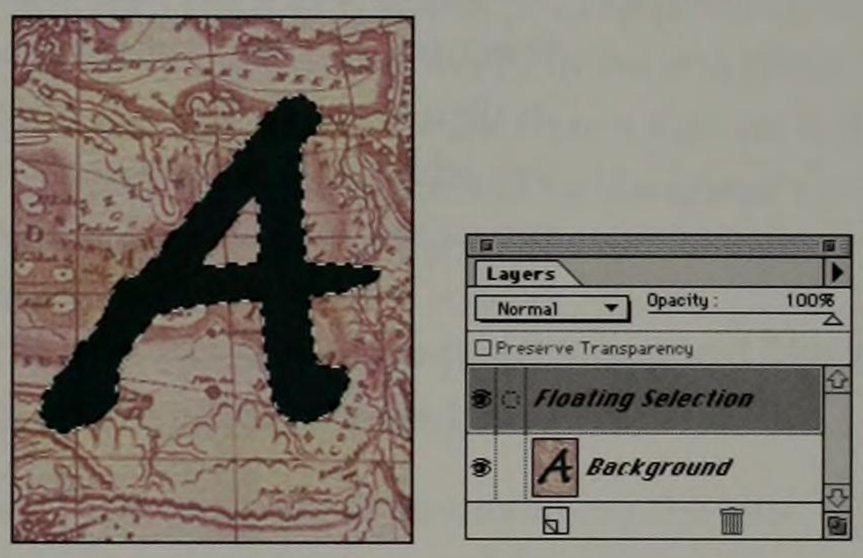
5 Select a style and alignment for the type. See "Selecting Style Options for Type" page 116 and "Aligning Type" on page 117 for information on these options.

6 Type the text in the text box.

By default, the text appears in the text box in 12-point Chicago. The type automatically wraps in the dialog box, but it appears as a single line in the image unless you press Return. You can enter up to 32,000 characters.

7 To display the text in the text box as it will appear in the image, select the Show Font and Size options under the text box.

8 Click OK. Type appears in the image as a floating selection and in the foreground color.

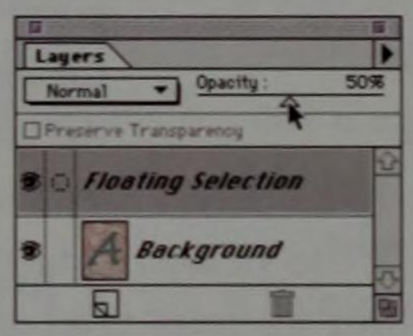


Changing type opacity and mode

Like all floating selections, the type selection appears as a temporary layer in the Layers palette. While the type is floating, you can change the type's opacity or mode by choosing a different mode and opacity from the Layers palette. For more precise control over blending

attributes, paste the type onto a new layer and use the Layer Options dialog box to change the attributes.

While type is a floating selection



Change the opacity on the Layers palette

Using text on a layer

While you can work with the type as a floating selection, it's often easier to make the type into its own layer. This allows you more freedom as you edit, place, or apply effects to the type. You can either create a new layer before you enter the type or convert the floating selection containing the type into a new layer. See "Pasting Selections onto Layers" on page 131 for more information.

If you don't place the text on a separate layer, when you deselect the type (or change layers), the text becomes part of the underlying layer; at that point, you can change the type only by editing the pixels that make up the characters.

Setting the leading

You control the line spacing, called *leading*, using the Leading option in the Type Tool dialog box. Leading is measured from baseline to baseline. The leading parameter uses the same unit of measurement you specify for the font size (either points or pixels); by default, the leading built into the font is used. Values can range from 1 to 1000.

14-point leading

18-point leading

Setting the letter spacing

You can control the spacing between letters, called *kerning*, using the Spacing option in the Type Tool dialog box. The Spacing parameter uses the same unit of measurement that is specified for the font size (either points or pixels). Enter positive values to increase the spacing; enter negative values to decrease the spacing. Spacing increments can be as small as tenths of a point or pixel (from –99.9 to 999.9).

Default spacing

Increased spacing

Selecting style options for type

You can apply Style options to type so that it appears underlined, italicized, shadowed, outlined, or bold.

Text, like all images in Adobe Photoshop, is composed of pixels, and its resolution is measured in pixels per inch (ppi). The Anti-aliased option in the Type Tool dialog box lets you minimize the pixel contrast at the edges of the text. When you select this option, the edges of the text appear smooth and blend into the background. You'll probably want to use anti-aliased type in your images, unless you are working with type in small point sizes.

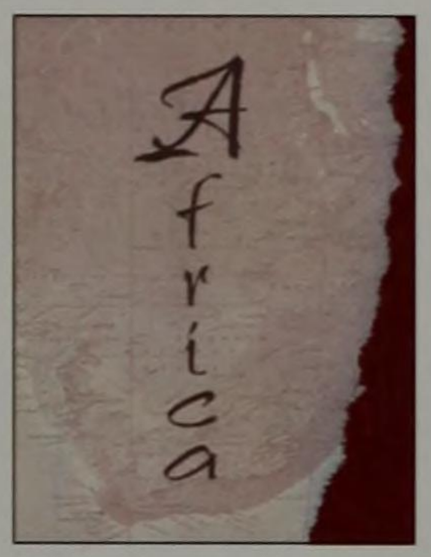
Anti-aliased type; inset zoom 4:1

Non-anti-aliased type; inset zoom 4:1

Aligning type

You align type based on the last point you clicked with the type tool pointer. For example, if you want to align type so that it is centered on the image, select the type tool, click the center of the image, and then click the Center Alignment option in the Type Tool dialog box.

The left column of Alignment options controls alignment of horizontal text. The right column controls alignment of vertical text. The text is aligned according to where you click the insertion point to display the text box. The left and top alignment options begin the text at the insertion point, the center alignment options center the text at the insertion point, and the right and bottom alignment options end the text at the insertion point.



Vertically aligned type

Adjusting individual characters

While a text block is still selected on an image and the type tool is active, you can deselect individual characters and words in the text block. You can then move the characters that are still selected to another position on the image and adjust letterspacing.

To deselect characters in a floating text block:

Use one of the following methods:

- Hold down the ⌘ key, and drag the lasso around the character or characters you do not want selected.
- Hold down the Shift and ⌘ keys, and drag the lasso around the characters you want to remain selected (the type tool turns into the lasso once you've added type to an image).

Note: *Make sure that you encircle the entire character you want to select or deselect; any portion of a character outside the lasso is not changed.*

To manually adjust the letterspacing:

Position the pointer on one of the selected characters and use one of the following methods:

- With the arrow pointer displayed, hold down the mouse button, and drag the characters to their new position. To constrain the movement to a straight line, hold down the Shift key.
- Use the arrow keys to move the selected characters in 1-pixel increments. Hold down the Shift key and press an arrow key to move the type in 10-pixel increments.

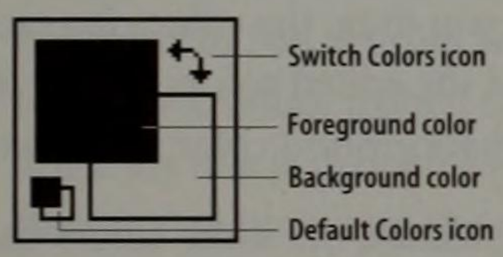
Chapter

7

SELECTING COLORS

Chapter 7: Selecting Colors

Adobe Photoshop uses the foreground color to paint, fill, and stroke selections, and as the beginning color for gradient fills. The background color is used when filling, when erasing in the background, when moving a nonfloating selection in the background, and as the ending color for gradient fills.

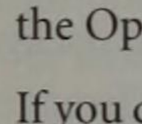


The default background color is white, and the default foreground color is black.

You can select new foreground and background colors in several ways:

- Use the eyedropper tool to sample a color in an image.
- Use the Picker palette to mix colors in any mode or to select from a color spectrum.
- Use the Swatches palette to select from a predefined set of colors.
- Use the Scratches palette to mix and select custom colors.
- To return to the default settings, click the Default Colors icon.
- To switch the foreground and background colors, click the Switch Colors icon.
- Use the Adobe Photoshop color picker or the Apple Color Picker (also known as the color wheel) to select colors from a color spectrum or to specify color mixes.

USING THE EYEDROPPER TOOL



The eyedropper tool lets you sample color from an area of an image to designate a new foreground or background color. You can sample from the current image or another image. (When you're using the eyedropper, you can click in a background window without making it the active window.)

To select the foreground or background color using the eyedropper:

1 Click the eyedropper tool.

2 To select a new foreground color from the image, click the color you want.

3 To select a new background color, hold down the Option key as you click.

If you drag the eyedropper tool in the image, the foreground color selection box changes dynamically as you drag. Option-drag to activate the background color selection box. Release the mouse button to choose the new color.

Shortcut: *To temporarily use the eyedropper tool while using any painting tool, hold down the Option key.*

Changing the eyedropper sample size

By default, the eyedropper tool reads the color value of the pixel where you click. You can increase the sample size the eyedropper tool reads. For example, you can set the eyedropper to sample a 3-screen-pixel-by-3-screen-pixel area under the pointer. Modifying the sample size of the eyedropper affects the color readouts displayed in the Info Palette.

To change the sample size of the eyedropper:

1 Double-click the eyedropper tool. The Eyedropper Options appear in the Options palette.

2 Choose one of the following options from the Sample Size menu:

- The Point Sample option reads the precise value of the pixel you click.
- The 3 by 3 Average and 5 by 5 Average options read the average value of the selected number of screen pixels within the area you click.

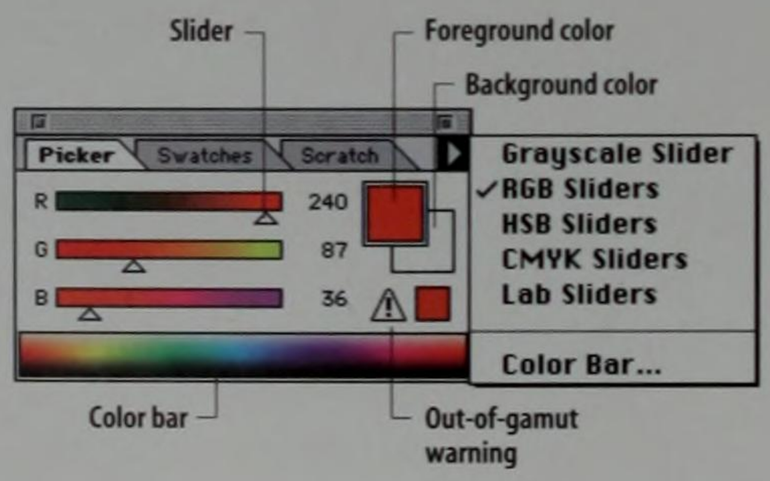
USING THE PICKER PALETTE

The Picker palette displays the color values for the current foreground and background colors. Using the sliders in the Picker palette, you can edit the foreground and background colors using one of several different color models.

To edit the foreground or background color using the Picker palette:

1 Choose Palettes > Show Picker from the Window menu. The Picker palette appears.

2 If it is not already highlighted (outlined with a double frame), click the foreground or background color selection box to indicate the color you want to edit.



3 Choose the color model you want to use for color readout values from the Picker palette menu. See "Setting Color Readout Values" on page 120 for a discussion of these models.

Drag the sliders to specify the new background or foreground color. You can also click the color selection box in the Picker palette to display the Color Picker dialog box. See "Using the Adobe Photoshop Color Picker" on page 124 for information on using this dialog box.

As you drag, the values for each slider change and the edited colors appear in the foreground or background color selection box.

By default, the slider colors change as you drag. If you want to turn off this preview feature to improve performance, choose Preferences > General from the File menu, click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box, and deselect the Dynamic Sliders in Picker option in the More Preferences dialog box.

Note: *When an exclamation point inside a triangle appears in the Colors palette, you have chosen a nonprintable, or out-of-gamut, color. The closest CMYK equivalent appears next to the triangle. Click CMYK equivalent to substitute it for the out-of-gamut color. See "Recognizing Nonprintable Colors" on page 125 for more information.*

Setting color readout values

The Info palette, the Picker palette, and the Adobe Photoshop color picker let you display color values using a number of different color models. See "Color Basics" on page 7 and "Adobe Photoshop Color Modes" on page 10 for more information on these color models.

- Grayscale lets you choose a color from 0-percent to 100-percent gray.

- RGB lets you choose a color with red, green, and blue values ranging from 0 to 255.
- CMYK lets you choose a color with cyan, magenta, yellow, and black values ranging from 0 percent to 100 percent.
- Lab lets you choose a color with a lightness value (*L*) from 0 to 100, and values along the *a* axis (green to magenta) and *b* axis (blue to yellow) from –128 to +127.
- HSB lets you choose a color with a hue from 0 degrees to 360 degrees and saturation and brightness values from 0 to 100 percent. The angle for hue is defined as an angle relative to the pure-red color on the color wheel. For example, if you set the saturation and brightness levels to 100 percent and drag the hue slider until green is displayed, the hue value is 120 degrees, because green is 120 degrees counterclockwise from red on the color wheel.

For more information on the color wheel, see "Using the Apple Color Picker" on page 128.

Choosing a color from the Picker color bar

A color bar along the bottom of the Picker palette allows you to quickly choose a background or foreground color from a specified spectrum of colors.

To select a model for the color bar:

1 Choose Color Bar from the Picker palette menu. The Color Bar dialog box appears.

2 Choose a model from the Style menu, and then click OK.

If you choose the Foreground to Background model, you can select the Lock to Current Colors option. This option lets you to keep the same spectrum in the Picker palette, even if you change the foreground or background color.

Note: *You can also Shift-click in the color bar to move through the gradient styles without displaying the dialog box.*

3 If it is not already highlighted (outlined with a double frame), click the foreground or background color selection box in the Picker palette.

4 Click the color bar to select a new color.

USING THE SWATCHES PALETTE

The Swatches palette contains the current color palette. You can choose a foreground or background color from the swatches, or you can add or delete colors to create a custom palette. You can also save a set of swatches and reload them for use in another image.

Selecting a color

Click a color in the Swatches palette to choose a foreground color. Option-click to choose a background color.

Adding or deleting a color

You can add, delete, and insert colors in the Swatches palette to create a customized palette. The palette contains blank areas to add new colors.

To add a color to the Swatches palette:

1 Use the eyedropper tool, the Picker palette, the Scratch palette, or the color picker to select the color you want to add.

2 Move the pointer over an empty space in the bottom row of the Swatches palette (it turns into the paint bucket tool), and click to add the color.

To replace or insert a color in the Swatches palette:

1 Use the eyedropper tool, the Picker palette, the Scratch palette, or the color picker to select the color you want to add.

2 Hold down the Shift key (the pointer turns into the paint bucket tool), and click to replace an existing swatch. Hold down the Shift and Option keys and click to insert a new color.

To delete a color from the Swatches palette:

Hold down the ⌘ key to turn the pointer into scissors, and click a swatch. The remaining swatches move to the left to eliminate the emptied square in the swatch row.

To return to the default Swatches palette:

Choose Reset Swatches from the Swatches palette menu.

Saving, loading, and appending Swatches palettes

The Swatches palette can hold as many colors as you want. However, to make the palette more manageable and to group related or special colors, you might want to create your own Swatches palettes.

To save and load a set of swatches:

Use one of the following the commands in the Swatches palette menu:

- The Save Swatches command saves the current palette in a file.
- The Load Swatches command replaces the contents of the Swatches palette with a stored palette.
- The Append Swatches command adds the colors stored in a saved palette to the current Swatches palette.

When you exit Adobe Photoshop, the current Swatches palette is saved in the Preferences file.

USING THE SCRATCH PALETTE

The Scratch palette is a scratch pad you can use to mix colors and select them as the foreground or background color. You can use all the painting tools to paint in the Scratch palette. You can also use the zoom and hand tools to change your view within the Scratch palette.

The Scratch palette is also a convenient place to define a custom brush shape or to define a pattern. Similarly, you can use custom brush shapes and patterns (when the pattern is painted using the paint bucket tool) in the Scratch palette area.

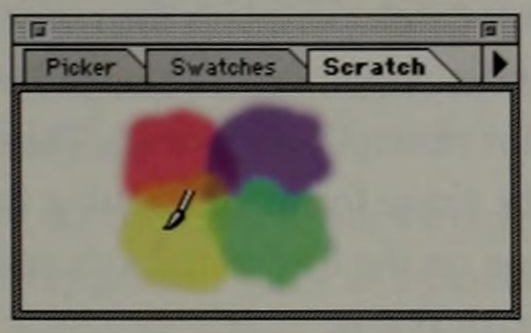
For more information on custom brushes, see "Creating Custom Brushes" on page 96. For information on defining patterns, see "Filling a Selection with a Pattern" on page 112.

To mix a foreground or background color:

1 Click a painting tool in the toolbox. The tools paint using their current settings in the Brushes and Options palettes.

2 Choose a foreground color. If you're choosing a color from the Picker or Swatches palette, you might want to ungroup the palettes. See "Working with Palettes" on page 19 for more information on separating palettes.

3 Paint the color inside the Scratch palette. Continue to select colors, and paint until you have the color you want.



To mix colors, apply two different overlapping colors (be sure to set the opacity in the Options palette to less than 100 percent). You can also paint two colors in the Scratch palette and use the smudge tool to mix them. Using the eraser in the Scratch palette fills the erased area with the background color.

4 Click the foreground or background color selection box in the Picker palette to indicate the color you want to change.

5 Select the eyedropper, and click the color in the Scratch palette.

Copying and pasting in the Scratch palette

You can copy and paste selections from an image into the Scratch palette. You can also copy areas from other Scratch palettes. This is useful, for example, when you want to use a sampled or a mixed color as the basis for another color.

To copy and paste in the Scratch palette:

1 Make the selection using a selection tool. (You cannot use the pen tool in the Scratch palette.)

2 Choose Copy from the Scratch palette menu.

Shortcut: *You can also use the move tool to drag a selection from the document window into the Scratch palette.*

3 Choose Clear from the Scratch palette menu to erase the current palette, or use the Load Scratch command to load a new Scratch palette.

4 Paste the selection.

Locking and clearing the Scratch palette

Once you've mixed the colors that you want, you might want to lock the Scratch palette to avoid painting over the colors you want to keep.

To lock the Scratch palette:

Choose Locked from the Scratch palette menu. To unlock the palette, choose Locked again.

To clear the Scratch palette:

Choose Clear from the Scratch palette menu. A blank new palette appears. You can't clear a locked palette. If you clear a selection in the Scratch palette, it is filled with the background color.

Resetting, saving, and loading Scratch palettes

Saving and loading Scratch palettes lets you build a library of custom colors which you can use in any Adobe Photoshop image.

To save and load Scratch palettes:

- Choose Save Scratch from the palette menu to save the current palette contents in a file.
- Choose Load Scratch from the palette menu to replace the contents of the Scratch palette with the stored palette contents.

To return to the default Scratch palette:

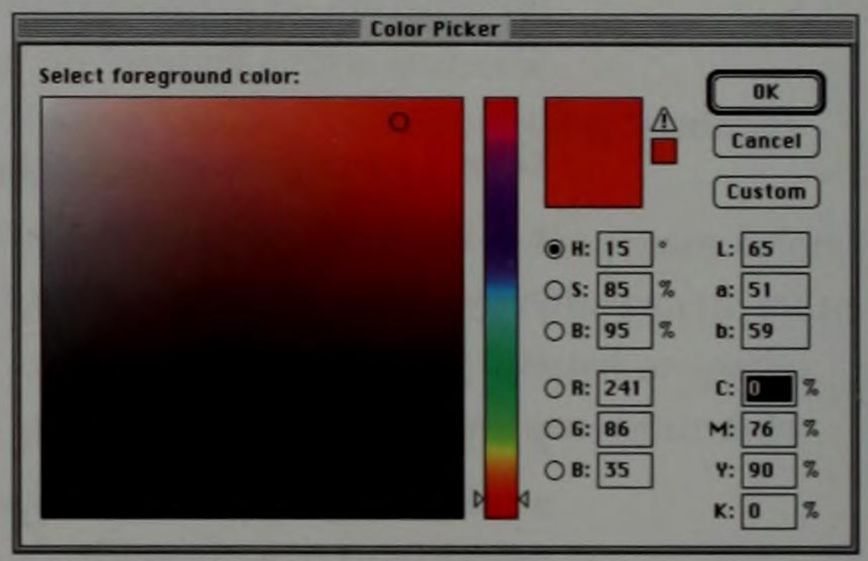
Choose Reset Scratch command from the Scratch palette menu.

USING THE ADOBE PHOTOSHOP COLOR PICKER

The Adobe Photoshop color picker allows you to select the foreground or background color from a color spectrum or to numerically define color components for a color. In addition, the Adobe Photoshop color picker lets you select colors based on the CMYK color model and choose from several custom color systems.

By default, the Adobe Photoshop color picker is selected in the General Preferences dialog box. To change to the Apple Color Picker, choose Preferences > General from the File menu. Choose Apple from the Color Picker menu in the General Preferences dialog box.

To display the color picker, click the foreground or background color selection box in the tool-box, or click the outlined color selection box in the Picker palette.



Specifying a color using the color field and color slider

With the HSB and RGB color models, you can use the color field and the color slider in the Color Picker dialog box to select a color. The color slider displays the range of color levels available for the selected color component (for example, R, G, or B). The color field displays the range for the remaining two components—one on the horizontal axis and one on the vertical axis.

For example, if you click the red component (R) using the RGB color model, the color slider displays the range of color for red (0 is at the bottom of the slider and 255 is at the top). The color field displays the values for blue along its horizontal axis and the values for green along its vertical axis.

To choose a color:

Drag the white triangles along the slider, or click inside the color field.

When you click in the color field, a circular marker indicates the color's position in the field.

As you adjust the color using the color field and color slider, the numerical values change to reflect the new color. The color rectangle to the right of the color slider displays the new color in the top section of the rectangle. The original color appears in the bottom of the rectangle.

Specifying a color using numerical values

In the Adobe Photoshop color picker, you can select a color in any of the four color models by specifying numerical values for each color component.

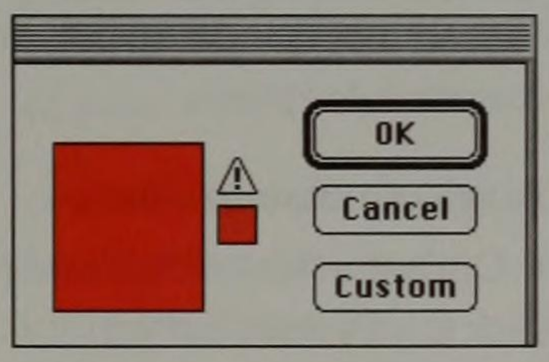
To specify color values in the following models:

- In the CMYK color model, specify each component value as a percentage of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black.
- In the RGB color model (this is the model your monitor uses), specify component values from 0 to 255 (0 is black, and 255 is the pure color).
- In the HSB color model, specify saturation and brightness as percentages, and specify hue as an angle from +180 degrees to –180 degrees that corresponds to a location on the color wheel. (Pure red on the color wheel is defined as the 0-degree point, located at 3 o'clock on the wheel; yellow is considered +60, at 60 degrees counter-clockwise from red; green is +120, at 120 degrees counterclockwise from red; cyan is 180, opposite red on the color wheel, and so on.)
- In the Lab model, enter a lightness value (*L*) from 0 to 100, and *a* axis (green to magenta) and *b* axis (blue to yellow) values from –128 to +127.

Recognizing nonprintable colors

Some colors in the RGB and HSB color models, such as neon colors, cannot be printed because they have no equivalents in the CMYK model. If you select a nonprintable color, an alert triangle with an exclamation point appears in the Color Picker dialog box and in the Picker palette. The closest CMYK equivalent is displayed below the triangle. Click the triangle to automatically select the CMYK equivalent.

Adobe Photoshop lets you display a CMYK Preview and display out-or-gamut colors when you're working in RGB documents. For more information, see "Managing Out-of-Gamut Colors" on page 196.



Printable colors are determined by the printing values you enter for the selected ink set in the Printing Inks Setup and Separations Setup dialog boxes. To see or change these values, choose Preferences > Printing Inks Setup or Preferences > Separation Setup from the File menu. See Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System," for more information about printing inks; see Chapter 14, "Producing a Color Separation," for more information about separation setup values.

CHOOSING CUSTOM COLORS FROM THE ADOBE PHOTOSHOP COLOR PICKER

The color picker lets you choose custom colors from the PANTONE® MATCHING SYSTEM, the TRUMATCH SWATCHING SYSTEM™, the FOCOLTONE® COLOUR SYSTEM, the TOYO 88 ColorFinder™ 1050 System, and the ANPA-COLOR™ system.

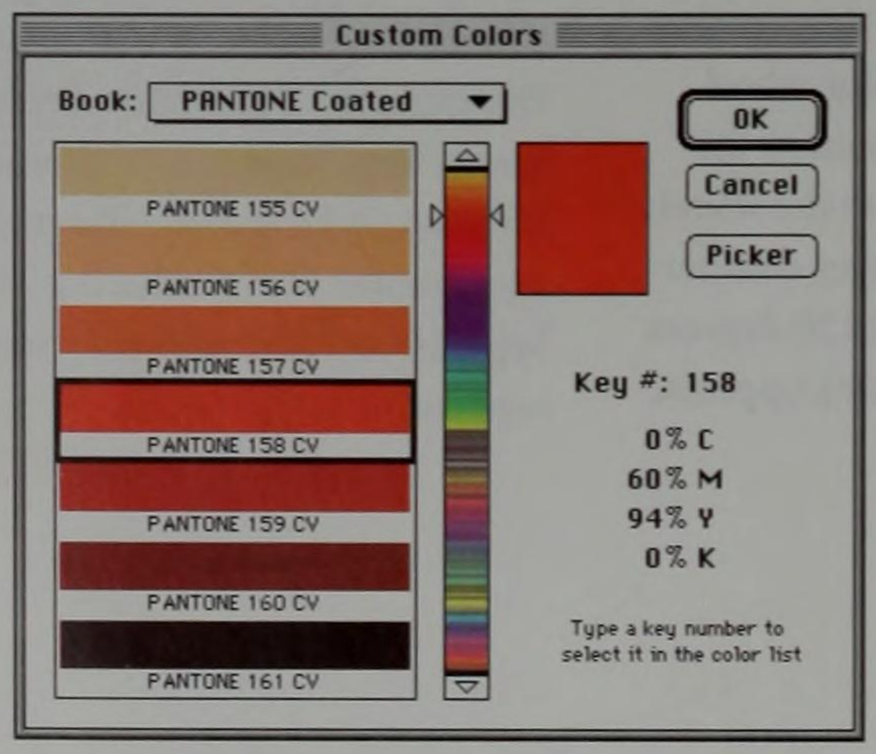
Before selecting any custom color, make sure that you're viewing a printed swatch for the color. (See the sections on each color system later in this chapter for information on obtaining a printed color swatch book.) Manufacturers recommend that you get a new swatch book each year to compensate for fading inks and other damage. Picking a custom color based on the swatches ensures that the final printed output is the color you want.

See "Creating Spot Colors in RGB and CMYK Modes" on page 128 for information on printing custom color plates.

To select a custom color:

1 Open the Adobe Photoshop color picker, and click the Custom button.

The Custom Colors dialog box appears. The dialog box displays the color closest to the color currently selected in the Adobe Photoshop color picker.



2 Choose the type of ink you want to use from the Book menu.

3 Locate the color you want by typing the ink number or by dragging the triangles along the scroll bar.

4 Click the color patch in the list.

5 To return to the color picker, click the Picker button. The Adobe Photoshop color picker appears with the current color equivalent selected.

Note: *In Adobe Photoshop, custom colors are printed to their equivalent CMYK plates in every mode except Duotone.*

Selecting PANTONE colors

Adobe Photoshop supports PANTONE colors for printing inks. Pantone has specified CMYK equivalents for its colors. To select a PANTONE color, first determine the ink color you want, using either the *PANTONE Color Formula Guide 747XR* or an ink chart obtained from your printer. PANTONE books are available from printers and graphic arts supply stores.

When you're using PANTONE colors in documents that you plan to export to other applications, such as Adobe Illustrator, PageMaker®, or QuarkXPress®, make sure that the Short PANTONE Names option is selected in the General Preferences dialog box. This ensures that the PANTONE color names will match the naming convention used in the other applications.

You can select from PANTONE Coated, PANTONE Uncoated, PANTONE Process, and PANTONE ProSim custom colors. For more information, contact PANTONE at the following address:

PANTONE, Inc.
590 Commerce Blvd.
Carlstadt, NJ 07072
(201) 935-5500

Selecting TRUMATCH colors

The TRUMATCH color swatching system provides predictable CMYK color matching with over 2000 achievable, computer-generated colors. TRUMATCH colors cover the visible spectrum of the CMYK gamut in even steps. The TRUMATCH COLORFINDER displays up to 40 tints and shades of each hue, each originally created in four-color process, and each reproducible in four colors on electronic imagesetters. In addition, four-color grays using different hues are included. For more information on the TRUMATCH system, contact TRUMATCH at the following address:

TRUMATCH, Inc.
25 West 43rd St., 8th Floor
New York, NY 10036
(212) 302-9100

Selecting FOCOLTONE colors

The FOCOLTONE COLOUR SYSTEM in Adobe Photoshop provides 763 CMYK colors. FOCOLTONE colors help avoid prepress trapping and register problems by showing the overprints that make up the colors. All the colors convert to spot colors with a single mix of CMYK inks.

A swatch book with specifications for process and spot colors, overprint charts, and a chip book for marking up layouts is available from FOCOLTONE at the following address:

FOCOLTONE INTERNATIONAL, Ltd.
Churchview House
Penkridge
Acton Trussell, Stafford
ST170RJ
United Kingdom
(44) 0785-712667

Selecting TOYO ColorFinder 1050 colors

The TOYO 88 ColorFinder 1050 color system, created by Toyo Ink Manufacturing Company, Ltd., provides over 1000 colors based on the most common printing inks used in Japan. The TOYO Color Finder 1050 Book contains printed samples of Toyo colors and is available from printers and graphic arts supply stores. For more information contact Toyo at the following address:

Toyo Ink Manufacturing Co., Ltd.
3-13 2-chome Kyobashi
Chuo-ku, Tokyo 104
(011) 81-3-3272-0781

Selecting ANPA-COLOR colors

You can choose ANPA colors for newspaper applications. The *ANPA-COLOR ROP Newspaper Color Ink Book* contains samples of the ANPA colors. For more information, contact ANPA at the following address:

Newspaper Association of America
Order Entry
11600 Sunrise Valley Drive
Reston, VA 22091
(703) 648-1367

CREATING SPOT COLORS IN RGB AND CMYK MODES

When you specify custom colors in RGB or CMYK mode, Adobe Photoshop converts the custom color into its RGB or CMYK equivalents.

Since Adobe Photoshop is designed to print using the four CMYK process colors, you cannot print spot color plates using the custom colors themselves. Instead, the custom colors are converted to their CMYK equivalents for printing.

To print a spot color in RGB or CMYK mode:

1 Select the areas that you want to print as a spot color.

2 Choose Save Selection from the Select menu to isolate each spot color in a separate channel.

This creates a *negative plate*. If you need to print from a positive, invert the image in the channel. See "Saving a Selection in an Alpha Channel" on page 155 for information on using alpha channels.

3 Select the channel in the Channels palette, and choose Print from the File menu.

4 Follow this procedure for each spot color you want to print.

Return to the composite RGB or CMYK channel, load each spot channel individually, and delete the contents of the mask. This creates the knockouts for the spot colors.

This procedure for producing color separations can be used only when you're printing directly from Adobe Photoshop. You can't print the entire set of CMYK and spot separations (stored in individual channels) if you have placed the document into a page layout or illustration application.

Note: *Adobe Photoshop allows you to specify any custom color in the color picker for generating distinct custom color plates for duotone images. See "About Monotones, Duotones, Tritones, and Quadtones" on page 230 for more information on using custom colors in these images. Check with your print shop to see which custom color swatch books you should use in these cases.*

USING THE APPLE COLOR PICKER

You can also use the Apple Color Picker (also known as the color wheel) to change the foreground or background color. The Apple Color Picker lets you select colors based on the HSB or the RGB color model. Unlike the Adobe Photoshop color picker, the Apple Color Picker does not alert you to nonprintable colors.

This section briefly describes using the Apple Color Picker. For a detailed description, see your Macintosh documentation.

To use the Apple Color Picker:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Choose Apple from the Color Picker menu, and click OK.

3 Click the foreground or background color selection box in the toolbox. The Apple Color Picker dialog box appears.

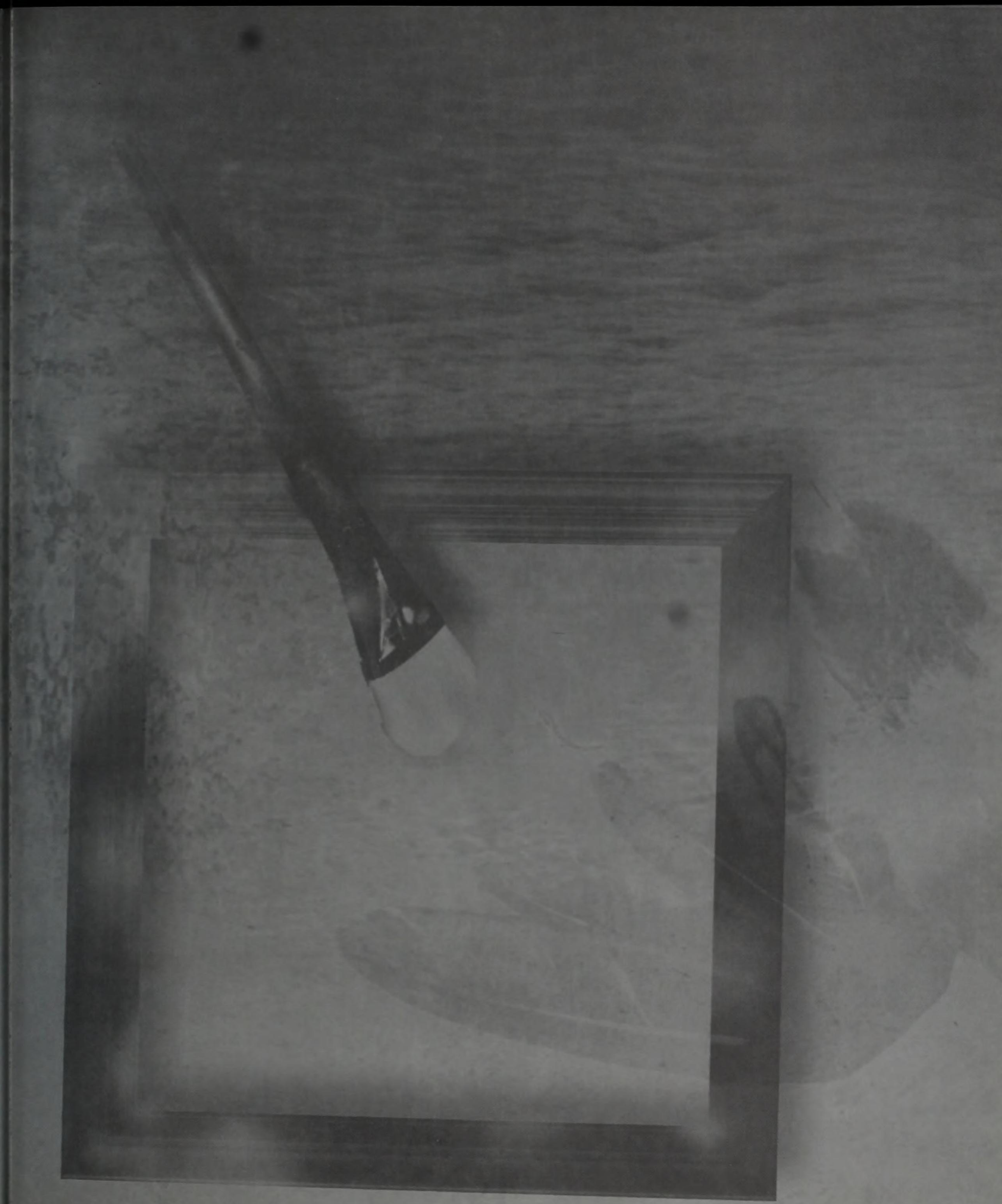
4 To specify a color, enter numbers in the HSB or RGB text boxes, or click the color in the color wheel. Each color value can range from 0 to 65,535.

5 To adjust the brightness of a color, use the scroll bar to the right of the color wheel. Scroll down to darken the color; scroll up to lighten it.

Chapter

8

USING LAYERS



Chapter 8: Using Layers

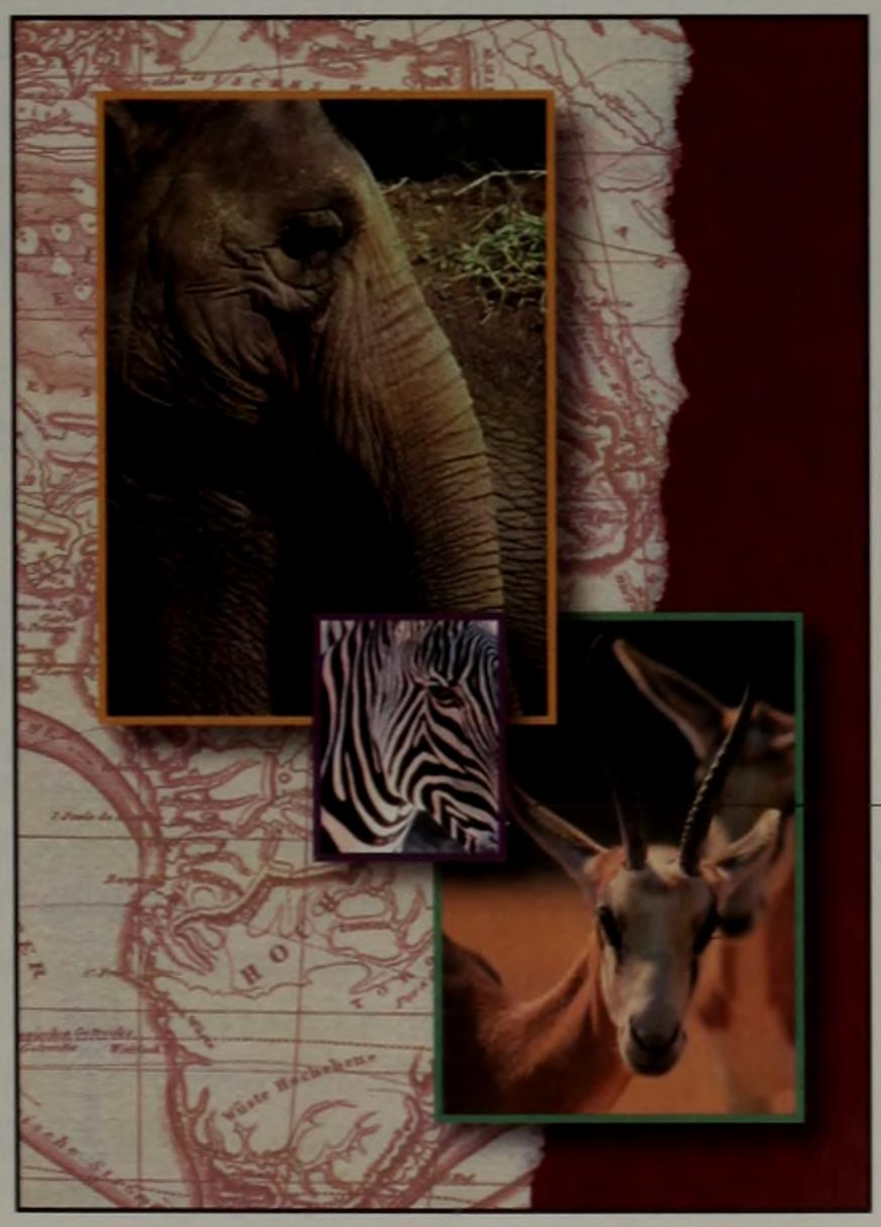
When you create a new Adobe Photoshop document, the image consists of only a background. Think of this background as the canvas under a painting. The background can be white or it can be the current background color.

Note: *Documents created using the Transparent option in the New dialog box are created without a background.*

You can add one or more *layers* to the document. Think of layers as transparent sheets of acetate that are stacked on top of the background. If no image has been copied onto the layer, you can see through to any other visible layers and to the background at the bottom of the layers.

Layers enable you to edit specific areas of your image without affecting any other data. You can draw, edit, paste, use masks, and reposition artwork on a layer without disturbing any other layers in the image. Thus, you can experiment freely with different combinations of graphics, type, special effects, opacities, and blending

UNDERSTANDING LAYERS • Layers are like sheets of acetate stacked one on top of the other. Where there is nothing on a layer, you can see through to the layers below. Behind all the layers is a background. In the illustration below, each animal and the map are on separate layers. The red texture is the background.



modes. Until you *merge* (that is, combine) layers, each layer remains independent of the other layers in the document.

All layers in a document share the same number of pixels, the same number of channels, and the same image mode, for example, RGB, CMYK, or Grayscale mode.

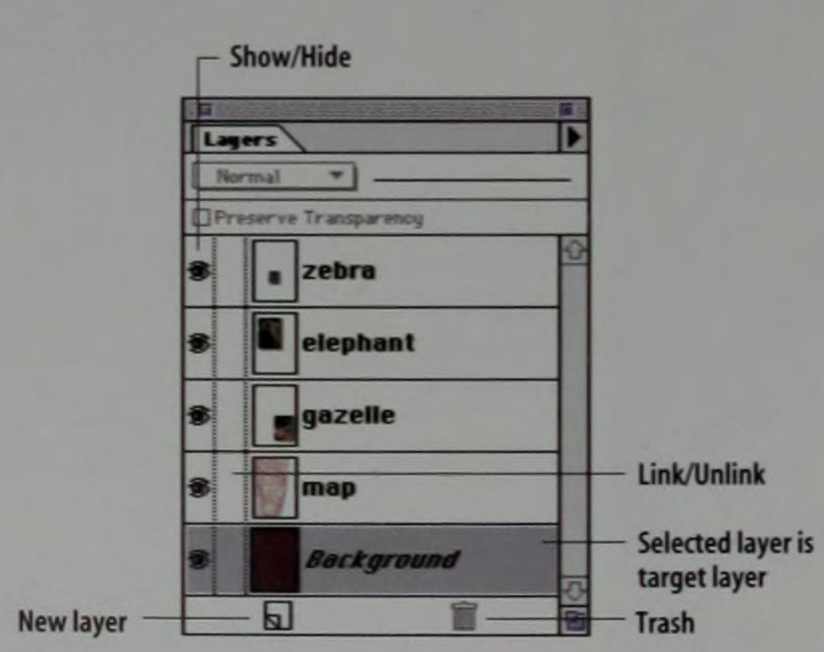
Documents created in versions of Adobe Photoshop earlier than 3.0 consist only of a single background layer. If you add layers to these documents using Adobe Photoshop 3.0, you must save them in the Adobe Photoshop 3.0 format. Only the Photoshop 3.0 format supports layers. For more information about this file format, see "Saving Adobe Photoshop 3.0 and Adobe Photoshop 2.0 Files" on page 48.

USING THE LAYERS PALETTE

You use the Layers palette to create, copy, merge, and delete layers, and to create layer masks. The Layers palette also lets you hide and show individual layers.

To display the Layers palette:

Choose Palettes > Show Layers from the Window menu.



The Layers palette lists the layers, starting with the topmost layer in the image. The background is always at the bottom of the layer list. A thumbnail of the layer contents appears to the left of the layer name. This thumbnail is updated as you edit the layer. Use the scroll bars or resize the palette to see additional layers.

The highlighted layer in the Layers palette is the active, or *target*, layer. The name of the active layer also appears in the document's title bar. Any editing affects only this layer. Only one layer can be active at a time.

To select a layer:

Choose one of two options:

- In the Layers palette, click the layer name to make it active.
- Using the move tool, hold down the ⌘ key, and click anywhere in the document window.

Whatever layer contains the pixels you click becomes the active layer. This technique is useful for quickly identifying which layer contains a specific set of pixels.

CREATING A LAYERED DOCUMENT

Adobe Photoshop lets you create any number of layers in a document, each with its own painting mode and opacity. However, the amount of memory your system has may affect the number of layers you can have in a single document.

Once you create a new layer, you can place images on it by using the Paste commands in the Edit menu, by dragging a selection from another open Adobe Photoshop document, or by dragging a layer from the Layers palette of another open Adobe Photoshop document.

Adding layers

You add layers using the New Layer command or the New Layer icon at the bottom of the Layers palette. You can also create a new layer from a selection using the Paste Layer or Make Layer command. See the next section, "Pasting Selections onto Layers," for information on creating a new layer from a selection.

To add a new layer:

Choose one of two options:

To create a new layer using the default options, click the New Layer icon at the bottom of the Layers palette. A new layer is created, set to Normal mode and 100-percent opacity. The layer is named according to the order in which it was created.

- To select options for the new layer, Option-click the New Layer icon at the bottom of the Layers palette, or choose New Layer from the Layers palette menu. See "Specifying Layer Options" on page 138 for information on layer options.

Note: *Creating a new layer deselects any selections that have been moved or pasted in the current document.*

Pasting selections onto layers

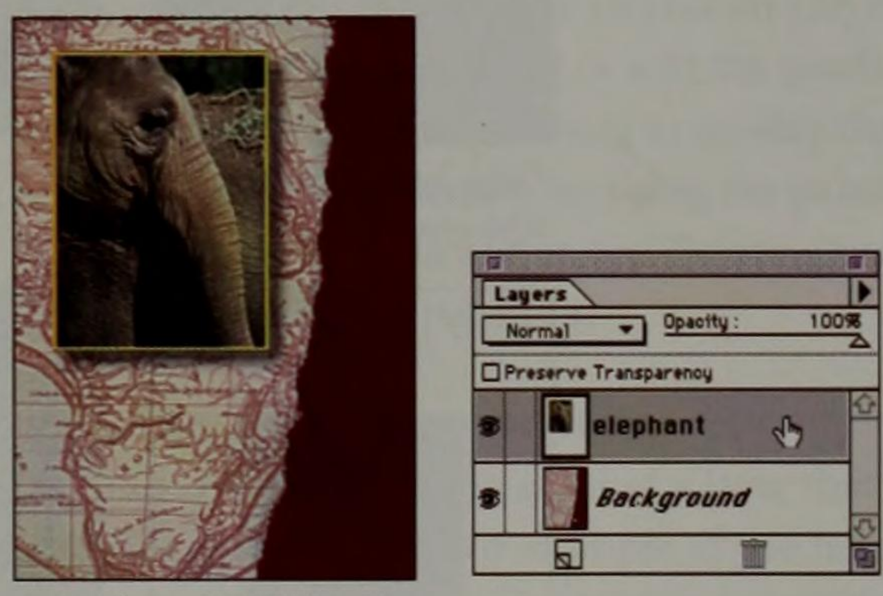
When you paste a selection onto a layer, it appears as a *floating selection* (that is, a selection that floats above the current background or layer) in the Layers palette. As soon as you deselect the floating selection, the pixels in the selection merge with the underlying layer.

Because you can easily deselect a floating selection (for example, by selecting another layer in the Layers palette), it's a good idea to paste floating selections onto a new a layer. You can then paint, apply filters, and make adjustments to the selection before you merge it with another layer in the image.

To paste a selection onto a layer:

1 In the Layers palette, select the layer onto which you will paste the selection.

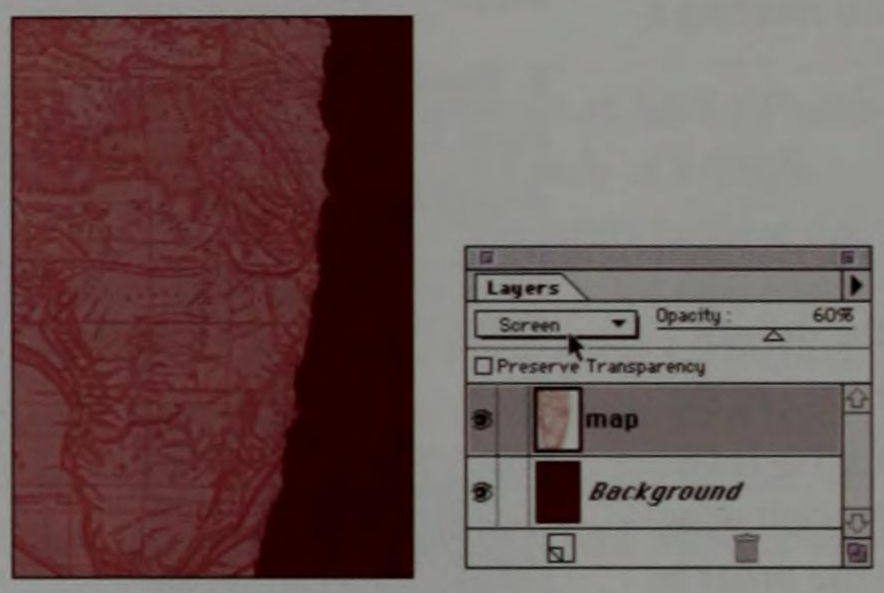
2 Paste the selection by choosing the Paste or Paste Into command from the Edit menu or by dragging a selection from another open Adobe Photoshop document. You can also select the move tool and drag an entire image to the new layer.



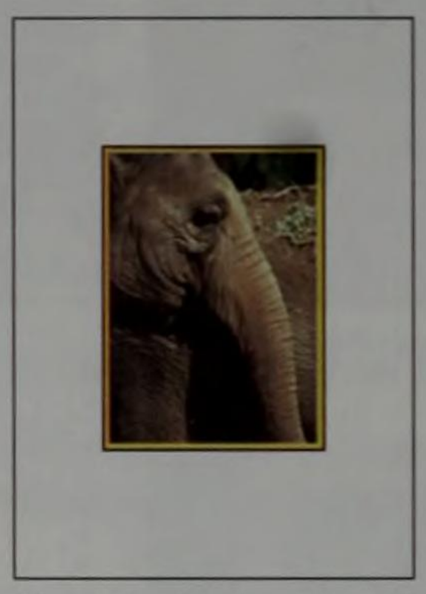
Active layer highlighted in palette

Selection pasted into document

A floating selection assumes the mode and opacity of the layer you're pasting it into. For example, a selection with 100-percent opacity set to Normal mode that is pasted onto a layer with 50-percent opacity set to Screen mode, will appear screened and 50-percent opaque.



Active layer: Screen mode; 50% opacity



Floating selection: Normal mode; 100% opacity

Floating selection assumes opacity and mode of layer it is pasted into

You can modify the mode or opacity of a floating selection in the Layers palette; however, for more precise control over the selection, paste the selection onto a new layer and then use the Layer Options dialog box to modify the selection's attributes.

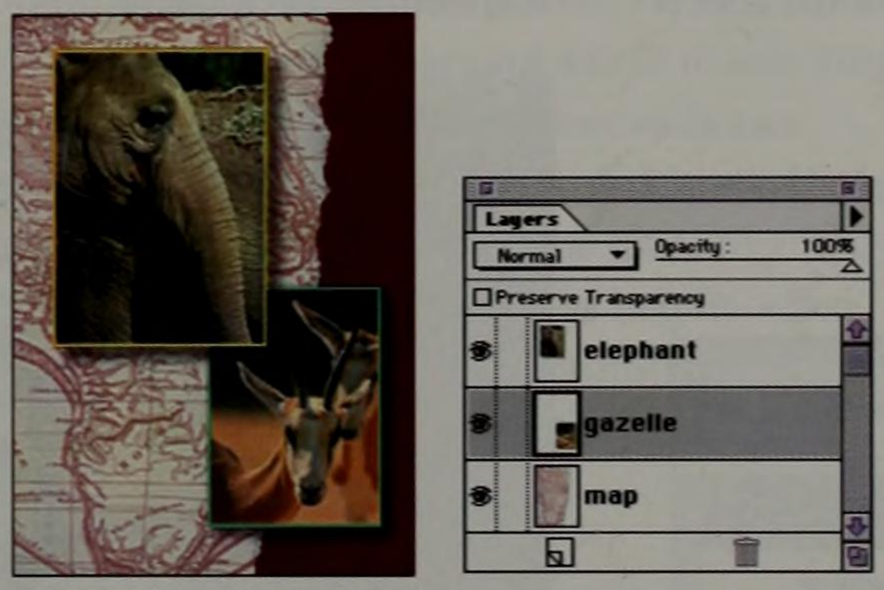
3 To move the floating selection to another layer in the image, drag the selection in the Layers palette.

Floating selection moved by dragging in palette

4 Choose one of these options:

- To paste the selection onto the active layer, deselect the floating selection. The selection is merged with the active layer and can no longer be edited.
- To paste the floating selection onto a new layer, click the New Layer icon. To select options for the new layer before you paste the selection, Option-click the New Layer icon, select Make Layer from the Palette menu, or double-click the floating selection in the Layers palette.

Shortcut: *To paste a selection onto a new layer in one step, choose Paste Layer from the Edit menu.*



Floating selection (gazelle) pasted onto a new layer

See "Specifying Layer Options" on page 138 for a description of layer options.

Dragging layers between documents

You can add a layer to a document by dragging a layer from the Layers palette of one image (the source) onto another (target) image. The source layer is added as a new layer to the target image's Layers palette.

To drag layers between documents:

1 Open the images that you will use.

2 Select the layer in the source image's Layers palette.

3 Drag the source layer to the target image. The layer appears as a new layer in the target image's Layers palette.

EDITING LAYERS

You can use the painting and editing tools to draw on a layer, or you can copy and paste selections to a layer.

All editing occurs on the active layer (and in the active channel). To keep track of your editing, you should keep the Layers and Channels palettes open and refer to them as you edit.

Adding pixels to a layer

When you create new layers in an image, the layers are 100-percent transparent. Pasting, painting, and editing in the layer fills the selected areas with opaque pixels. Once an area on a layer contains pixels, you can paint or edit the pixels, apply filters, or use special effects to modify the layer. For more information on using the painting and editing tools on a layer, see "Painting and Editing in Layers" on page 114.

Preserving a layer's transparency

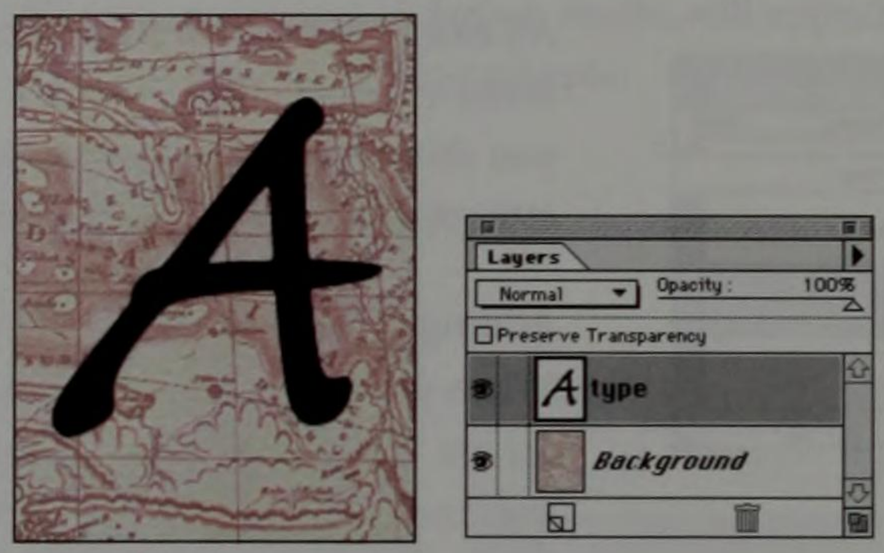
You can confine editing to areas of a layer that already contain pixels. For example, if you have created type on a layer, you may want to edit the type (e.g., by adding special effects or changing its color) without affecting the rest of the layer.

To confine editing to a layer:

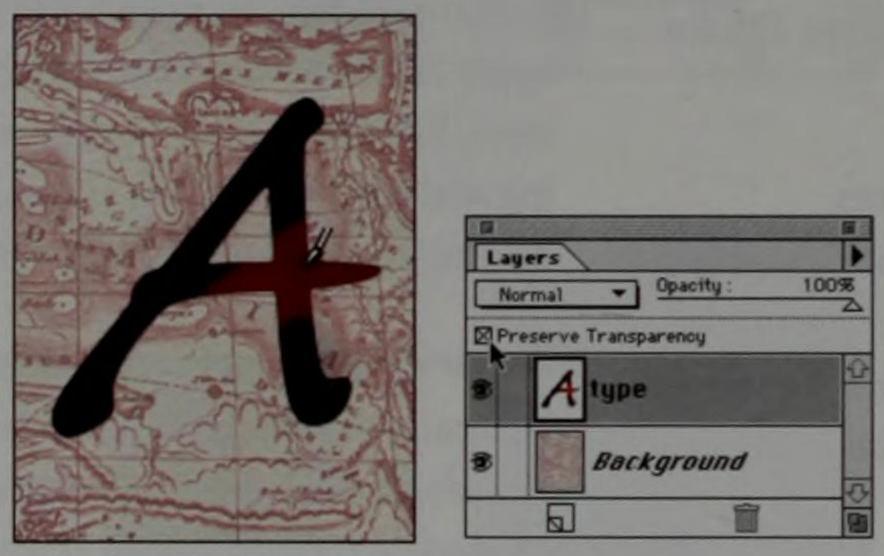
1 Select the active layer in the Layers palette.

2 Select the Preserve Transparency option in the Layers palette.

When you use the pencil, paintbrush, airbrush, rubber-stamp tools, paint bucket, and gradient fill tools, only the opaque areas show the effects of the tool.



Original image



Painting on a layer with Preserve Transparency option selected

VIEWING LAYERS

A layer is transparent until you add pixel values to it. When you're viewing layers, all transparent areas appear in a checkerboard pattern. The checkerboard helps you distinguish between transparent areas and white areas. You can modify the appearance of the checkerboard and change its color. For information on changing the checkerboard, see "Setting Transparency Preferences" on page 14.

Map and background layer turned off in Layers palette

Showing and hiding layers

You can make layers temporarily invisible to speed performance as you edit or print other parts of the image. Only visible layers are printed. When a layer is visible, an eye icon appears in the leftmost column of the Layers palette for that layer.

To show or hide a layer:

Click the eye icon in the leftmost column of the Layers palette to show or hide individual layers.

Shortcut: *Drag through the column to show or hide multiple layers. Option-click the eye icon to display a single layer. Note that Option-clicking allows you to have a visible layer which is not the target; however, in most cases you will want the target layer to be visible. Option-click the visible layer again to redisplay the last visible set of layers.*

Hiding and resizing layer thumbnails

You can change the size or turn off the display of thumbnails in the Layers palette. While thumbnails are the most convenient way of monitoring layer contents, turning off thumbnails can improve performance and save disk space. Using smaller thumbnails reduces the space required by the Layers palette and can be helpful when you're working on smaller monitors.

To change the size of a layer thumbnail:

1 Choose Palette Options from the Layers palette menu.

2 Click a size or click None to turn off the thumbnail and then click OK.

MOVING AND COPYING LAYERS

You can move layers anywhere in the document window and change the order of layers. You can also link multiple layers and move them together.

To move a layer:

1 In the Layers palette, select the layer that you want to move.

2 Select the move tool in the toolbox.

3 In the image, drag the layer into the desired position. To constrain the movement to 45 degrees or 90 degrees, hold down the Shift key as you drag.

Any areas of the of layer that are dragged out of the window are still available until you edit the pixels in the layer (for example, by rotating them or changing their opacity).

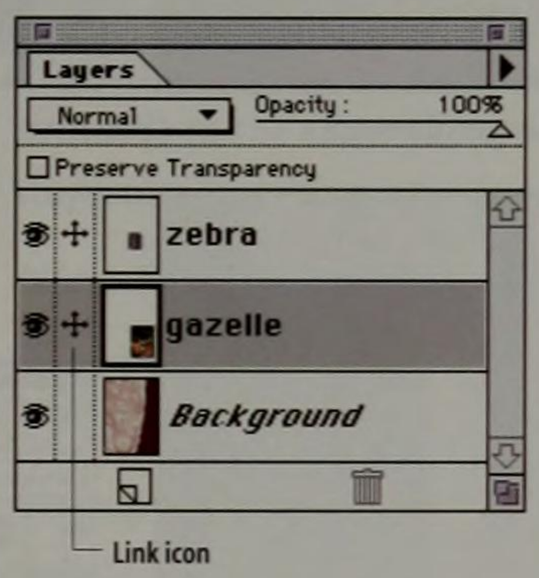
Shortcut: *When the move tool is selected, you can use the arrow keys to move the layer contents in 1-pixel increments. Press Shift and an arrow key to move the layer in 10-pixel increments (or to move one frame if you're editing an Adobe Photoshop filmstrip file).*

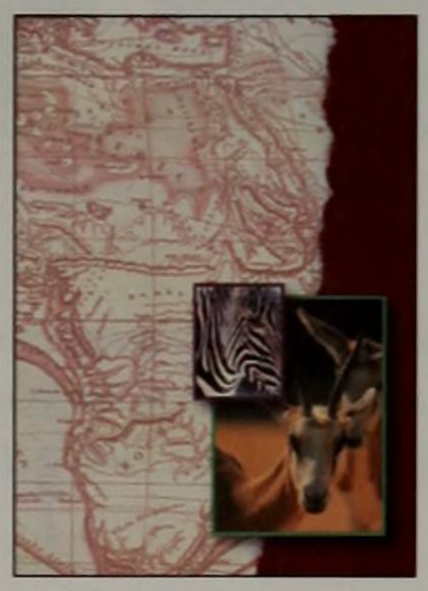
To move multiple layers:

1 Select one of the layers you want to move.

2 Click the second column from the left in the Layers palette to indicate any additional layers you want to move. The link icon appears in the column.

3 Move the linked layers.





Original image

Gazelle and zebra layers linked and moved

4 Click the link icon to unlink a layer.

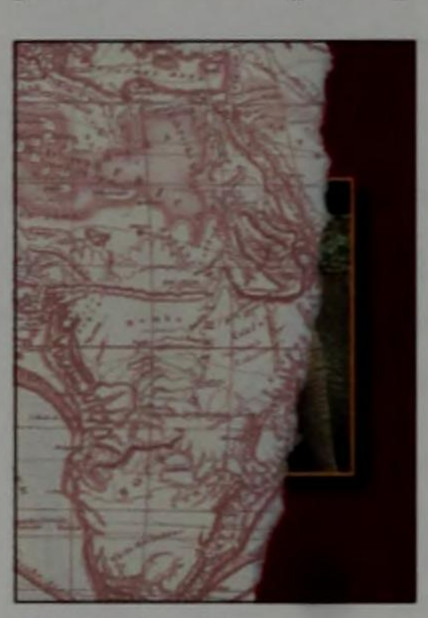
Changing the order of layers

You can use the Layers palette to change the order of layers in an image.

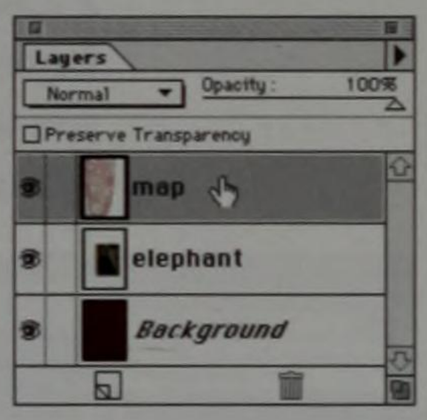
To change the order of layers:

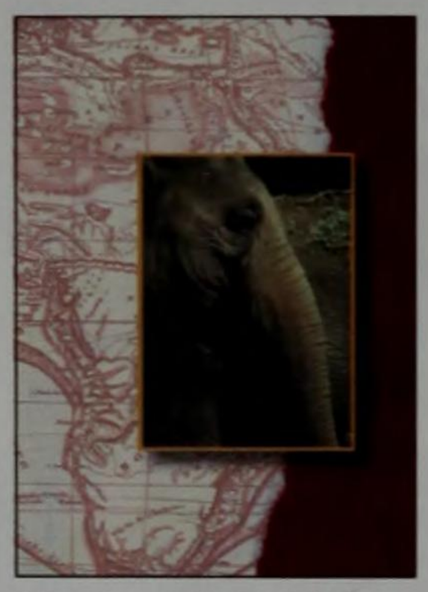
1 Select the layer in the Layers palette that you want to move.

2 Drag the layer up or down in the Layers palette to change its position in the document.



Original image





Map layer dragged below elephant layer

Note: *By default, the background layer cannot be moved and is always the bottom layer in an image. To move the background to a different location, first convert the background into a layer by double-clicking the background and using the Make Layer command; then move the layer.*

Copying layers between documents

You can copy any layer or the background from one Adobe Photoshop document to another. You can also make an existing document into a layer in another document.

To copy a layer between documents:

1 Select the layer that you want to copy in the Layers palette of the document.

2 Choose Copy from the Edit menu to copy the layer to the Clipboard.

3 Make active the document into which you will paste the selection or layer.

4 Choose Paste from the Edit menu to paste the new layer as a floating selection. To create a new layer as you paste, choose Paste layer from the Edit menu. See "Pasting Selections onto Layers" on page 131 for more information.

5 Deselect the floating selection.

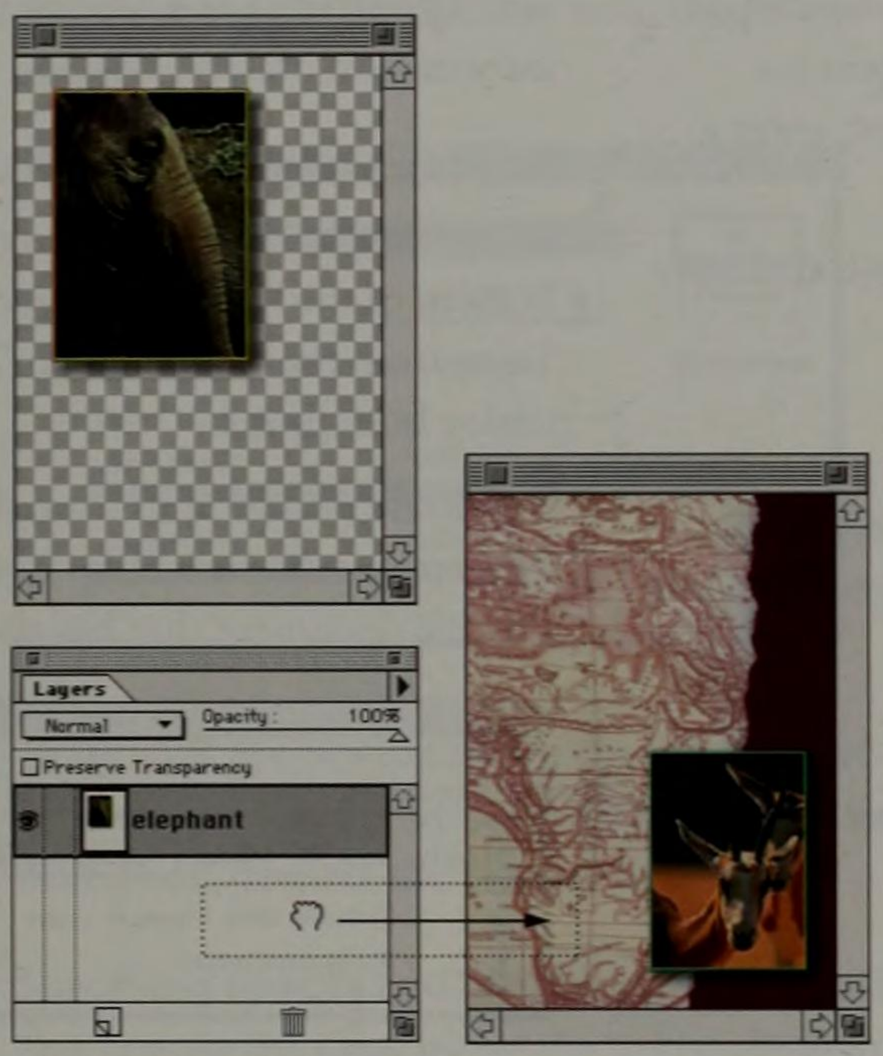
To copy a layer into another document:

1 Open the two documents.

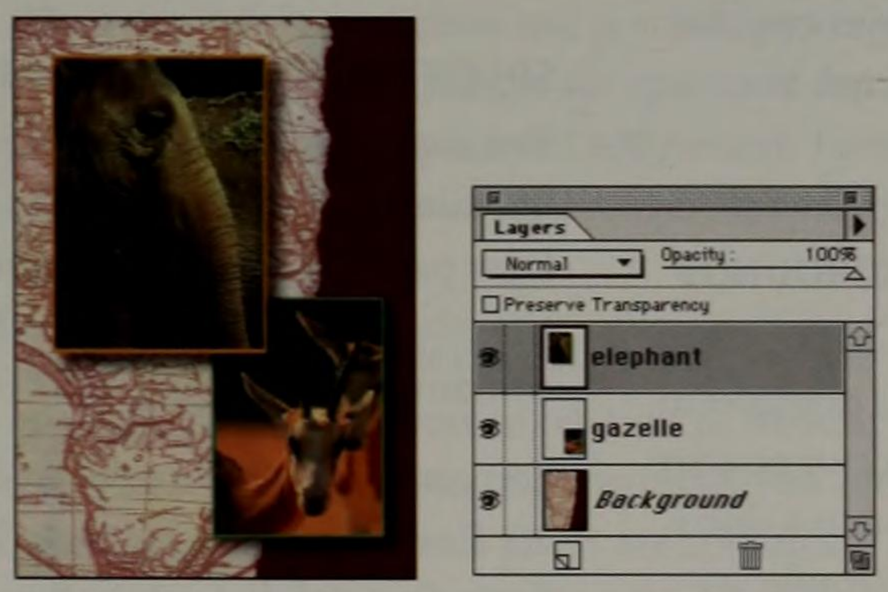
2 Select the layer you want to copy in the document's Layers palette.

If you're working in a document created in a version of Adobe Photoshop earlier than 3.0, only the background appears in the Layers palette.

3 Drag the layer from the Layers palette into the second document window.



Click and drag the layer from the palette to the image



Resulting image

A new layer appears in the Layers palette of the document into which you copied the layer.

The layer is positioned in the image at the point where you release the mouse button. If the layer you're dragging is larger than the image size of the document you're copying into, only part of the layer is visible. The rest of the layer is still available until you edit the pixels in the layer. To see other sections of the layer, use the move tool to drag the layer into position. If the layer you're copying is smaller than the layer you're copying into, the contents are centered in the new layer.

The copied layer is added to the top of the Layers palette in the document you drag into.

Shortcut: *You can also copy a layer by dragging the layer from one document window to another. Use the move tool to drag between the two document windows. Dragging from window to window copies the layer as a floating selection.*

Duplicating layers

You can duplicate any layer (including the background) in the same document, or copy the duplicate layer to a new document.

Note: *To copy a layer to an existing document, see "Copying Layers between Documents" on page 136.*

To duplicate a layer:

1 Select the layer name in the Layers palette.

2 Choose one of these options:

• Drag a layer from the Layers palette to the current document window. The layer is duplicated.

• Drag a layer from the Layers palette to the New Layer icon at the bottom of the Layers palette. The layer is duplicated.

• Choose Duplicate Layer from the Layers palette menu. In the Duplicate Layer dialog box, name the duplicate layer and choose a destination from the Document menu. If you are copying the layer to a new document, enter a name for the new document.

A new document created with a duplicated layer doesn't have a background.

DELETING LAYERS

Because layers increase your file size, it's important to delete layers that you no longer need. You can also delete floating selections.

To delete a layer:

1 Select the layer name in the Layers palette.

2 Choose one of two options:

Drag the layer or floating selection to the Trash icon at the bottom of the Layers palette.

• Choose Delete Layer from the Layers palette menu. If a floating selection is selected, the command is Delete Selection.

CONVERTING AND ADDING BACKGROUNDS

At times you may want to convert a background to a layer, for example, to change its position in the Layers palette, or to apply a mode or opacity to it. You can also add a background to a document without a background (for example, a document created using the Transparent option in the New dialog box or a layer copied to a new document).

To convert a background into a layer:

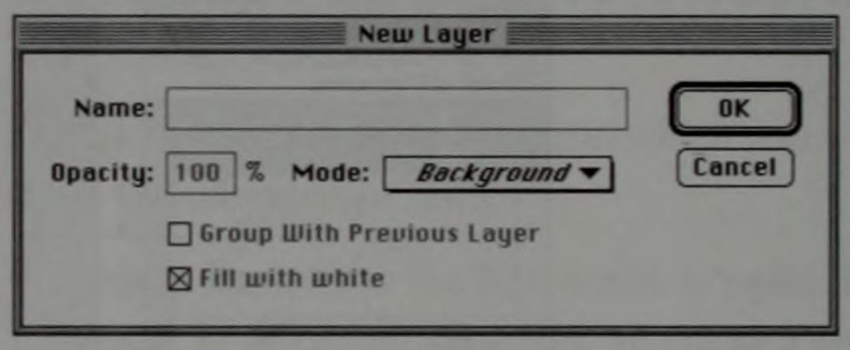
1 Double-click *Background* in the Layers palette. The Make Layer dialog box appears.

2 Enter a name, opacity, and mode for the layer and indicate if the layer should be grouped. See "Specifying Layer Options" on page 138 for information on layer options.

To add a background to a document:

1 Option-click the New Layer icon at the bottom of the Layers palette, or choose New Layer from the palette menu. The New Layer dialog box appears.

2 Choose Background from the Mode menu. (This option is available only when you're working in a document that has no background.)



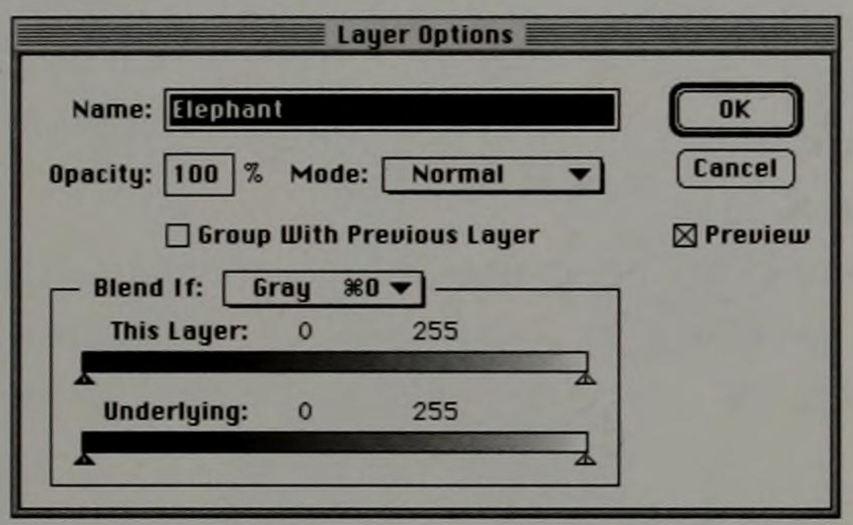
A background is added to the Layers palette.

SPECIFYING LAYER OPTIONS

You use options to specify the opacity and blending mode of a layer. You can also make a layer part of a group or fill a new layer with neutral pixel values so that it can be edited without containing a selection.

You can choose layer options each time you create a new layer or at any time by opening the Layer Options dialog box. You can also change a layer's opacity or blending mode using the controls in the Layers palette.

To open the Layer Options dialog box:
Double-click the layer name in the Layers palette, or choose Layer Options from the palette menu.



To turn off previewing as you change the opacity, mode, or blend controls in the Layer Options dialog box, deselect the Preview option.

Specifying opacity and blending modes

You can use the Opacity option to change the opacity of a layer at any time.

Shortcut: *When a selection tool is active, pressing a number from 0 to 9 changes the opacity of the layer, where 0 sets the opacity to 100 percent, 1 sets the opacity to 10 percent and 9 changes the opacity to 90 percent.*

You use the layer modes to determine how the pixels in the layer appear in relation to underlying pixels on other layers. For example, you can create a layer in which all pixels are combined with the underlying pixels using the Dissolve mode. Each layer can also be created with a specified opacity.

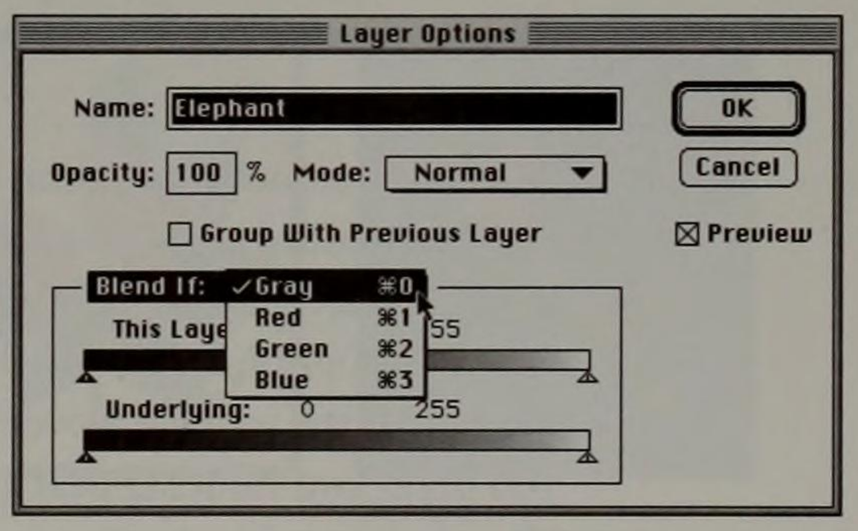
The Layers palette modes are the same modes available in the Options palette when you paint or edit an image. For a description of these modes, see "Selecting a Painting or Editing Mode" on page 98.

You can create a variety of special effects by applying modes to individual layers.When you apply a mode to a layer, it affects how the layers appear in the final image. For example, if you create a layer using Darken mode, only the pixels in the layer that are darker than the underlying pixels are blended into the image. The table on page 141 shows examples of the modes when used as layer options.

Note: *You cannot use the Clear mode with layers. The Lighten, Darken, and Difference modes cannot be used in Lab images.*

Specifying a range for blending layers

The sliders in the Layer Options dialog box allow you to define which pixels are blended by indicating a range of brightness values for the replacement pixels. These values determine which pixels in the combined image come from the current layer and which come from the underlying visible layers. Color values are measured on a scale from 0 (black) to 255 (white).



If the color values of the pixels in the current layer are inside the range specified on the This Layer slider, they are blended into the final image. For example, if you set the This Layer

slider to 0 and 235, the pixels in the current layer with values between 235 and 255 are not blended and do not appear in the final image.

If the pixels in the underlying visible layer are outside the color range specified by the Underlying Layer slider, they are retained in the final image. For example, if you set the Underlying Layer to 19 and 255, pixels in the underlying layers with values between 0 and 19 appear in the final image. The pixels in the current layer that overlay pixels with a value of 0 to 19 are not blended.

To define a range for the blending operation:

1 Choose an option from the Blend If menu in the Layers Options dialog box. The menu contains all channels in the image:

- The Gray option sets the range of values for all pixels in the image.
- The individual colors set the range for specific color channels (for example, red, green, and blue values for RGB images).

2 Drag the This Layer or Underlying Layer slider triangles to set the color range. Drag the white triangle to set the high value of the range; drag the black triangle to set the low value of the range.

To create a smooth transition between blended and nonblended areas, you can define a range of pixels that are only partially blended. If you hold down the Option key as you drag a slider triangle, half of the triangle moves in the direction you drag. Two values appear above the slider. The pixels between these two values appear with only part of their original colors.

Filling a new layer with a neutral color

Some Adobe Photoshop effects (including certain filters) cannot be applied to empty layers. Using the Fill with Neutral Color option in the New Layer dialog box enables you to apply these effects to empty layers. If no effect is applied, filling with a neutral color has no effect on the rest of the layers.

***Note**: The Fill with Neutral Color option is unavailable when you create a layer using the Normal, Dissolve, Hue, Saturation, Color, or Luminosity modes.*

Creating clipping groups

Layer groups enable you to define a selection on one layer as a mask for one or more layers above. For example, if you have a shape on one layer, a texture on the next layer, and some text on a third layer, you can define all three layers as a clipping group so that the texture and the text appear only through the shape. In a layer group, the bottom layer in the group (called the base layer) controls the mode and transparency of all other layers in the group.

Note that only successive layers can be included in a clipping group. If you ungroup a layer from a clipping group, it becomes the new base layer for any layers grouped above it.

Mode Effects on Layers

Background

Layer 1

Difference

Overlay

Overlay 50%

Soft Light

Hard Light

Multiply

Multiply: 50%

Screen

Screen: 50%

Dissolve

Saturation

Lighten

Darken

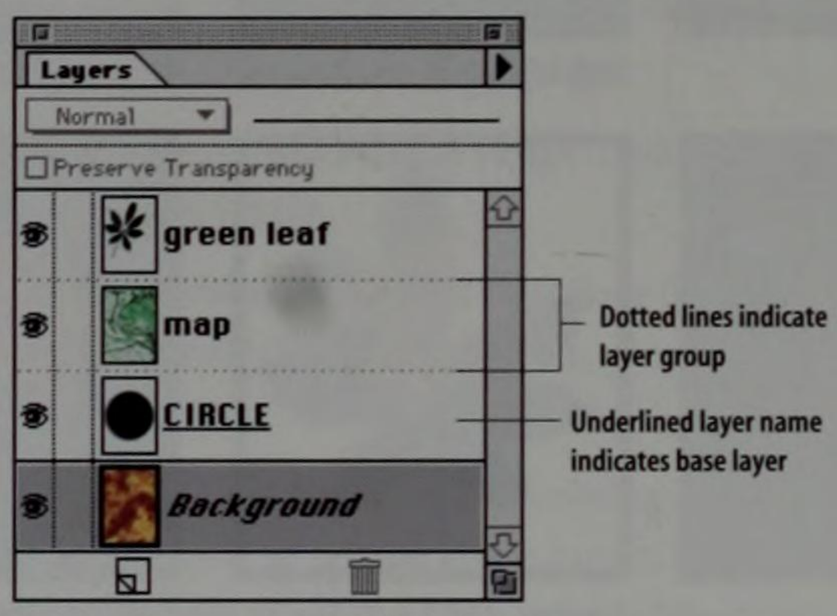
Hue

Color

Luminosity

Luminosity: 50%

The Layers palette indicates a clipping group by two solid lines between the layer names. Dotted lines separate the layers within the group. The name of the base layer is underlined in the Layers palette.



Leaf and map grouped with circle layer

See "Creating Collages with Clipping Groups" in *Adobe Photoshop Beyond the Basics* for an example of clipping groups.

To create a clipping group:

1 Choose one of two options:

- Hold down the Option key and position the cursor over the line dividing layers. The cursor turns into the grouping cursor. ⌘-Option-click a solid divider line to group a layer with the layer below it.
- Double-click the layer name in the Layers palette that you want to add to a group. The Layers Options dialog box appears. Select Group with Previous Layer and click OK.

This layer is grouped with the layer below it and assigned the opacity and mode attributes of the bottommost layer in the group.

2 Repeat step 1 for each layer that you want to add to the layer group.

To remove a layer from a clipping group:

Choose one of two options:

- Option-click a dotted divider line.
- Double-click the layer name in the Layers palette that you want to remove from a group. In the Layers Options dialog box, deselect Group with Previous Layer, and click OK.

Note: *Removing a layer from a group redefines it as the base layer for any other grouped layers above it.*

USING LAYER MASKS

A *layer mask* lets you try out different effects on a layer without actually affecting the pixels on the layer. When you are satisfied with the effect, you can apply the mask and make the changes permanent. You can save all layer masks with a layered document.

Adding a layer mask

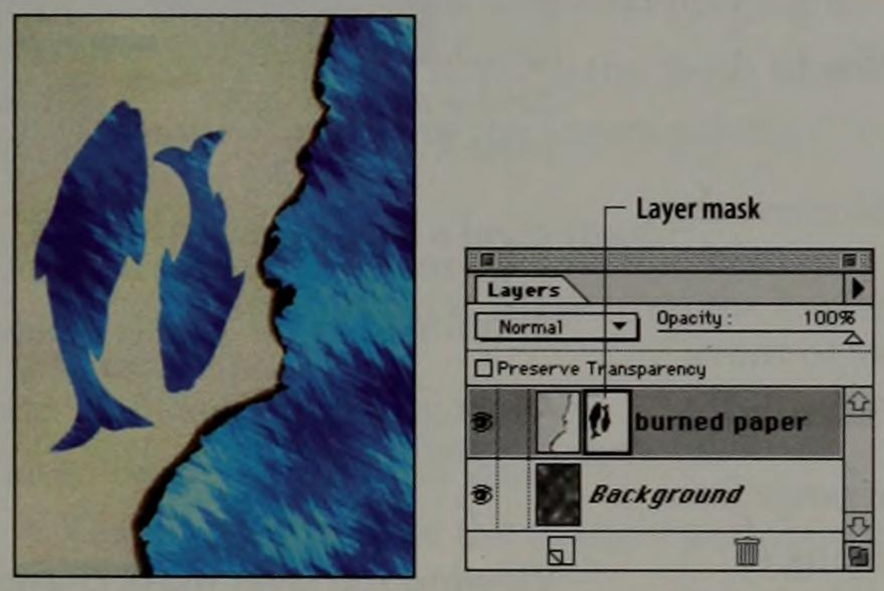
You can add one layer mask per layer. You can have as many layer masks as layers in your image.

To add a mask to a layer:

1 Select the layer in the Layers palette to which you want to add a mask.

2 Choose Add Layer Mask from the Layers palette menu.

A thumbnail appears to the right of the layer thumbnail in the Layers palette. The layer mask is selected, as indicated by the black outline. This thumbnail represents the temporary 8-bit grayscale (alpha) channel that Adobe Photoshop creates when you add a mask to a layer. The mask also appears as an alpha channel in the Channels palette. See Chapter 9, "Using Channels and Masks," for information on alpha channels.

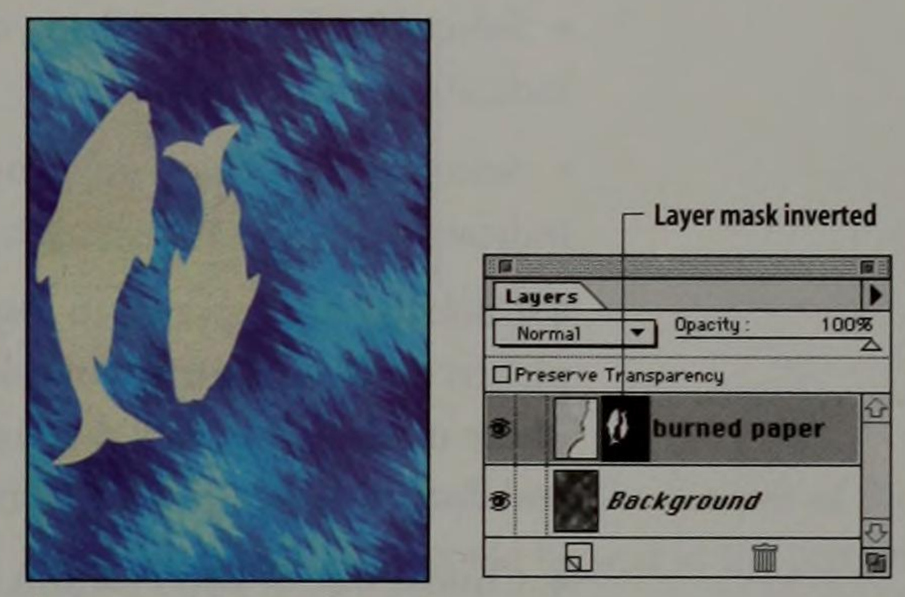


Layer mask

3 Edit the mask using any of the editing or painting tools. As you edit, the mask thumbnail displays the changes.

You can view the channel by making it active in the Channels palette.

Because the layer mask is an 8-bit grayscale channel, the foreground and background colors default to grayscale values when the mask is active. That means that painting the mask with black makes the areas of the layer transparent, and painting with white makes areas of the layer visible. Painting with gray makes areas partially visible. Inverting the contents of the layer mask reverses the masking effect as show in the example below. For more information on editing an alpha channel, see "Editing Channels" on page 156.



Layer mask inverted

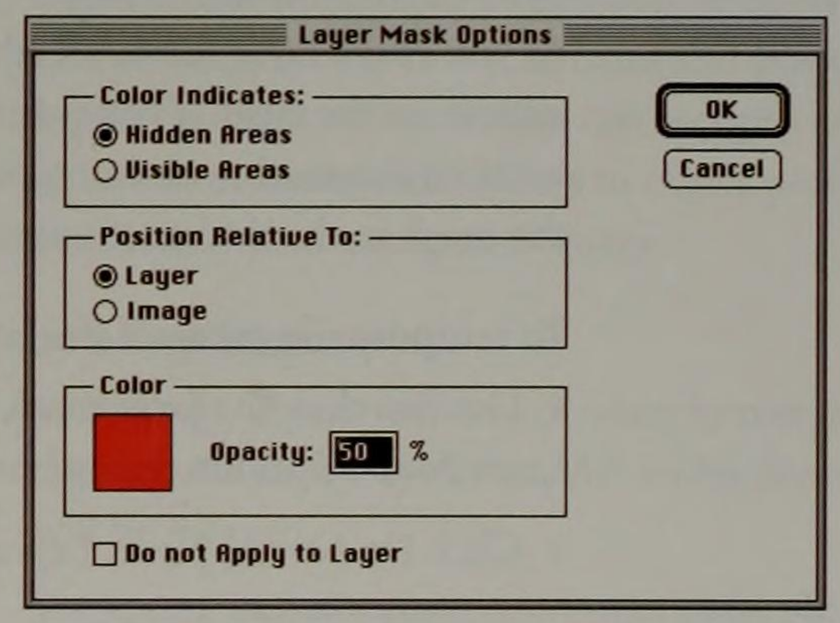
4 To edit the layer instead of the layer mask, make the layer active by clicking its thumbnail.

Changing layer mask options

The options for a layer mask include a setting for indicating hidden and visible areas, and the color and opacity of the mask.

To change the options for a layer mask:

1 Double-click the layer mask. The Layer Mask Options dialog box appears.



2 To change the settings for hidden and visible areas in the mask, choose one of two Color Indicates options:

- Select Hidden Areas when you want color to indicate protected areas.
- Select Visible Areas when you want color to indicate areas that will change.

3 Click the color swatch to display the color picker; then choose a new mask color. The color of the mask affects only the display of the mask and does not affect what is edited.

4 Choose one of two Position Relative to options:

- Select Layer if you want toe able to move the mask and the layer mask together.
- Select Image if you want to be able to move the layer and the layer mask independently.

5 Enter an Opacity value. Values can range from 0 percent to 100 percent. Use this setting to reveal more or less of the underlying image. The opacity of the mask affects only the display of the mask and does not affect what is edited.

Turning off the layer mask

As you edit a layer mask, all editing changes appear on the layer. If you want to view the layer without the mask, you can temporarily turn off the mask in the document window.

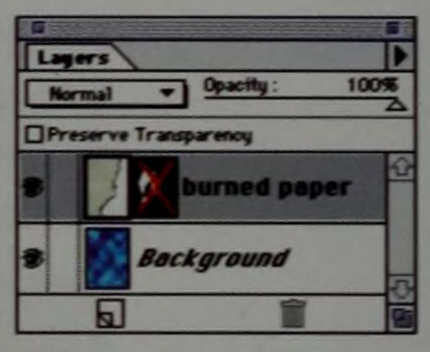
To temporarily turn off the layer mask:

1 Double-click the layer mask to display the Layer Mask Options dialog box.

2 Click Do Not Apply to Layer, and click OK.

A red X appears over the layer mask thumbnail in the Layers palette and the mask is not applied to the layer.

To view a layer without its mask . . .



click the mask icon in the Layers palette.

3 To redisplay the mask, click the layer mask thumbnail in the Layers palette.

Shortcut: *Hold down the ⌘ key and click the layer mask to turn off the layer mask.*

Viewing the layer mask channel

By default, the layer mask channel is not visible as you edit the layer mask. However, you can view and edit the mask channel without viewing the layer data.

To view the layer mask channel:

Use these techniques:

- Option-click the layer mask thumbnail to view only the mask. The eye icons in the Layers palette are dimmed because you are not seeing any of the layers. Click an eye icon to redisplay the layers.

• Shift-click the layer mask thumbnail to view the mask on top of the layer in the masking color set in the Layer Mask Options dialog box. Option-click the layer thumbnail to turn off the color display.

Applying and removing a layer mask

When you have finished experimenting with a layer mask, you can either apply the mask and make the changes permanent or remove the mask without applying changes.

To remove a layer mask without applying it:

Drag the layer mask to the Trash icon at the bottom of the Layers palette.

To apply and discard a layer mask:

1 Choose Remove Layer Mask from the Layers palette menu.

2 Select one of the following options:

• Click Apply to make the changes permanent.

• Click Discard to remove the mask without applying changes.

MANAGING LAYERED DOCUMENTS

Adding layers to a document increases the document size. (Transparent areas in a layer, however, do not add to the file size.) To conserve disk space, you can merge layers and flatten the layers in a document into one layer.

Keeping track of file sizes

Adobe Photoshop lets you monitor file size as you add, delete, and edit layers.

To track file size:

Check the values in the Document Sizes box at the lower left corner of the image.

The first (left) value indicates the file size of the final document as it would be sent to the printer (the flattened file). The second (right) value shows the amount of RAM the uncompressed file is using, including any layers and channels in the image.

Tip: *You can also track the use of your scratch disk space in Adobe Photoshop. See "Setting Scratch Disk Preferences" on page 13 for more information.*

Merging layers

Merging layers combines several layers into one and keeps the file size manageable, especially when you're working in large documents. When you've finalized the characteristics and positioning of the layer contents, you can merge a layer with one or more other layers to create partial versions of your composite image.

To merge layers:

1 Hide any layers you do not want to merge by clicking the layers' eye icons. All visible layers will be merged.

2 Choose Merge Layers from the Layers palette menu. The visible layers are merged into one layer.

If you merge layers into a document with a transparent background, the background remains transparent in the merged document.

Saving layered documents

If you plan to send files out for proofs, you may want to save two versions of the file—one version with all the layers and layer masks intact so that you can easily incorporate editing changes, and one flattened version to send to the printer.

The Save a Copy command in the File menu lets you save a flattened version of your file while keeping the original source file intact. The Save a Copy command saves in any of the file formats supported by Adobe Photoshop. Unlike Save As, the Save a Copy command allows you to keep working in the original file. The copy is saved to your disk but does not replace the active window.

For more information on saving documents and for a complete descriptions of the file formats, see "Saving Files" on page 48.

Flattening all layers

A flattened image contains just the background and no layers, and thus greatly reduces the file size. You can save a flattened version of the file when you have finished creating the composite image. In most cases, you won't want to flatten a file until you are absolutely sure that you no longer want to change individual layers.

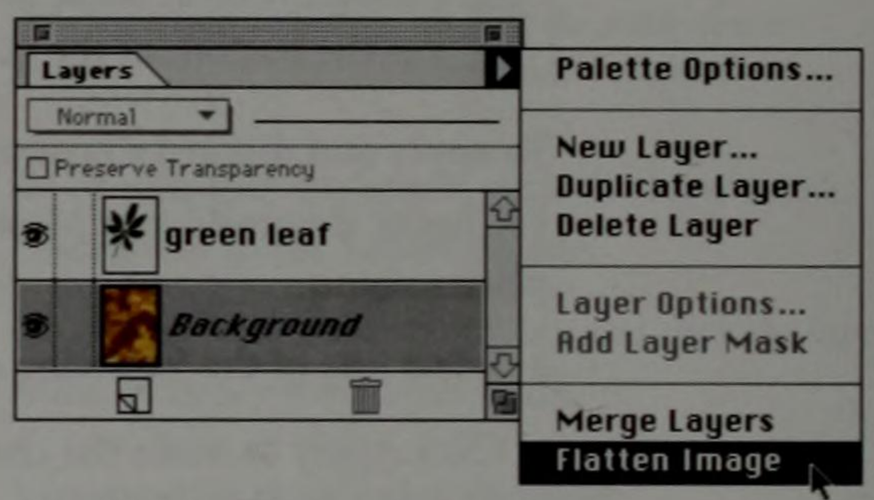
Note that converting a document from one mode to another automatically flattens the file. Be sure to save a copy of your file that includes all layers if you want to edit the image after the conversion.

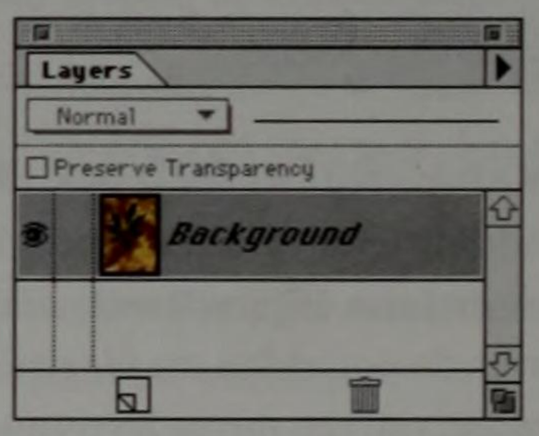
To flatten an image:

1 Hide any layers you do not want to merge by clicking the layers' eye icons. All visible layers will be merged.

In a flattened image, all the visible layers are merged into the background layer. Hidden layers are discarded, and the final image contains only a background. If the background is transparent, the transparent areas are filled with white.

2 Choose Flatten Image from the Layers palette menu. The layers are flattened.





Palette display after flattening image

Chapter

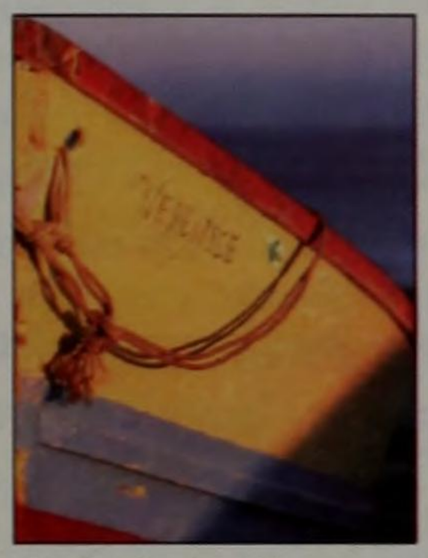
9

USING MASKS AND CHANNELS

Chapter 9: Using Channels and Masks

Adobe Photoshop uses channels in two ways: to store color information about an image and to store selections. Color information channels are automatically created when you open a new document. The number of color information channels depends on the mode you use for the image. See "About Channels and Image Types" on page 217 for more information about the color channels created by Adobe Photoshop.

You can also create additional channels in an Adobe Photoshop document (called *alpha channels*). You use alpha channels to create and store masks and to create new images using channel Calculation commands. Masks enable you to isolate and protect parts of an image while you apply color changes, filters, or other effects to the rest of the image. Channel calculations enable you to overlay the pixel values in two channels and combine them using a variety of methods.



Composite (RGB)

Red

Green

Blue

You can view any combination of the individual channels in the image.

WORKING WITH CHANNELS

Adobe Photoshop automatically creates the color information channels based on the mode you choose when you create a new image. For example, every RGB image has three default channels, a red channel to store red information, a green channel to store green information, and a blue channel to store blue information. The document also contains a composite channel which displays all the color information.

The file size required for an alpha channel depends on the pixel information in the channel. Adding a duplicate of a color channel to an RGB image increases the file size by a third; adding a duplicate of a color channel to a CMYK image increases the file size by a fourth. Alpha channels used as masks, however, may require far less storage space, because Adobe Photoshop compresses the information in the channel when the file is saved. To find out the size of file with its alpha channels, save the file and look at the file size on the disk.

USING THE CHANNELS PALETTE

When working with channels, you use the Channels palette to create, duplicate, and delete channels, to set channel options, to split an image into channels, and to merge channels into a composite image. The Channels palette also lets you hide and show individual channels.

To display the Channels palette:

Choose Show Channels from the Window menu.

The Channels palette lists all channels in the image. RGB, CMYK, and Lab images also include a composite channel, which is listed first. The individual color channels appear below the composite channel. A thumbnail of the channel contents appears to the left of the channel name. This thumbnail is automatically updated as you edit the channel. Use the scroll bars or resize the palette to see additional channels.

To select a channel for editing:

Click the channel name. Shift-click to select (or deselect) multiple channels. The names of all selected channels are highlighted. These are the active, or *target*, channels.

Note: *If you're working with a target layer, you can edit subsets of the composite channel, but you can't edit individual color information channels and alpha channels at the same time. Color information channels (such as the red, blue, and green channels in an RGB image) cannot be edited in their transparent areas.*

SHOWING AND HIDING CHANNELS

When a channel is visible, an eye icon appears in the left column of the Channels palette. By viewing a mask channel and the composite channel together, you can see how any changes you make in the mask channel affect the image.

To show or hide a channel:

Click the column at the left of the Channels palette to show or hide individual channels. (The composite channel is displayed whenever all the color channels are visible.)

Shortcut: *Drag through the column in the Channels palette to show or hide multiple channels.*

By default, the channels are displayed in grayscale. In RGB, CMYK, or Lab images, you can view the individual channels in color (in Lab images, only the *a* and *b* channels appear in color). If more than one channel is visible, the channels always appear in color.

To see the individual channels in color:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Click the Color Channels in Color option.

HIDING AND RESIZING CHANNEL THUMBNAILS

You can change the size of or turn off the thumbnails for each channel. Using thumbnails is the most convenient way of tracking channel contents; however, turning off the display of thumbnails can improve performance. Using a smaller thumbnail size reduces the space required by the Channels palette and can be helpful when you're working on smaller monitors.

To change the size of channel thumbnails:

1 Choose Palette Options from the Channels palette menu.

2 Click a size, or click None to turn off the display of thumbnails; then click OK.

DUPLICATING CHANNELS

You can duplicate any channel to the same document, to a new document, or to any other open document. You might want to duplicate a channel in the same document to keep a backup if you're going to perform manipulations on a channel. You may want to duplicate channels to a new document to keep a library of selections that you can load into the current document one at a time. This helps you keep the size of the file smaller to improve performance.

To duplicate a channel:

1 Select the target channel in the Channels palette.

2 Choose Duplicate Channel from the Channels palette menu. The Duplicate Channel dialog box appears.

3 Enter a name for the duplicate channel, and choose a destination from the menu.

4 Choose from the following options:

- If you are copying the channel to a new document, specify a name for the new document. The New option creates a single-channel grayscale document.
- Click Invert to invert the pixels in the duplicate channel before they are placed in the destination channel. This transposes the selected and masked areas in the channel.

5 Click OK.

The channel appears in the destination document.

Shortcut: *You can also duplicate a channel by dragging the channel from the Channels palette into its original document window, or by dragging the channel in the palette to the New Channel icon at the bottom of the palette. To duplicate the channel in another document, drag the channel to any other open document window.*

SPLITTING CHANNELS INTO SEPARATE DOCUMENTS

You can split the various channels that make up an image into separate documents using the Split Channels command in the Channels palette menu. When you choose Split Channels, Adobe Photoshop places each channel into a separate document and closes the original document. Each document appears in an open window on the desktop (the channel name appears in the title bar of the window). Any changes you've made since you last saved are reflected in the new documents but are lost in the original document.

Note: *You can only split flattened documents.* *See "Flattening All Layers" on page 146 for more information.*

MERGING CHANNELS

You can combine channels to form a single image. For example, some grayscale scanners allow you to scan a color image through a red filter, a green filter, and a blue filter to generate red, green, and blue documents. Merging allows you to combine the channels of a color image that was scanned in this way and save the image as a single, color document.

The images you want to merge must be the same size (in pixels) and must be open. In addition, the image type you are merging channels into cannot contain more than the number of split channels you have open. For example, you can't merge the split channels from an RGB image into a CMYK image, because a CMYK image requires four channels and an RGB image contains only three channels.

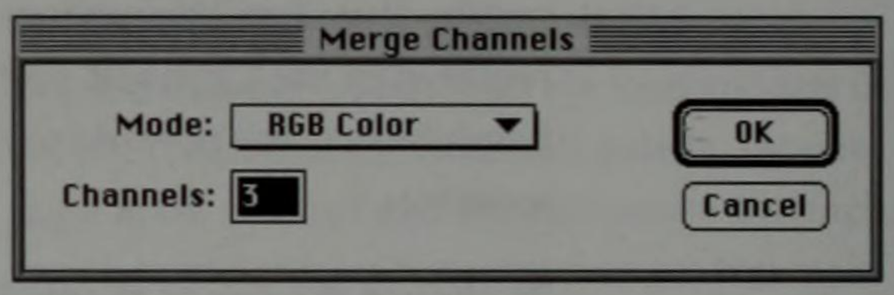
Note: *If you are working with DCS files that have accidently lost their links (and so cannot be opened, placed, or printed), open the channel files and merge them into a CMYK document. Then resave the file as a DCS EPS file.*

To merge channels:

1 Open the grayscale images that contain the channels you want to merge.

2 Make one of the channel documents active.

3 Choose Merge Channels from the Channels palette menu. The Merge Channels dialog box appears.



4 Choose the image type you want to create from the Mode menu.

Image types that aren't available are dimmed. The number of channels appropriate for the selected image type appears in the Channels text box.

5 If necessary, enter a number in the Channels text box.

If you enter a number that is incompatible with the selected image type, the Multichannel image type is automatically selected. This creates a grayscale image, and all color information is lost.

6 Click OK. The Merge RGB Channels dialog box appears.

7 For each channel, choose an active channel document from the menu.

If you change your mind and want to select a different image type, click the Mode button to return to the Merge Channels dialog box.

8 When you have finished selecting the channels, click OK. If you are merging into a multichannel image, click Next, and repeat the selection process for each channel in the image.

Adobe Photoshop merges the selected channels into a new image of the specified type and closes the documents containing the channels that were merged. The new image appears in an untitled document window.

USING ALPHA CHANNELS

In addition to working with the default channels that make up an image, you can create new channels, called *alpha channels*, to store and edit selections. Each image can have up to 24 channels, including the default channels created by Adobe Photoshop and the alpha channels you create. You can add and delete channels, and you can specify a name, color, mask protection option, and opacity for each channel. All new channels have the same dimensions and number of pixels as the original image.

Using selections as masks

You use a mask to isolate an area that you want to protect from change. For example, you might create a mask that isolates a starfish from the surrounding sand, so you can change the color of the sand. Conversely, you might use a mask to protect the sand while you change the color of the starfish. You can also create a semitransparent mask that enables you to partially affect an area of an image.

Color changed on starfish; background protected from change

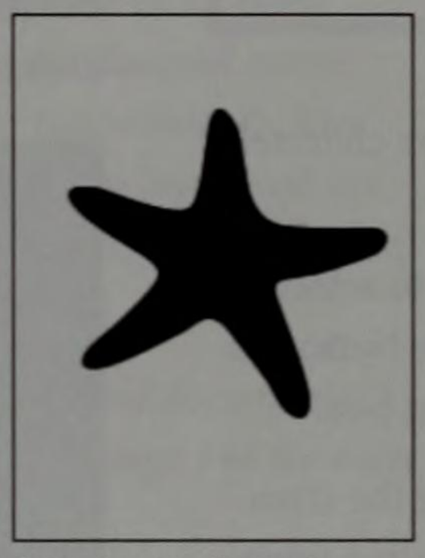
Color changed on background; starfish protected from change

Adobe Photoshop provides three ways to create masks:

- Use Quick Mask mode to create and view a temporary mask for an image. Temporary masks are useful when you don't want to save the mask for later use.
- Use alpha channels to save and load selections to be used as masks.
- Use layer masks to create masks for individual layers. For more information about layer masks, see "Using Layer Masks" on page 142.

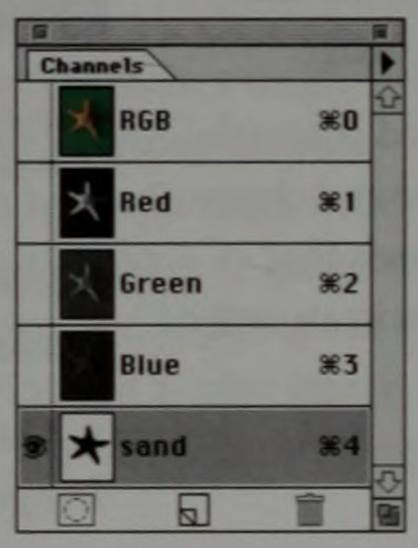
You can edit alpha channels using the painting and editing tools. For example you can create a gradient fill in a blank channel and then use the gradient fill as a mask. More often, however, you edit a stored selection to use it as a mask. For example, you might use a channel to touch up the edges of a mask with the painting tools or to make a mask semitransparent.

Selection



Selection in channel

Color changes applied



Channels palette

Storing selections in alpha channels makes them permanent, so that they can be used again in the same document or in a different document. You can also use the Calculation commands to perform operations on two or more channels. Channel operations are often the only way to produce the very precise selections masks needed for special situations. For more examples of how you can use channels with your artwork, see *Beyond the Basics*.

Note: *To keep track of the active channel or channels, it's a good idea to keep your Channels palette open on your desktop as you create and edit channels. You should also keep your Layers palette open to track your active layer.*

USING QUICK MASK MODE

Quick Mask mode enables you to view a grayscale mask and the image simultaneously. Color is used to differentiate the protected and unprotected areas. Quick Mask mode is useful for creating and editing temporary masks. You start with a selection and then add to or subtract from it to make the mask. Once you leave Quick Mask mode, the unprotected areas become a selection.

To create a Quick Mask:

1 Select the part of the image you want to change.

2 Click the Quick Mask mode control in the toolbox.

Selected area

Quick Mask mode applied

A red overlay (similar to a piece of rubylith) covers all of the image except the selected area (the unprotected area). By default, Quick Mask mode colors the protected area using a red, 50-percent opaque overlay.

When you create a Quick Mask, Adobe Photoshop adds a temporary Quick Mask channel to the Channels palette to indicate that you are working in Quick Mask mode; however, you do all mask editing in the document window.

3 To edit the mask, select a tool from the toolbox, and paint in the document window.

By default the colored (masked) area is protected from editing. Painting with black increases the masked area and subtracts from the selection, so that more of the image is protected. Painting with white eliminates masked areas and adds to the selection, so that more of the image can be edited. Painting with gray or another color creates a semitransparent mask.

Quick Mask

Editing with paintbrush tool

4 Click the standard mode tool to return to your original image. The unprotected area appears as a selection border.

5 Apply the changes to the image. The changes affect only the selected area.

Edited mask

Color changes applied

6 To remove the Quick Mask, deselect the selection.

To change the Quick Mask options:

1 Double-click the Quick Mask mode control in the toolbox. The Quick Mask Options dialog box appears.

2 Select a Color Indicates option:

- The Masked Areas option, the default option, colors all of the image except the selection. All colored areas are protected from editing.
- The Selected Areas option colors only the selection. All colored areas can be edited.

The Quick Mask icon in the toolbox indicates which option is in use. When the colored areas are protected, the icon appears as a white circle on a gray background. When the colored areas are unprotected, the icon appears as a gray circle on a white background.

The effect of editing the mask with the painting tools is reversed when the Selected Areas option is selected. In this case, painting with black (which paints with the mask color) eliminates masked areas and adds to the selection, and painting with white adds to the masked area and subtracts from the selection.

Shortcut: *Option-click the Quick Mask mode control to toggle between the Masked Areas and Selected Areas options.*

3 To choose a different color for the mask, click the color swatch to display the color picker; then choose a new color.

4 Enter an Opacity value for the mask color. Use this setting to change the appearance of the mask to reveal more or less of the underlying image. This setting has no effect on the opacity of the mask itself.

Quick Mask opacity: 50%

Quick Mask opacity: 90%

CREATING A NEW CHANNEL

You create a new channel when you want to create a mask in an empty channel. See the next section, "Saving a Selection in a Channel," for instructions on how to save an existing selection to a new channel.

To create a new channel:

1 Choose New Channel from the palette menu, or click the new channel icon at the bottom of the palette. The Channel Options dialog box appears.

2 Type a name for the channel. By default, channels are assigned numbers according to the order in which they're created.

3 Select display options for the channel. Channel options are identical to Quick Mask options. See the previous section for complete information on these options:

4 Click OK.

A new channel appears at the bottom of the Channels palette and is the only visible channel. New channels are 8-bit grayscale channels.

If Masked Areas was selected in the Channel Options dialog box, the channel has a black background and painting in the channel with black adds to the masked area. If Selected Areas was selected in the Channel Options dialog box, the channel has a white background and painting in the channel with black eliminates masked areas. In both cases, painting with white reverses the effect; painting with gray creates a semi-transparent mask.

SAVING A SELECTION IN A CHANNEL

You don't need to create a new channel before saving a selection. Adobe Photoshop automatically creates a new channel when you save a selection.

To save a selection in a channel:

1 Select the area or areas of the image that you want to isolate.

Selected area

2 Choose Save Selection from the Select menu. The Save Selection dialog box appears.

3 Choose a destination document for the selection from the Document menu.

By default, the selection is placed in a channel in your active document. You can choose to save the selection to a channel in any other open document, or to a new document.

4 Choose a destination channel for the selection.

By default, the selection is saved in a new channel. You can choose to save the selection to any existing channel in the selected document or to a layer mask.

5 If you're saving the selection to an existing channel, select one of the following options to indicate how the selections should be combined:

- Select New Channel to replace the current selection in the channel.
- Select Add to Channel to add the selection in the image to the current channel contents.
- Select Subtract from Channel to delete the selection from the channel.
- Select Intersect with Channel to keep the areas in the new selection that intersect with the channel contents.

6 Click OK.

A new channel appears in the Channels palette.

All new channels are assigned a number according to the order in which they are created. You can name channels and change the channel color and opacity options. See "Creating a New Channel" on page 152 for information on these options.

Shortcuts: *To save a selection to a new channel click the Selection icon at the bottom of the Channels palette; to open the Channel Options dialog box double-click the New Channel icon. To save a selection to an existing channel, drag the Selection icon over an existing alpha channel in the Channels palette. Hold down*

the Shift key as you drag to add the selection to an existing selection; hold down the ⌘ key as you drag to subtract the selection from an existing selection; hold down the Shift and ⌘ keys as you drag to select the intersection of the new and existing selections.

EDITING CHANNELS

To see the saved selection, select the channel in the Channels palette. The channel displays the saved selection as a grayscale representation.

Saved selection in alpha channel

If the Masked Areas option is selected in the Channel Options dialog box, unselected areas in a channel are opaque (black), and selected areas are transparent (white). Gray areas represent any areas within a feather radius or an anti-aliased range; these areas are only partially affected by modifications to the image. Painting with black decreases the selection so that more area is protected by the mask. Painting with white adds to the selected area so less area is protected by the mask. Painting with gray creates a semitransparent mask.

If the Selected Areas option is selected in the Channel Options dialog box, unselected areas in the channel are transparent (white) and selected areas are opaque (black). Editing with the paint tools is reversed; that is, painting with black adds to the selection so more area is unprotected, and painting with white subtracts from the selection so less area is unprotected.

LOADING A SELECTION INTO AN IMAGE

When you have finished modifying the alpha channel, you load it into the image to use the selection as a mask while you apply color or effects changes.

To use a saved selection as a mask:

1 Choose Load Selection from the Select menu. The Load Selection dialog box appears.

The active document name appears in the Document menu.

2 Choose the channel containing the selection you want to use as a mask.

3 Click Invert if you want to reverse the contents of the channel as it is loaded.

4 If there is already a selection in the image, indicate how the new selections should be combined.

See Step 5 of "Saving a Selection in a Channel" on page 155 for information on these options.

5 Click OK to load the selection.

Shortcuts: *You can also load a selection back onto an image by Option-clicking the channel in the Channels palette or by dragging the channel to the Selection icon at the bottom of the Channels palette. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to add the selection to an existing selection; hold down the ⌘ key as you drag to subtract the selection from an existing selection; hold down the Option and ⌘ keys as you drag to select the intersection of the new and existing selections.*

To load a selection from a document other than the original:

1 Make sure both documents are open on the desktop.

Important: *The documents must have the exact same dimensions and resolution.*

2 Make the destination document the active document, and choose Load Selection from the Select menu. The Load Selection dialog box appears.

3 Select the source document from the Document menu.

4 Choose the channel containing the selection you want to use as a mask.

5 Click Invert if you want to reverse the contents of the channel as it is loaded.

6 If there is already a selection in the destination document, indicate how the selections should be combined.

See step 5 of "Saving a Selection in a Channel" on page 155 for information on these options.

7 Click OK to load the selection.

CHANGING CHANNEL OPTIONS

You can rename and change the other characteristics of any channel that you create. You can't change the name or characteristics of the channels Adobe Photoshop automatically creates for images, such as the red, green, and blue channels for an RGB image.

To set options for a channel:

1 Select the target channel in the Channels palette, and choose Channel Options from the palette menu (or double-click the channel name).

2 Choose a new masking, color area, or opacity. See "Creating a New Channel" on page 154 for information on using these options.

CHANGING THE ORDER OF CHANNELS

When you have selections stored in several alpha channels in an image, you might want to change the order of the channels to view the channels more easily. You can change the order of any alpha channels you add to an image; however, the color information channels created by Adobe Photoshop always appear at the top of the Channels palette.

To change the order of channels:

Drag the channel you want to move up or down in the Channels palette.

SAVING CHANNELS

When you save a document in the Adobe Photoshop 3.0, Adobe Photoshop 2.0, TIFF, or Raw formats, any existing alpha channels are saved automatically with the document. Saving in all other formats discards the channel information.

Note: *To minimize file size, Adobe Photoshop automatically compresses alpha channels using a non-lossy compression scheme when you save a file.*

DELETING CHANNELS

Depending on the complexity of the information they contain, alpha channels can substantially increase the disk space required for an image. If you have a shortage of disk space, you may want to delete any channels you no longer need before saving the document.

To delete a channel:

1 Select the target channel in the Channels palette.

2 Choose Delete Channel from the palette menu.

Shortcut: *You can also delete a channel by dragging it from the Channels palette to the Trash icon at the bottom of the palette.*

COPYING CHANNELS FROM ONE DOCUMENT TO ANOTHER

To copy a channel to another Adobe Photoshop document, you drag the channel from the Channels palette in the source document to the document window of the destination document.

To copy a channel to another document:

1 Open the two documents.

2 Select the channel you want to copy in the source document's Channels palette.

3 Drag the channel from the Channels palette into the destination document window.

COPYING A CHANNEL TO A 32-BIT VIDEO CARD

The Channels palette menu also includes a Video Alpha command for copying a channel into the extra 8 bits on a 32-bit video card. You can use this command to control image transparency when mixing an Adobe Photoshop image with a video source.

Note: *This feature applies only to video cards that use the alpha channel, such as the Truevision NuVista cards and the RasterOps 364 card.*

To copy a channel to a video card:

1 Display the composite color image, and add a new channel.

2 Choose Video Alpha from the Channels palette menu. The Video Alpha dialog box appears.

3 Choose a channel name from the menu and then click OK.

USING THE CHANNEL CALCULATION COMMANDS

You can perform a number of operations on the channels in an image. The Calculation commands perform mathematical operations on the corresponding pixels of two channels—that is, the pixels that correspond to the same location on the image.

Two concepts are fundamental to understanding how the Calculation commands works. The first is that each pixel in a channel is assigned a value from 0 (off, or black) to 255 (on, or white). When you use the Calculation commands, these values are manipulated to produce the resulting color.

The second concept important to understanding the Calculation commands is that these commands work by overlaying the pixels in two or more channels. For this reason, the documents you use for calculations *must have exactly the same size and resolution.*

When working with composite images, Adobe Photoshop calculates the pixel values in each set of color channels, and then combines them in a single channel.

The Image menu contains three Calculation commands:

- The Duplicate command makes an exact copy of the active document.
- The Apply Image command applies channel information from another document to the active document.
- The Calculations command performs operations on two channels.

Duplicating images

Duplicating an image is a useful way to get a complete copy of the image (including all layers, layer masks, and channels). This is an easy way to experiment with different effects and then compare the results to the original without having to use the Save a Copy command.

Duplicating is also useful when you want to use the same image with the Calculations command.

To duplicate an image:

1 Open the image you want to duplicate.

2 Choose Duplicate from the Image menu. The Duplicate Image dialog box appears.

3 Enter a name for the image.

4 Click Merged Layers Only if want a duplicate of the image without the layers.

This option produces a single layer document. If the document you're duplicating has no background or a transparent background, the new image maintains its transparent areas. See "Merging Layers" on page 145 and "Flattening All Layers" on page 146 for more information on merging layers.

Applying channel calculations to the active document

The Apply Image command lets you perform channel calculations using the channel information from another document as your source information. The results of the calculations are applied to the current target layer in the active document.

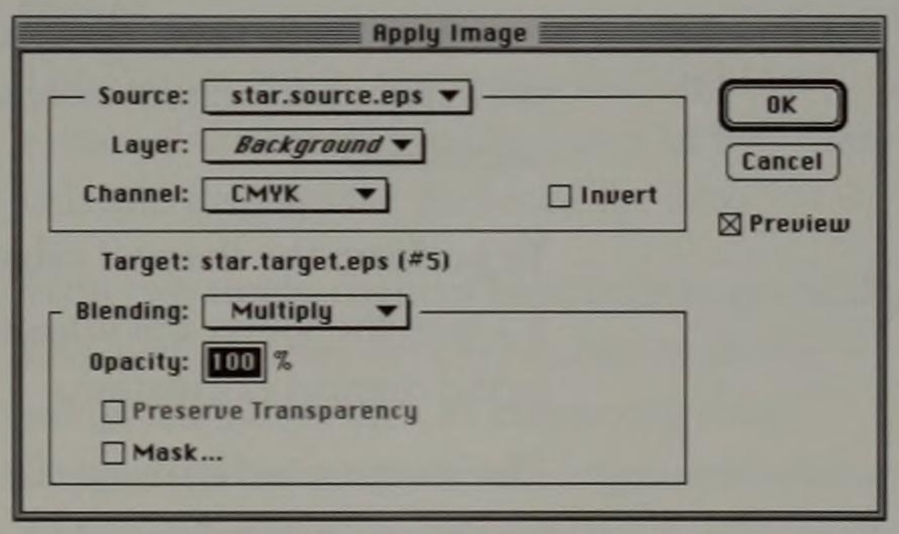
To use the Apply Image command:

1 Open the source document that will be used in the channel calculations (the *source* document) and the document you want to apply the calculations to (the *target,* or *result,* document).

2 Make your result document the active document window. The composite channel (or an individual color channel) must be the target channel. Click the layer in the Layers palette that you want to use in the calculations.

The images must have exactly the same dimensions and resolution. If these attributes are not the same, the image names will not appear in the Source menus in the Apply Image dialog box.

3 Choose Apply Image from the Image menu. The Apply Image dialog box appears. Select Preview if you want to preview the calculation results in the document window.



The name of the result (or target) document and target layer appear above the Blending section of the dialog box.

4 Select the source document from the Source menu and the source layer from the Layers menu. To use all the layers in the source document, select the Merged option.

5 Select the source channel from the Channel menu. Select Invert to use the reverse of the channel contents in the calculation.

6 Choose the calculation you want to perform from the Blending menu.

These options perform the same operations as the modes in the Options palette and the modes in the Layers palette. A brief description of these options appears at the end of this chapter.

7 Choose an opacity to indicate the strength of the effect.

8 Select Preserve Transparency to apply the calculation results only to opaque areas in the result layer.

9 Select Mask to indicate a channel you want to use as a grayscale mask.

10 Click OK to perform the calculation.

Calculating using multiple source documents

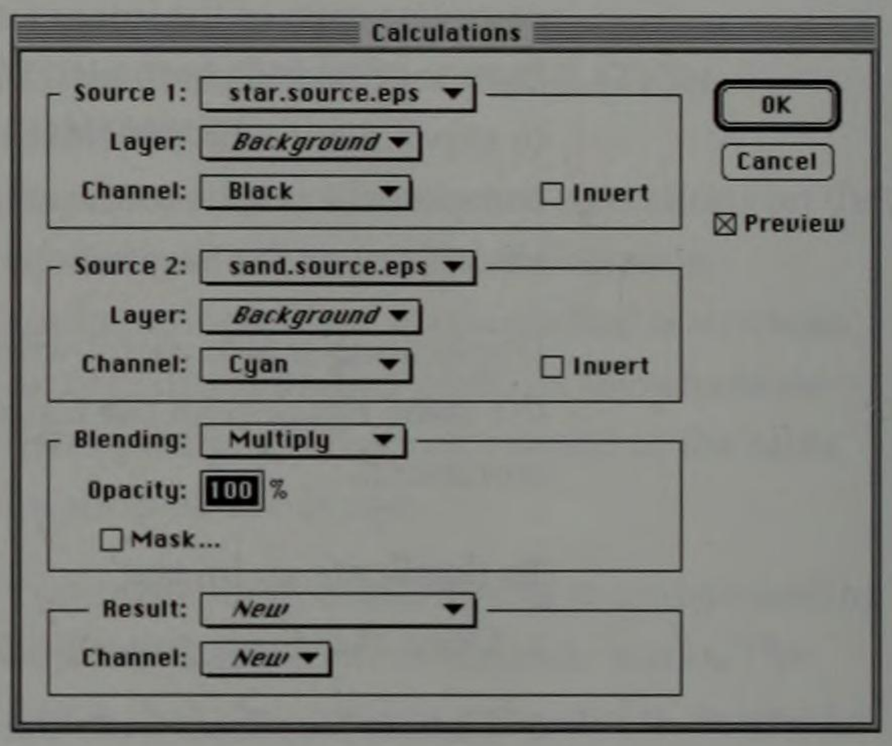
The Calculations command lets you perform channel calculation using two source documents and then apply the results to a new channel in either document or create a new result document.

To perform the channel calculations:

1 Open the source documents that will be used in the channel calculations.

The images must have exactly the same size and resolution. If these attributes are not the same, the image names will not appear in the Source or Result menus in the Calculations dialog box.

2 Choose Calculations from the Image menu. The Calculations dialog box appears. Select Preview if you want to preview the calculation results in the document window.



3 Select the first source document, layer, and channel from the menus in the Source 1 section of the dialog box.

To use all the layers in the source document, select the Merged option in the Layers menu. Select Invert to use the reverse of the channel contents in the calculation. Choose Luminosity to get the same effect as you would if you converted the document to a grayscale image.

4 Select the second source document, layer, and channel from the menus in the Source 2 section of the dialog box.

5 Choose the calculation you want to perform from the Blending menu.

These option perform the same operations as the modes in the Options palette and the modes in the Layers palette. A brief description of these options appears at the end of this chapter.

6 Choose an opacity to indicate the strength of the effect.

7 Select Mask to use a channel as a grayscale mask.

8 Choose a result document from the Result menu. This document can be either of the open documents or a new document.

9 Choose the channel that you want to use for the results of the calculations. You can place the results in a specific channel or in a selection.

Warning: *If you assign the results of a channel calculation to an existing channel, the channel calculation results will overwrite the pixels in the existing channel.*

10 Click OK to perform the calculation.

Following is a brief description of the Calculation Blending options. See the chart on page 141 for examples of these operations.

Normal

The Normal option combines the results of the pixel values in each channel.

Multiply

The Multiply option multiplies the pixel values in the two channels and divides the result by 255. The resulting color is always a darker color. The effect of the Multiply command is analogous to superimposing two positive transparencies on a light table.

Screen

The Screen option multiplies the inverse brightness values of the pixels in both channels. The resulting color is always a lighter color. The effect of the Screen option is analogous to superimposing two film negatives of two source images, and printing the result on photographic paper.

Overlay

The Overlay option performs a combination of multiplying and screening. Colors are overlaid on the existing pixels but the highlights and shadows are maintained. The two channel pixels are mixed to reflect the lightness or darkness of the original color.

Soft Light

The Soft Light option multiplies or screens the pixels in the two channels. The Soft Light option gives the effect of shining a diffused spotlight on the image.

Hard Light

The Hard Light option multiplies or screens the pixels in the two channels. The Hard Light option gives the effect of shining a harsh spotlight on the image.

Darker

The Darker option compares the brightness values of the corresponding pixels in two channels and displays the darker of the two.

With two single-channel files, such as grayscale files, using Darker simply retains the darker values from both files. In composite color images, Darker compares the brightness value in each set of color channels and then combines the darker values into one channel. In this case, the colors in the resulting image may be very different from the colors in either source channel.

Lighter

The Lighter option compares the brightness values of the corresponding pixels in two channels and displays the lighter of the two. With two singe-channel files, such as grayscale files, using Lighter simply retains the lighter values from both files. In composite color images, Lighter compares the brightness value in each set of

color channels and then combines the lighter values into one channel. In this case, the colors in the resulting image may be very different from the colors in either source channel.

Add

The Add option adds the pixel values in two channels. This is a good way to combine non-overlapping images in two channels.

Because higher pixel values represent lighter colors, adding channels with overlapping pixels lightens the image. Black areas in both channels remain black (0 + 0 = 0). White in either channel results in white (255 + any value = 255 or greater).

The Add option divides the sum of the pixel values by the Scale amount and then adds the Offset value to the sum. For example, if you wanted to find the average of the pixels in two channels, you would add them, divide by 2, and enter no Offset value.

The Scale factor may be any number between 1.000 and 2.000. Entering a higher Scale value darkens the image.

The Offset value lets you lighten or darken the pixels in the destination channel by any brightness value between + 255 and –255. Entering a negative Offset value darkens the image even more. Entering a positive Offset value lightens the image.

Subtract

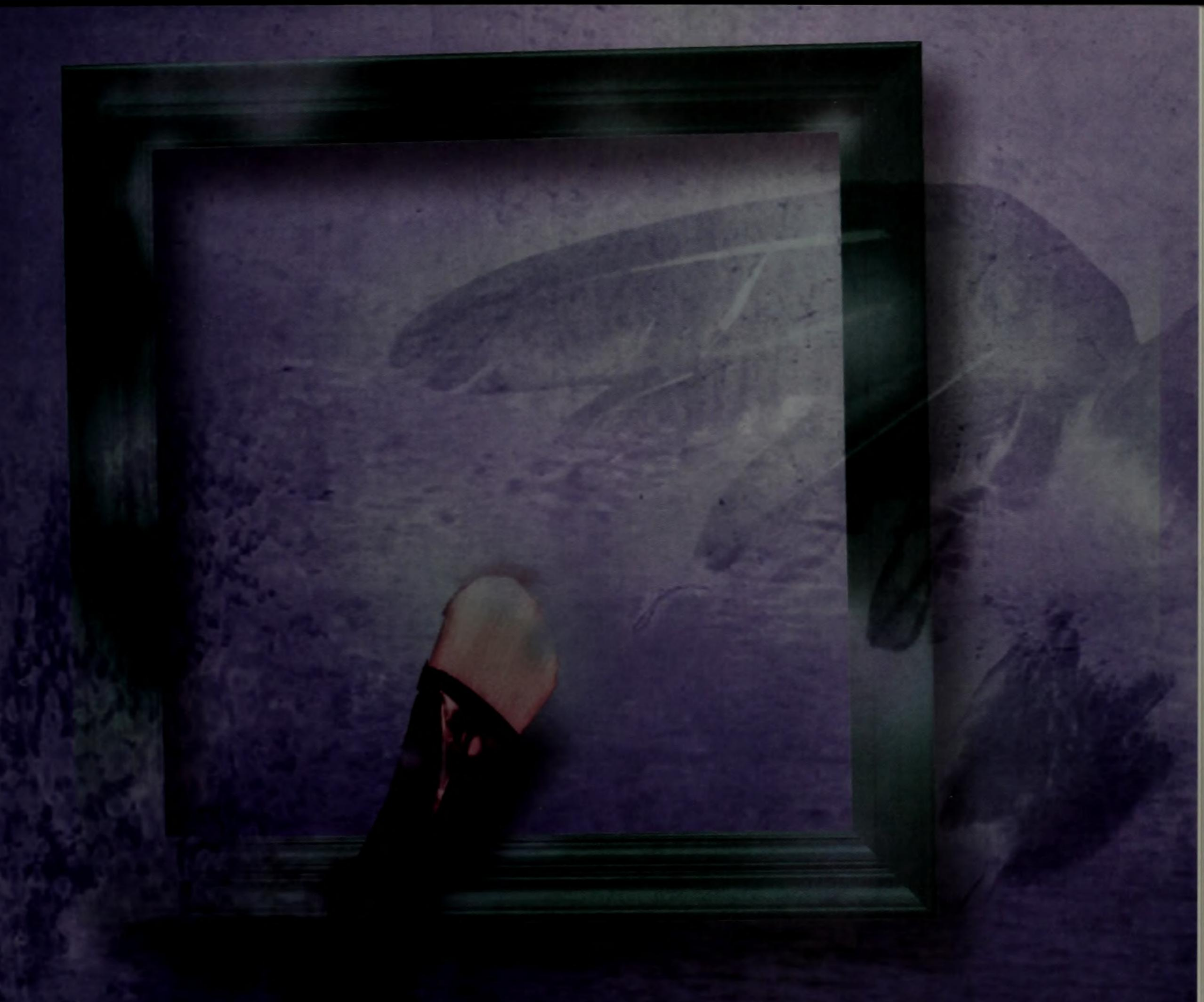
The Subtract option subtracts the pixel values in the source channel from the corresponding pixels in the target channel. As with the Add option, the result is then divided by Scale factor and added to the Offset value.

The Scale factor may be any number between 1.000 and 2.000. The Offset value lets you lighten or darken the pixels in the destination channel by any brightness value between + 255 and –255.

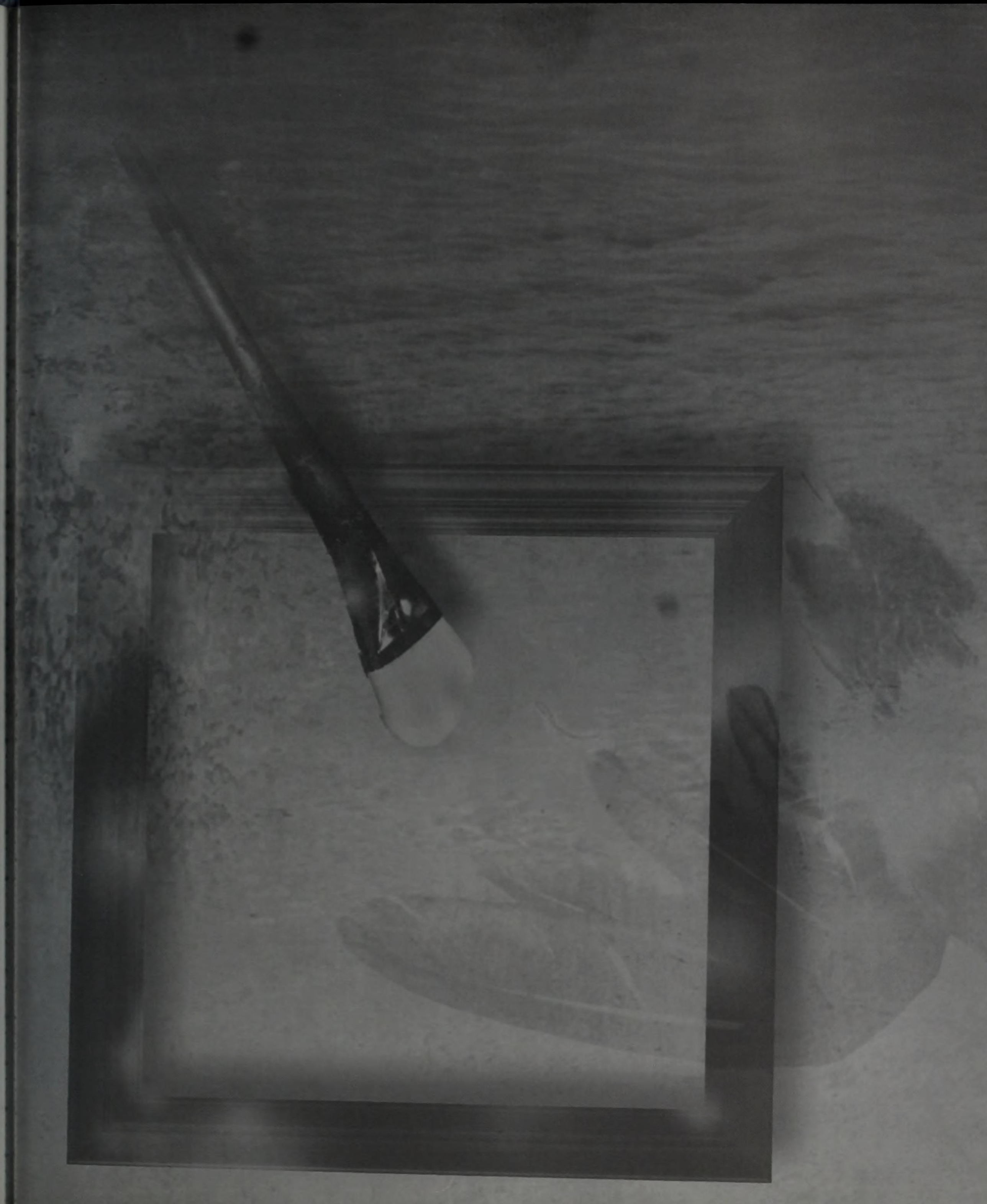
Difference

The Difference option subtracts the brightness value of the pixels and displays the absolute value of the result in the new channel.

Difference is useful for dividing an image into components. For example, you can use this command to compare two frames, taken from a video frame grabber, that have the same background but contain different foreground elements. The light areas in the resulting channel show the areas in the frames where changes occurred.



USING FILTERS



Chapter 10: Using Filters

The filters that are built into Adobe Photoshop let you apply special effects to your images. Using the filters that come with Adobe Photoshop, you can apply an impressionistic or mosaic effect, add or reduce *noise* (pixels with randomly distributed color values), apply lighting effects, distort images, and produce many other interesting visual effects. You can also create your own effects using the Custom filter and then save and reuse these unique filters for other images.

Adobe Photoshop also supports plug-in filters developed by non-Adobe software developers. See *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started* for information on installing these plug-in modules. Once installed, plug-in filters appear in the Filter menu and work the same as built-in filters. This open architecture allows third-party developers to create filters that can be used from within Adobe Photoshop. If you are interested in creating Adobe Photoshop-compatible plug-in modules, please contact Adobe Systems Technical Support.

For a brief description of each plug-in filter, choose About Plug-in from the Apple menu; then choose the filter from the submenu. Click to close the description box.

USING FILTERS

To use a filter, choose the appropriate submenu command from the Filter menu. The last filter chosen appears at the top of the menu.

Note: *Filters cannot be applied to bitmapped or indexed color images.*

To apply a filter:

1 Select the part of the image to which you want to apply a filter. If you don't make a selection, the filter is applied to the entire image.

2 Choose a filter from the submenus in the Filter menu. In some cases, a dialog box appears.

3 If necessary, enter values in the dialog box, and click OK. For information on dialog box options, see the explanations of individual filters later in this chapter.

When a filter takes a while to be applied, Adobe Photoshop displays a progress box so that you can gauge the time remaining until the filter is applied.

Examples of the filter effects, organized according to the Filter submenus, are found in the table at the end of this chapter. For additional examples of filter effects, see Lessons 2 and 3 in the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial.*

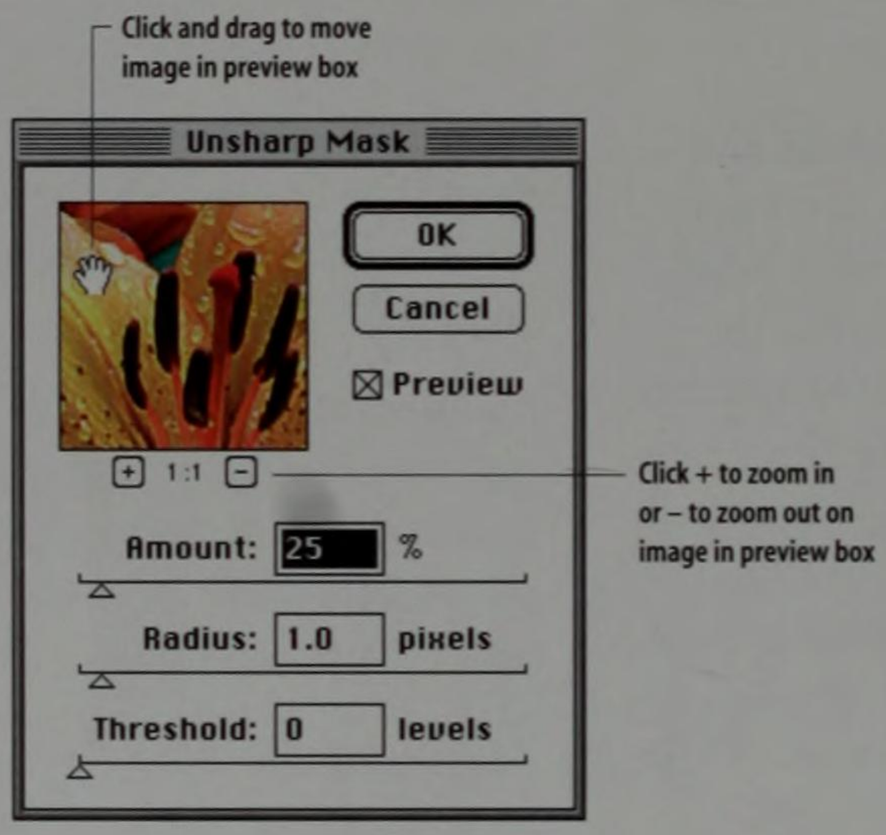
Applying filters to layers

Applying a filter to a layer can have a dramatic effect on an image—particularly when you use the Lighting Effects filter or vary the opacity of the target layer. A layer must contain pixels for the filter to have any effect. This doesn't mean you necessarily have to have elements in a layer; some layer modes let you create a layer using a neutral fill color so that you can apply filters to layers that appear to be transparent. For more information about the Fill with Neutral Color option in the New Layer dialog box, see "Specifying Layer Options" on page 138.

Previewing filter effects

Several Adobe Photoshop built-in filters let you preview a filter effect in the image before applying the filter. This allows you to preview the filter effects in all visible layers. Since applying a filter can be time-consuming (especially for large images), use the Preview option to save time and prevent unintended results.

Some filter dialog boxes also have a preview box built into the dialog box. The preview box shows the filter's effect on the current target layer.



If the section of the layer that you want to see is not visible, move the cursor inside the preview box (this activates the hand tool). Drag to move the layer preview. Use the + or – buttons under the preview box to zoom in and zoom out on the preview. Click in the document window to center a specific area of the image in the preview box.

Filter shortcuts

The following techniques can help you save time when working with filters:

- To cancel a filter as it is being applied, press ⌘-[period].
- To undo a filter, press ⌘-Z.
- To reapply the same filter and its values, press ⌘-F.
- To display the dialog box for the last filter you applied, press ⌘-Option-F.

THE BLUR FILTERS

The five blur filters provide a softening effect, and are useful for retouching images.

The Blur and Blur More filters

The Blur and Blur More filters eliminate noise in the parts of the image where significant color transitions occur. Blur filters smooth transitions by averaging the pixels next to the hard edges of defined lines and shaded areas. The Blur More filter produces an effect three or four times stronger than that of the Blur filter.

The Gaussian Blur filter

The Gaussian Blur filter quickly blurs a selection by an adjustable amount. *Gaussian* refers to the bell-shaped curve that is generated when Adobe Photoshop applies a weighted average to the pixels. This filter adds low-frequency detail, and can produce a hazy effect.

To use the Gaussian Blur filter:

1 Choose Blur > Gaussian Blur from the Filter menu. The Gaussian Blur dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Radius box from 0.1 to 250.0 to determine the degree of blurring. The higher the value, the stronger the blurring effect.

The Motion Blur filter

The Motion Blur filter produces a blur effect in a particular direction and of a specific intensity. The effect of this filter is analogous to taking a picture of a moving object with a fixed exposure time.

To use the Motion Blur filter:

1 Choose Blur > Motion Blur from the Filter menu. The Motion Blur dialog box appears.

2 Indicate the direction in which the object should appear to be moving.

Enter an Angle value from –90 degrees to +90 degrees; or drag the line inside the circle (0 degrees is located at 3 o'clock). Drag clockwise for a positive angle; drag counterclockwise for a negative angle.

3 Enter a value from 1 to 999 in the Distance box to determine the intensity of the blur.

The Radial Blur filter

The Radial Blur filter simulates the blur of a zooming or rotating camera to produce a soft blur.

To use the Radial Blur filter:

1 Choose Blur > Radial Blur from the Filter menu. The Radial Blur dialog box appears.

2 Select a blur method:

• The Spin option blurs along concentric circular lines, as if spinning a wheel.

• The Zoom option blurs along radial lines, as if zooming in or out of the image.

3 Enter a value from 0 to 100 in the Amount box. The box on the left shows you the blur pattern produced by the value and the blur method. If you select Spin mode, this value is the degree of rotation. If you select Zoom mode, a low value causes slight blurring, and a high value causes extreme blurring.

4 Select a Quality option for the blur:

• Draft mode is the fastest but produces grainy results.

• The Good and Best settings produce smoother results. These settings are indistinguishable except on a large selection.

5 Drag the pattern in the Blur center box to specify the origin of the blur.

THE DISTORT FILTERS

The Distort filters produce a geometrical distortion of the image.

The Displace filter

The Displace filter uses a second image (called a *displacement map*) to determine how to distort the selection. The filter reads a color value from the displacement map and uses the value to displace the selection. A value of 0 is maximum negative displacement, and a value of 255 is maximum positive displacement. A gray value of 128 produces no displacement.

The Adobe Photoshop software includes a number of displacement maps that you can use to experiment with this filter. A displacement map, however, can be any Adobe Photoshop file except a bitmap. If the map has one channel, the image is displaced along a diagonal defined by the horizontal and vertical scale ratios. If the map has more than one channel, the first channel controls the horizontal displacement, and the second channel controls the vertical displacement.

As an example of how this filter works, suppose you want to make an image that sags, by using a parabolic-shaped displacement map (the image appears as though it is printed on a cloth that is being held by its corners).

To do this, start with a new grayscale image (for best performance, use small images). Set the foreground color to black and the background color to white, and make a linear gradient fill from left to right. Using the Curves dialog box, draw a single-color curve that dips down from the upper-left corner of the dialog box and back to the upper-right corner. Save this image to disk; this is the shape of the displacement map.

To apply the displacement map, open the image you want to displace, and select the Displace filter. Set the horizontal scale to 0 percent and the vertical scale to 50 percent, and select the Stretch to Fit option. Click OK; then select the displacement map that you just saved to disk. The image is distorted into a parabolic shape.

To use the Displace filter:

1 Choose Distort > Displace from the Filter menu. The Displace dialog box appears.

2 Enter the scale for the magnitude of the displacement.

When the horizontal and vertical scale are set to 100 percent, the maximum displacement is 128 pixels (because middle gray produces no displacement).

3 If the displacement map is not the same size as the selection, determine how the map will fit the image:

- The Stretch to Fit option resizes the map.
- The Tile option fills the selection by repeating the map in a pattern.

4 Select an option to determine how areas of the image left undefined by the distortion will be treated.

- The Wrap Around option wraps the image to fill the undefined space so that the area is filled with content from the opposite side of the image.
- The Repeat Edge Pixels option extends the colors of the pixels along the edge of the image in the direction specified. This option can create a banding effect if the edge pixels are different colors.

The Pinch filter

The Pinch filter in the Distort submenu squeezes a selection. To shift a selection toward its center, enter a positive value in the Pinch dialog box. To shift a selection outward, enter a negative value. Values can range from + 100 percent to –100 percent. The box on the left shows you the pinch pattern produced by the value.

If the selection is rectangular, the filter blends the selection into the background. If the selection is an arbitrary shape, feather the selection after applying the filter to help the selection blend into the surrounding pixels. When feathering is applied, the magnitude of the distortion fades out at the edges of the selection.

The Polar Coordinates filter

The Polar Coordinates filter in the Distort submenu converts a selection from its rectangular to polar coordinates and vice versa. You specify the conversion method in the Polar Coordinates dialog box.

This filter can create a *cylinder anamorphosis*, a type of art popular in the eighteenth century in which the distorted image is difficult to recognize unless viewed in the reflection of a mirrored cylinder.

The Ripple filter

The Ripple filter produces an undulating pattern on a selection, like ripples on the surface of a pond.

To use the Ripple filter:

1 Choose Distort > Ripple from the Filter menu. The Ripple dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Amount box for the magnitude of the ripples. Values can range from –999 to +999.

3 Click Small, Medium, or Large to set the ripple frequency.

Use feathering to mute the edges of the ripple where the selection blends into the background.

The Shear filter

The Shear filter distorts an image along a curve you specify.

To use the Shear filter:

1 Choose Distort > Shear from the Filter menu. The Shear dialog box appears.

2 Drag the line in the box to form a curve that indicates how you want the image to be distorted. You can adjust any point along the curve. Click Reset to return the curve to a straight line.

3 Select an option to determine how areas of the image left undefined by the shear are treated:

- The Wrap Around option wraps the image to fill the undefined space so that the area is filled with content from the opposite side of the image.
- The Repeat Edge Pixels option extends the colors of the pixels along the edge of the image in the direction specified. This can create a banding effect if the edge pixels are different colors.

The Spherize filter

The Spherize filter wraps a selection around a spherical shape, and is useful for giving objects and text a three-dimensional effect. The image is distorted as it is stretched to fit the curve you have selected.

To use the Spherize filter:

1 Choose Distort > Spherize from the Filter menu. The Spherize dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Amount box to determine the strength of the filter.

Values can range from 100 to –100. Negative values undo the effects of a previous Spherize filter.

3 Click Normal, Horizontal only, or Vertical only to set a direction for the filter.

If the selected area is rectangular, the effect applies only to a circular area inside the selection. If the selection is an arbitrary shape (like one made using the lasso or magic wand tool), you can use feathering to blend the selection into the background.

The Twirl filter

The Twirl filter in the Distort submenu rotates a selection more sharply in the center than at the edges. To use the filter, enter an Angle value in the Twirl Filter dialog box. Values can range from 999 to –999. The box to the left of this value shows you the twirl pattern produced by the value.

The Wave filter

The Wave filter works much like the Ripple filter, but gives you greater control over the effect.

To use the Wave filter:

1 Choose Distort > Wave from the Filter menu. The Wave dialog box appears.

2 Enter the number of wave generators, from 1 to 999.

3 Enter a value from 1 to 999 to specify the minimum and maximum wavelength; this sets the distance from one wave crest to the next.

4 Enter a value from 1 to 999 for the minimum and maximum amplitude; this sets the height of the wave.

5 Select Sine (rolling), Triangle, or Square to select the type of wave.

6 Enter a value for the horizontal and vertical scale, from 0 to 100 percent.

The scale controls the magnitude of the distortion in the horizontal and vertical dimensions.

7 To have random values applied to the filter, click the Randomize button.

8 Select an option to determine how areas of the image left undefined by the wave will be treated.

- The Wrap Around option wraps the image to fill the undefined space so that the area is filled with content from the opposite side of the image.
- The Repeat Edge Pixels option extends the colors of the pixels along the edge of the image in the direction specified. This can create a banding effect if the edge pixels are different colors.

To replicate results on other selections, deselect the Randomize parameters option, set the wave generator to 1, and set the minimum and maximum wavelength and amplitude parameters to the same value.

The Zigzag filter

The Zigzag filter distorts a selection radially, depending on the radius of the pixels in your selection.

To use the Zigzag filter:

1 Choose Distort > Zigzag from the Filter menu. The Zigzag dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Amount box for the magnitude of the distortion. Values can range from –100 to +100. The box on the left shows you the zigzag pattern produced by the value.

3 Enter a value in the Ridges box to set the number of direction reversals of the zigzag, from the center of the selection to its edge. Values can range from 1 to 20.

4 Select how to displace the pixels:

- The Pond Ripples option displaces pixels to the upper left or lower right.
- The Out From Center option displaces pixels toward or away from the center of the selection.
- The Around Center option rotates pixels around the center.

THE NOISE FILTERS

Noise in an image is represented by pixels with randomly distributed color levels. The Noise filters subtly blur a selection by adding pixels to make the selection blend into the surrounding pixels. The Noise filter can be used to remove problem areas from an image (such as dust and scratches) and to create unusual textures, such as those used as backgrounds behind title text.

The Add Noise filter

The Add Noise filter applies random pixels to an image, simulating the effect of shooting pictures on high-speed film. The filter can be used with the painting tools to make painted areas less apparent. The painting tools apply paint that is free of noise. If you apply paint to an area that contains some noise, you might then want to select the area and apply the Add Noise filter to blend the painted area into the image.

To use the Add Noise filter:

1 Choose Noise > Add Noise from the Filter menu. The Add Noise dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Amount box to indicate the amount of noise you want to add. Values can range from 1 to 999. The value you specify is used as the standard deviation of the color values of the noise.

3 Select the distribution method for the noise:

• The Uniform option distributes color values of noise by calculating random numbers between 0 and plus or minus the specified value. This produces a more subtle effect.

• The Gaussian option distributes color values of noise along a bell-shaped curve. This produces a more speckled effect.

4 Click Monochromatic to apply the filter to only the tonal elements in the image without changing the colors.

The Despeckle filter

The Despeckle filter in the Noise submenu detects the edges in an image (the areas where significant color changes occur) and blurs all of the selection except those edges. This has the effect of removing noise while preserving detail.

The Dust and Scratches filter

The Dust and Scratches filter reduces noise in an image by searching the radius of a selection of pixels.

To use the Dust& Scratches filter:

1 Choose Noise > Dust & Scratches from the Filter menu. The Dust & Scratches dialog box appears.

You might want to adjust the preview zoom ratio until you can see the area containing the defects.

2 Drag the Threshold slider all the way to the left until it reads zero levels.

Note: *The Threshold slider offers more control for the values between 0 and 128 because this is the most common range for images. Less control is offered between the values of 128 and 255. You can type in an exact number.*

The Threshold option determines how different the value of pixels need to be in order to be eliminated or altered. Turning the Threshold off allows you to examine all the pixels in the image or selection.

3 Drag the Radius slider left or right until the defects disappear from the image, or type a value in the text box. Values can range from 1 to 16 pixels.

The Radius option determines how far Adobe Photoshop searches to find differing pixels. As you adjust this option, the image gets blurry. Stop when you have the smallest radius which eliminates the defects.

4 Increase the threshold gradually, until it is as high as possible without displaying the defects.

Finding the correct compromise between sharpness and concealing the defects may require you to try different combinations of radius and threshold settings. If you can't make the image sharp enough, try reducing the selection area around the defect.

The Median filter

The Median filter in the Noise submenu reduces noise in an image by searching the radius of a selection of pixels and replacing the center pixel with the median brightness value of those pixels. The effect is to blend the brightness of pixels within a selection. The filter discards pixels that are too different from adjacent pixels. This filter is often used to eliminate or reduce the effect of motion on an image.

To use the Median filter, specify a radius from 1 to 16 in the Median Filter dialog box. This value determines how far around the current pixel the filter looks at brightness values.

The Mezzotint filter

The Mezzotint filter converts an image to a random pattern of black and white areas or fully saturated colors in an color image.

To use the Mezzotint filter, choose one of the dot patterns from the Type menu.

THE PIXELATE FILTERS

The three filters in the Pixelate submenu create sharp definition in a selection by clumping pixels of similar color values in cells.

The Facet filter

The Facet filter clumps pixels into blocks of like-colored pixels. This filter analyzes an image, determines the major areas of solid or similar colors, and then emphasizes those areas. Use this filter to make a scanned image look hand-painted. Applying this filter several times makes a realistic image resemble an abstract painting.

The Fragment filter

The Fragment filter creates four copies of the pixels in the selection, averages them, and offsets them from each other.

The Mosaic filter

The Mosaic filter clumps pixels into square blocks. The cell size is the width of a cell in pixels. Enter a cell size from 2 to 64 pixels in the Mosaic dialog box. The pixels in a given block are the same color, and the colors of the blocks represent the colors in the selection.

THE RENDER FILTERS

The five filters in the Render submenu let you produce effects by generating blending patterns, refraction patterns, and simulated light reflections in the image. You can also use textures from a grayscale file to produce 3-D-like effects for the lighting.

The Clouds filter

The Clouds filter generates a soft clouds pattern using random values that vary between the foreground and the background colors. Hold down the Shift key when you choose Clouds to generate a starker clouds pattern.

The Difference Clouds filter

The Difference Clouds filter uses randomly generated values that vary between the foreground and background color to produce a clouds pattern. Difference Clouds blends the clouds data with the existing pixels in the same way that the Difference mode blends colors. The first time you choose this filter, portions of the image are inverted in a clouds pattern. Choosing the filter repeatedly creates rib and vein patterns that resemble a marble texture.

Note: *You can't use the Difference Clouds filter with Lab images.*

The Lens Flare filter

The Lens Flare filter simulates the refraction caused by shining a bright light into the camera lens.

To use the Lens Flare filter:

1 Choose Render > Lens Flare from the Filter menu. The Lens Flare dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value for percentage of Brightness. Values can range from 10 percent to 300 percent.

3 Click anywhere inside the image thumbnail to specify a location for the center of the flare.

4 Select a lens type.

The Lighting Effects filter

The Lighting Effects filter in the Render submenu lets you apply up to 16 different light sources to an image. You can choose from three different types of lights and from five styles (or collections of settings) for each image. You can also save your own styles for use in other images.

By varying the number of lights, the light types, and the light properties, you can produce an amazing number of different lighting effects. You can also use textures from grayscale files (or bump maps) to produce 3-D-like effects for the lighting.

Note: *The Lighting filters can be used only on RGB images.*

To use the Lighting Effects filter:

1 Choose Render > Lighting Effects from the Filter menu. The Lighting Effects dialog box appears. The preview box on the left in the dialog box shows you the effect of the lighting.

2 Chose a style from the Style menu. The Default style has one yellow spotlight with a medium intensity and a fairly wide focus.

To create your own styles, see "Creating a New Style" on page 174.

3 Choose a type from the Light Type menu and set the light focus (and intensity if you're using a spotlight). The specific light types are discussed in the following sections.

When you're using multiple lights, you can turn individual lights on and off by clicking the On check box.

Shortcut: *Press Tab to cycle through the lights in a style.*

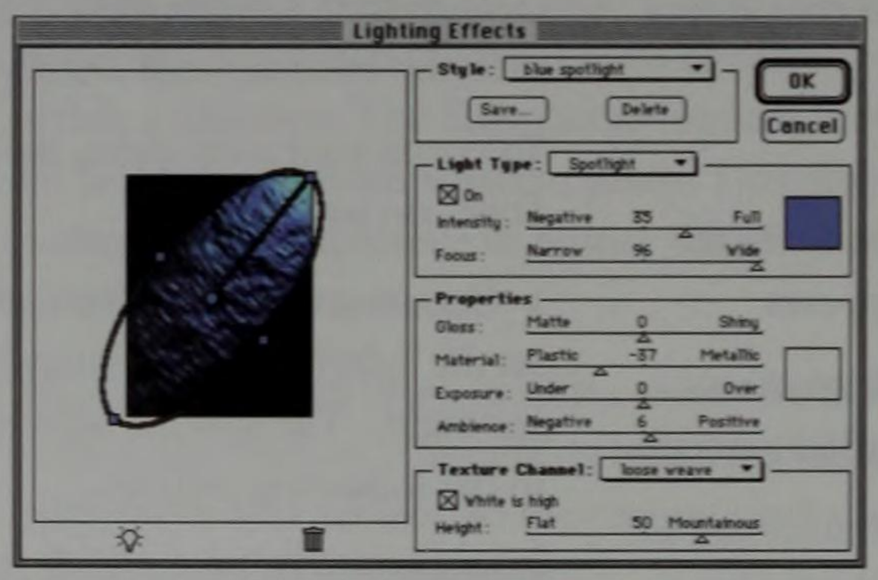
4 Set the light properties. For more information, see "Setting the Light Properties" on page 173.

5 If you want to use a texture fill, select the texture from the Texture Channel. For more information, see "Using a Texture" on page 174.

6 Click OK to apply the filter.

Using a spotlight

The Spotlight casts an elliptical beam of light. The line in the preview box defines the light direction and angle, and four boxes to define the edges of the ellipse.



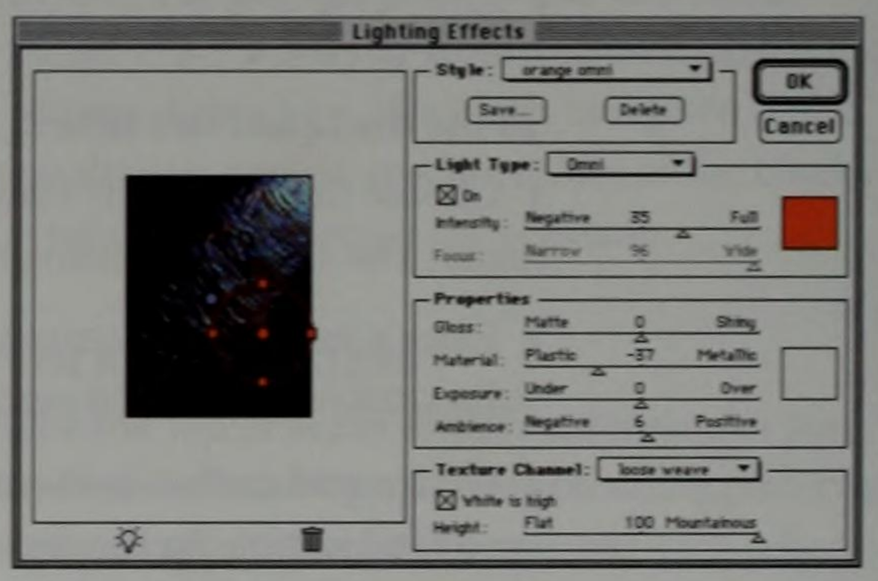
To move the light, drag the center circle. To change the angle of the light, shorten or lengthen the line (a shorter line produces a sharper angle).

To stretch the ellipse or rotate the light, drag one of the four boxes. Shift-drag to hold the angle constant and change only the size of the ellipse. ⌘-drag to hold the size constant and change the angle or direction of the spotlight.

The focus controls how much of the ellipse is filled with light.

Using an Omni light

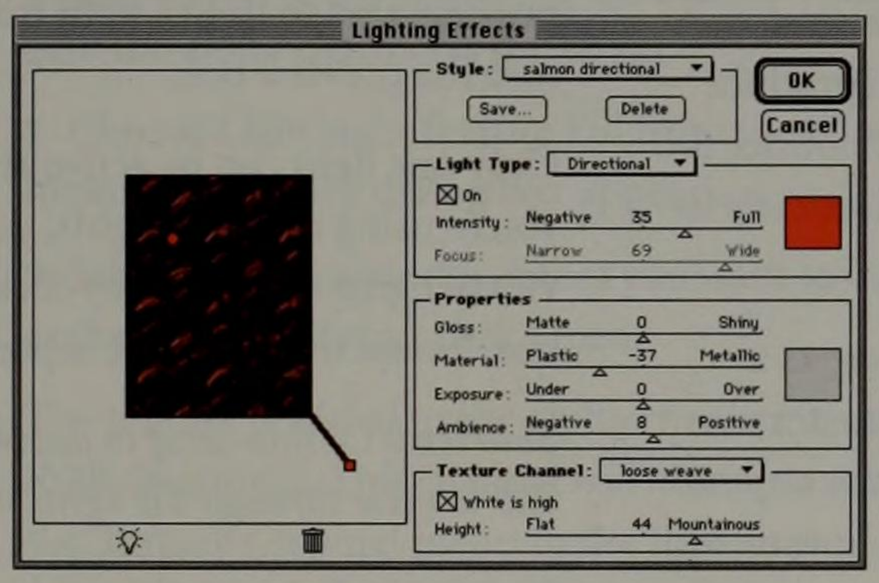
An Omni light shines in all directions from directly above the image. The effect is like holding a light bulb over a piece of paper. The preview box shows a circle with four boxes that define the edges of the effect.



Drag the center circle to move the light. Drag one of the four boxes to increase or decrease the size of the light (as if you were moving the light closer or farther away from the paper).

Using a directional light

Like the sun, a directional light is so far away that there is no drop off in the light angle. The preview box shows a line controlling the angle of the light.



To move the light, drag the center circle. To change the direction of the light, rotate the line. The length of the line indicates how high the light is above the image. Drag the square at the end of the line to change the height. Shortening the line creates a very bright light; if the line gets too short it produces pure white light. Lengthening the line produces a less intense light; a very long line produces no light.

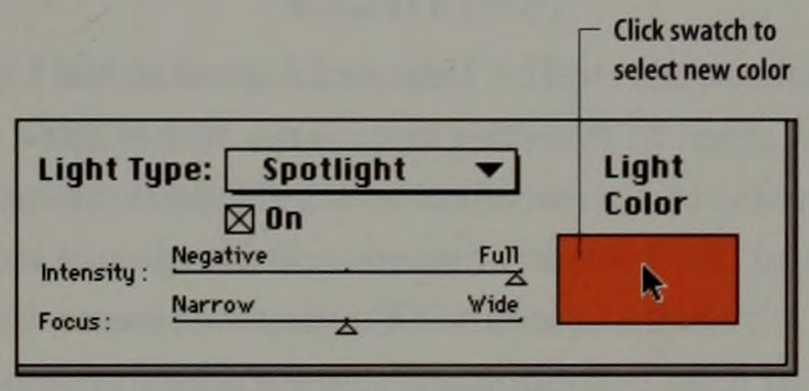
Shift-drag to hold the angle constant and change the length of the line. ⌘-drag to hold the length constant and change the light direction.

Setting the light intensity

Drag the slider to set the intensity for the light. Full intensity (a value of 100) provides the brightest light. Normal intensity is about 50. A negative intensity has the effect of taking away light and an intensity of –100 produces no light.

Setting the color of the light

To change the color of the light, click the color swatch in the Light Type section of the dialog box.



The Apple Color Picker appears to let you choose a new color. For more information on selecting colors from the picker, see "Using the Apple Color Picker" on page 128.

Setting the light properties

You can set three light properties:

- The Gloss property determines the reflectance of the surface the light is shining on (like the surface on a piece of photographic paper). Drag the slider to vary the surface from matte to glossy.
- The Material property determines whether the light or the object color has more reflectance. Drag the slider to vary the reflectance from Plastic (reflects the color of the light) to Metallic (reflects the object color).
- The Exposure property lightens or darkens the light. Positive values add lights and negative values subtract light. A value of 0 has no effect.

• The Ambience property diffuses the light as if it were combined with other light in the room, such as sunlight or fluorescent light. Use the slider to vary the ambience from Positive to Negative. A value of 100 takes into account only the light source; a value of -100 removes the light source.

• The color of the ambient light appears in the color swatch. To change the color, click the swatch to display the Apple Color Picker.

Using a texture

The Texture Channel in the Lighting Effects dialog box allows you to use a grayscale texture to affect how the light bounces off the image. By creating unique textures, or using general textures like paper or water, you can produce "bumps" in the image that appear to bounce the light off a 3-D surface. You use the channels to set the height of the bumps.

You can use a channel from any image as a texture. The document containing the texture must be the same size as the image document you're filtering. For information on how to add the texture to the Texture Channels menu, see "The Texture Fill Filter" on page 175.

To use the Texture Channel in the Lighting Effects dialog box:

1 Choose a channel from the Texture Channel menu.

The Red, Green, and Blue channels from your image appear by default. Any other channels you added to the active image also appear in this menu.

2 Click White is High if you want the white portions of the channel to rise up from the surface. Turn off this option if you want the dark sections of the channel to rise from the surface.

3 Drag the slider to vary the texture from Flat to Mountainous.

Creating a new style

To create your own style, start with the Default style which contains one light. You must have one light source at all times. You can have up to 16 lights in a style.

To add a new light:

Click the light icon at the bottom left of the preview area to drag a light from the light well into the preview box.

Only one light can be active at a time. When you're using multiple lights, you can turn individual lights on and off by clicking the On check box. Nonactive lights are represented by a circle.

Shortcut: *Option-drag to duplicate a light. Press Tab to cycle through the lights in a style.*

To delete a light:

Drag the light by its center circle to the Trash icon at the bottom right of the preview box.

To save a style:

Click the Save button. A dialog box appears so you can name the style.

Saved styles include all the settings for each light and appear in the Style menu whenever you open the image. You can use the saved settings with other files (but the file reads texture information based on the channel number not on the contents of the channel).

To use a texture in another document, duplicate the channel to that image.

To delete a style:

Click the Delete button.

The Texture Fill filter

The Texture Fill filter allows you to select a texture to be used as a "bump map" in the Lighting Effects filter. This command is only available when the active document contains a grayscale channel.

To use the Texture Fill filter:

1 Open the RGB image to which you want to add a texture, and create an alpha channel. Make sure the alpha channel is the target.

2 Choose Lighting > Texture Fill from the Filter menu. A directory dialog box appears.

3 Select the grayscale document you want to use as the texture fill, and click Open.

The texture is added to the alpha channel in the RGB document. This channel will now appear in the Texture Channel menu in the Lighting Effects dialog box. See "The Lighting Effects Filter" on page 171 for information on using this filter.

THE SHARPEN FILTERS

The Sharpen filters sharpen blurry images by increasing the contrast of adjacent pixels.

The Sharpen and Sharpen More filters

The Sharpen and Sharpen More filters focus a selection and improve its clarity. The Sharpen More filter applies a stronger sharpening effect than the Sharpen filter.

The Sharpen Edges and Unsharp Mask filters

Both the Sharpen Edges and Unsharp Mask filters find the areas in the image where significant color changes occur and sharpen them.

The Sharpen Edges filter provides more definition to blurry images by applying sharpening only when an edge is found. The Sharpen Edges filter preserves the overall smoothness of the image and changes only the edges. Use this filter to apply edge sharpening without having to specify the edge parameters.

The Unsharp Mask filter adjusts the contrast of edge detail, creating the illusion of more image sharpness. This filter can be useful for refocusing an image that has become blurry from interpolation or scanning. This filter produces the same effect as the conventional method used to sharpen images on film. In this method, a blurred positive film is sandwiched with a sharp negative file, and the result is shot on high-contrast photographic paper. The filter produces a lighter and darker line on each side of an edge, giving the edge added emphasis.

To use the Unsharp Mask filter:

1 Choose Sharpen > Unsharp Mask from the Filter menu. The Unsharp Mask dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Amount box to specify the percentage of the filter's effect, from 1 to 500. The higher the percentage, the stronger the effect of the filter.

3 Enter the Radius value in pixels.

The radius determines the depth of pixels that will be affected at the edge. The values can range from 0.1 to 250.0. If you specify a high value, more of the pixels surrounding the edge pixels are sharpened. If you specify a low value, only

the edges are sharpened. For low-resolution files, use a lower radius; for example, use a radius of 1 pixel for a 72-dpi file. For high-resolution images, avoid values that are too high.This prevents a keyline effect when the filter is applied.

4 Enter a value in the Threshold box to specify the level of brightness to be used for differentiation.

This option allows you to specify a tolerance range to prevent overall sharpening that might generate noise or cause other unexpected results. The Threshold defines the required range of contrast between adjacent pixels before sharpening is applied to an edge. Values can range from 0 to 255. A lower value produces a more pronounced effect. To find the value that produces the desired effect in the entire image, make a selection (for example, select an area with flesh tones), and experiment with different values before applying the filter to the entire image. For more information on the Unsharp Mask filter, see Lesson 7 of the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial.*

Tip: *To preserve bright colors, convert the image to Lab mode and apply the Unsharp Mask filter to the L channel only.*

THE STYLIZE FILTERS

The Stylize filters produce a painted or impressionistic effect on a selection by displacing pixels, and by finding and heightening contrast in an image.

The Color Halftone filter

The Color Halftone filter simulates the effect of using an enlarged halftone screen on each channel of the image. For each channel, the filter divides the image into rectangles and replaces each rectangle with a circle. The circle size is proportional to the brightness of the rectangle.

To use the Color Halftone filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Color Halftone from the Filter menu. The Color Halftone dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in pixels for the maximum radius of a halftone dot. Values can range from 4 to 127.

3 Enter a value for the screen angle for each channel. Click Defaults to return all the screen angles to their default values.

The values indicate the angle of the dot from true horizontal. Grayscale images use only channel 1. In RGB images, channels 1, 2, and 3 correspond to the red, green, and blue channels. In CMYK images, the four channels correspond to the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black channels, respectively.

The Crystallize filter

The Crystallize filter in the Stylize submenu clumps pixels into a solid color in a polygon shape. The cell size is the width of a cell in pixels. Enter a cell size from 3 to 300 pixels in the Crystallize dialog box.

The Diffuse filter

The Diffuse filter in the Stylize submenu shuffles pixels in a selection to make the selection look less focused. Choose a diffusion mode in the Diffuse dialog box.

- The Normal option moves pixels at random, regardless of their color values.
- The Darken Only option moves pixels, replacing light pixels with darker pixels.
- The Lighten Only option moves pixels, replacing dark pixels with lighter pixels.

The Emboss filter

The Emboss filter makes a selection appear raised or stamped by suppressing the color within the selection and tracing its edges with black.

To use the Emboss filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Emboss from the Filter menu. The Emboss dialog box appears.

2 Indicate the angle for embossing by entering a value of from – 360 degrees to +360 degrees in the Angle text box, or drag the line in the circle to indicate the angle.

To raise the surface, enter a positive value, or drag the line clockwise. To lower (stamp) the surface, enter a negative value, or drag the line counterclockwise.

3 Enter a value from 1 to 10 pixels for the height of the embossing.

4 Enter a percentage in the Amount box from 1 to 500; 1 percent produces the least amount of color within the selection, and 500 percent retains color values at the edges.

The Extrude filter

The Extrude filter makes a selection into a series of three-dimensional objects.

To use the Extrude filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Extrude from the Filter menu. The Extrude dialog box appears.

2 Select the type of three-dimensional object:

• The Blocks option creates objects with a square front face and four side faces. To fill the front face of each block with the average color of the block, select the Solid Front Faces check box. To fill the front face with the image, keep the Solid Front Faces check box deselected.

• The Pyramids options creates objects with four triangular sides that meet at a point.

3 Enter a value in the Size box from 2 to 255 to determine the length of any side of the object's base.

4 Enter a value in the Depth box from 0 to 255 to indicate how far the object appears to protrude from the screen. In addition:

• Select the Random button if you want the depth of each solid to be arbitrary.

• Select Level-based if you want the depth of each object to correspond to the overall brightness of the object. Brighter objects appear to protrude more than dark objects.

5 Select Mask Incomplete Blocks if you want to hide any object that extends beyond the selection.

The Find Edges and Trace Contour filters

The Find Edges and Trace Contour filters in the Stylize submenu outline the edges of an image with dark lines against a white background. Use the Invert command to outline the edges of a color image with colored lines, or to outline the edges of a grayscale image with white lines.

The Find Edges filter identifies the areas of the image that have significant transitions, and emphasizes the edges. The Trace Contour filter finds the transitions of major brightness areas and draws thin lines around them for each color channel (like the lines in a contour map). These filters are useful for creating a border around an image.

To use the Trace Contour filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Trace Contour from the Filter menu. The Trace Contour dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value in the Level box to specify a threshold for evaluating color values.

This level refers to the tonal level of a color value. Values can range from 0 to 255. You can experiment to see what values bring out the best detail in the image. Use the Info palette to identify a color value that you want traced; then enter the value in the Level text box.

3 Select an Edge option for outlining the areas in the selection:

- The Lower option outlines where the color values of pixels fall below the specified level.
- The Upper option outlines where the color values of pixels are above the specified level.

The Pointillize filter

The Pointillize filter in the Stylize submenu breaks up the color in an image into randomly placed dots, as in a pointillist painting, and uses the background color as a canvas area between the dots. To use the filter, enter a cell width size from 3 pixels to 300 pixels in the Pointillize dialog box.

The Solarize filter

The Solarize filter in the Stylize submenu creates a blend between a negative and a positive image. This effect is analogous to briefly exposing a photographic print to light during development.

The Tiles filter

The Tiles filter breaks up an image into a series of tiles.

To use the Tiles filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Tiles from the Filter menu. The Tiles dialog box appears.

2 Enter the minimum number of tiles you want in any direction for the Number of Tiles value. Values can range from 1 to 99.

3 Enter the maximum parameter you want a tile to be offset from its original position for the Maximum Offset value. Values can range from 1 to 99.

4 Select how you want to fill the area between the tiles.

You can fill this area with the background color, with the foreground color, with a reversed-out version of the image, or with an unaltered version of the image. The unaltered option places the tiled version of the image on top of the original. Portions of the original image are visible beneath the tiled edges.

The Wind filter

The Wind filter creates tiny horizontal lines in the image to simulate a wind effect.

To use the Wind filter:

1 Choose Stylize > Wind from the Filter menu. The Wind dialog box appears.

2 Select a Method option:

- The Wind option produces a wind effect.
- The Blast option produces a more dramatic wind effect.
- The Stagger option offsets the wind lines in the image.

3 Click Left or Right to indicate a direction for the wind.

THE VIDEO FILTERS

The Video submenu contains the NTSC Colors and De-Interlace filters. The NTSC Colors filter restricts the gamut of colors to those acceptable for television reproduction. This filter prevents oversaturated colors from bleeding across television scan lines.

The De-Interlace filter removes either the odd or even interlaced lines in a video image to ensure a smooth image. You can choose to replace the discarded lines by duplication or interpolation. This filter is useful for smoothing moving images captured on video.

SPECIAL PURPOSE FILTERS

Filters in the Other submenu let you create your own filters, use filters to modify masks, offset a selection within an image, and make quick color adjustments.

The Custom filter

The Custom filter in the Other submenu lets you change the brightness values of each pixel in the image according to a predefined mathematical operation known as *convolution*. This operation is similar to the one used with the Add and Subtract calculations for channels. For more information about the Add and Subtract calculation commands, see Chapter 9, "Working with Channels." You can save the custom filters you create and use them with other Adobe Photoshop documents.

To create a Custom filter:

1 Choose Other > Custom from the Filter menu. The Custom dialog box appears.

2 Click the center text box. This represents the pixel being evaluated. Enter the value by which you want to multiply that pixel's brightness value. Values can range from 999 to –999.

3 Click a text box representing an adjacent pixel to which you want to assign a weighted value. Enter the value by which you want the pixel in that position multiplied.

For example, if you want the brightness value of the pixel to the immediate right of the current pixel multiplied by 2, enter 2 in the text box to the immediate right of the center text box.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 for all pixels you want to include in the operation. You don't have to enter values in all the text boxes.

5 In the Scale text box, enter the value by which to divide the sum of the brightness values of the pixels included in the calculation.

6 In the Offset text box, enter the value to be added to the result of the scale calculation.

7 Click OK. The custom filter is applied to each pixel in the image, one at a time.

Use the Save and Load buttons to save and reuse custom filters.

The High Pass filter

The High Pass filter in the Other submenu removes shading in a selection by retaining the areas where sharp color transitions occur and by suppressing the rest of the image. It emphasizes very bright areas and highlights. This filter produces the opposite effect of the Gaussian Blur filter, because it removes low-frequency detail in an image.

It is helpful to apply the High Pass filter to a continuous-tone image before using the Threshold command or converting the image to Bitmap mode. The filter is useful for extracting line art and large black-and-white areas from scanned images.

In the High Pass dialog box, specify the radius of pixels around the image edges that you want the filter to retain. Values can range from 0.1 pixel to 250.0 pixels. A high value retains more of the pixels adjacent to the edge pixels; a low value retains only the edges themselves.

The Maximum and Minimum filters

Both the Minimum and Maximum filters in the Other submenu are useful for modifying masks. The Minimum filter has the effect of applying a *spread*—spreading out black areas and shrinking white areas. The Maximum filter has the effect of applying a *choke*—spreading out white areas and choking in black areas.

Like the Median filter, the Maximum and Minimum filters let you examine pixels in a selection and adjust their brightness. Operating on one pixel at a time, these filters examine the brightness values of adjacent pixels and replace the brightness value of the current pixel with the maximum or minimum brightness value of the surrounding pixels.

In the filter's dialog box, specify a radius from 1 pixel to 10 pixels to determine how far around the current pixel the filter looks for brightness values.

The Offset filter

The Offset filter moves the selection a specified amount, leaving a "hole" at the selection's original location. Depending on the options you select, the empty area is replaced with the current background color or with another part of the image. If the selection appears near the edge of an image, the selected area is *undefined*, and you can choose how to fill it.

To use the Offset filter:

1 Choose Other > Offset from the Filter menu. The Offset dialog box appears.

2 Specify the direction in which to move the pixels:

- Enter a value between 300 and –30,000 in the Horizontal text box to move the pixels right or left.
- Enter a value between 30,000 and –30,000 in the Vertical text box to move the pixels down or up.

3 Select an option to determine how areas of the image left undefined by the offset will be treated.

- The Set to Background option fills the selected area with the current background color.
- The Repeat Edge Pixels option extends the colors of the pixels along the edge of the image in the direction specified. This can create a banding effect if the edge pixels are different colors.
- The Wrap Around option wraps the image to fill the undefined space so that the area is filled with content from the opposite side of the image.

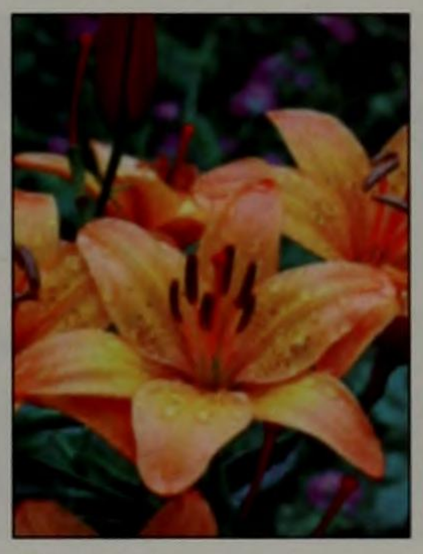
Adobe Photoshop Filters

Original

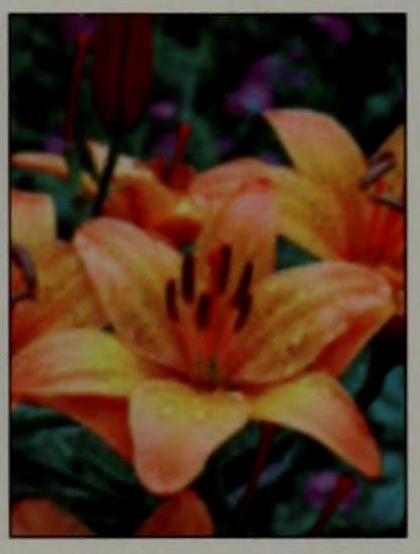
BLUR

Motion; Distance 20 pixels

Radial: Spin



Blur More



Gaussian

NOISE

Original

Add Noise: Uniform

Median

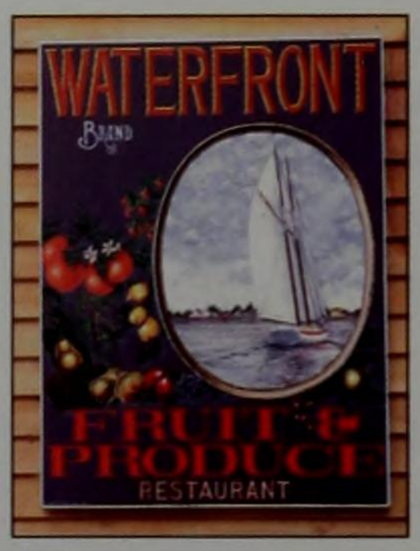
SHARPEN

Original

Sharpen Edges

Unsharp Mask

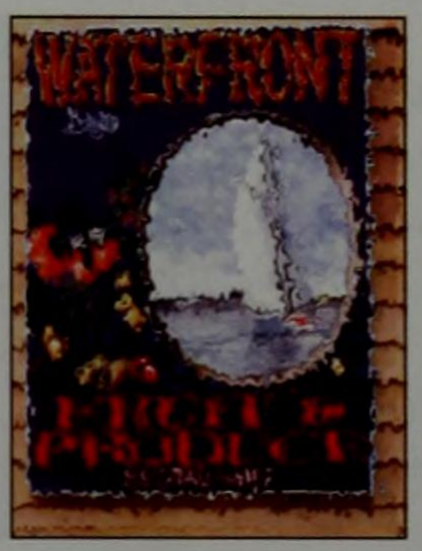
DISTORT



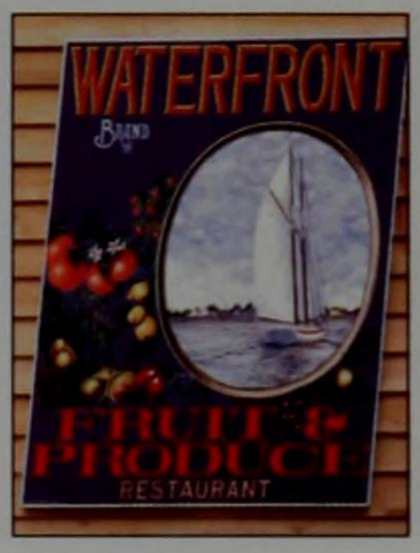
Original

Pinch; Amount: 100

Polar Coordinates



Ripple



Shear

Spherize

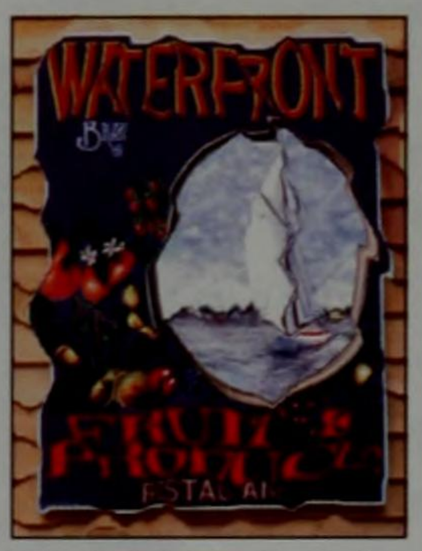
Twirl; Angle: 50

Wave 1

Zigzag; Out from center

Displace; Wrap Around; Map: Crumbles

Displace; Wrap Around; Map: Fragment layers



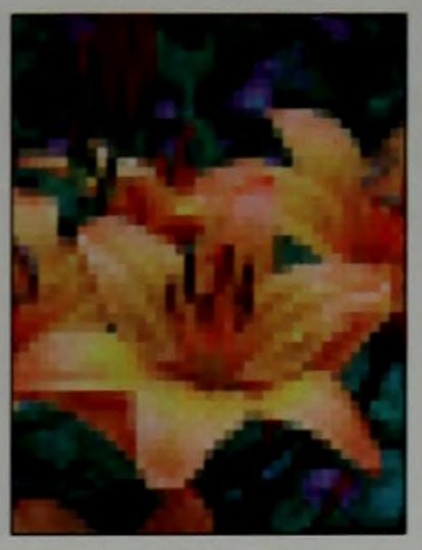
Displace; Wrap Around; Map: Rectangular tiles

PIXELATE

Original

Facet

Fragment



Mosaic; Cell size: 8 pixels

RENDER

Original

Clouds

Lens flare; Brightness: 150

STYLIZE

Original

Original

Diffuse

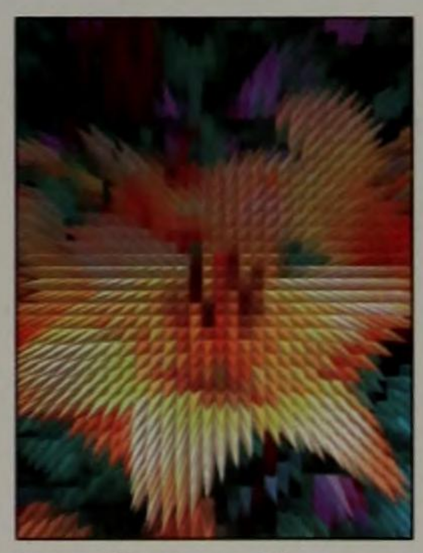
Emboss

Find Edges

Trace Contour

Color Halftone;

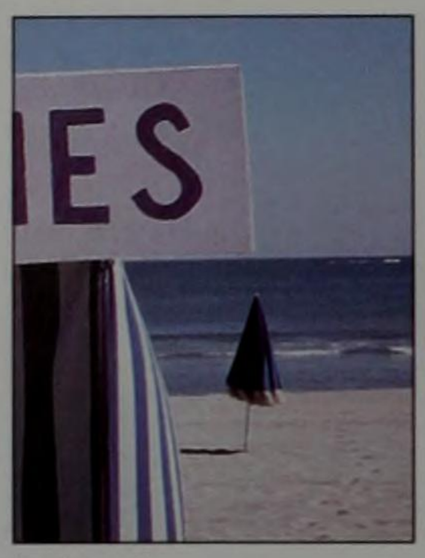
Crystallize



Extrude; Pyramids

Pointillize

STYLIZE



Original

Solarize

Tiles

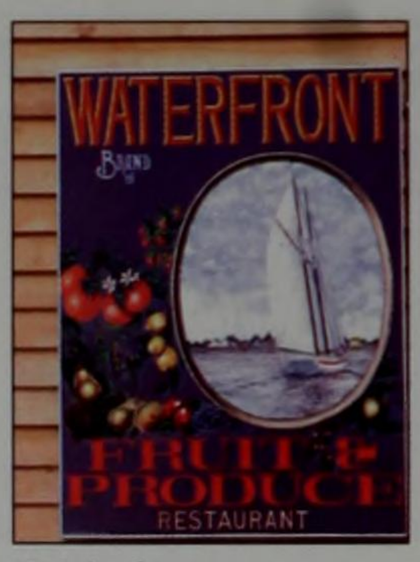
Wind blast

SPECIAL PURPOSE

Original: Cyan plate

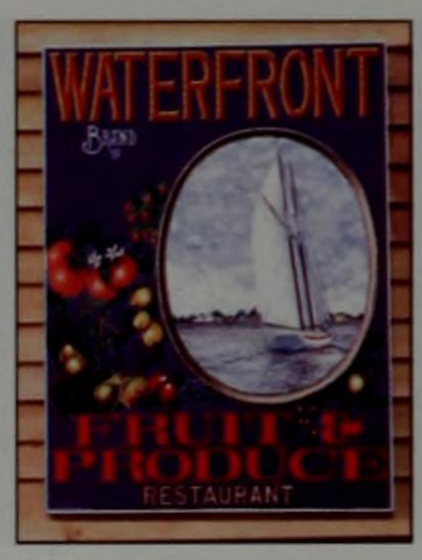
Maximum

Minimum



Original

Offset 1; Horizontal: –15; Repeat edge pixels



Offset 2; Vertical: –20; Wrap Around

Chapter

11

RESIZING AND RESOLUTION

Chapter 11: Resizing and Resolution

This chapter explains how to resize and resample images using the cropping features, the Image Size command, and the Canvas Size command. This chapter also discusses the process of interpolation used to determine color values for pixels that are added or deleted during resizing or manipulations.

UNDERSTANDING IMAGE RESOLUTION

The concept of image resolution is central to understanding the process of resizing and re–sampling. For an explanation of the four types of resolution used in Adobe Photoshop (bit resolution, screen resolution, device resolution, and image resolution), see "Resolution Basics" on page 4.

Image resolution refers to the amount of information stored for an image, measured in pixels per inch (ppi). The image resolution and the dimensions of the image determine the file size of the document, which is expressed in kilobytes (K) or megabytes (MB).

The resolution of an image is a critical factor in determining the quality of printed output. If you are working with scanned images, you should scan your images in the highest resolution that can be used by your printer, taking into account the screen frequency that will be used to print the image. If the resolution is too low, the PostScript language uses a single pixel's color values to create more than one halftone dot. This results in *pixelization*, or very coarse-looking output. If the resolution is too high, your file contains more information than your printer needs, and printing time is increased.

See "Determining the Scan Resolution" on page 37 and "Scan Resolution and Image Output Size" on page 38 for information on determining the best resolution for printed output.

It's especially easy to confuse image resolution with monitor resolution (sometimes called screen resolution). Monitor resolution is the number of dots per inch that your monitor uses to display an image, and determines how large or small the image appears on the screen. See "Monitor Resolution" on page 5 for illustrations of image versus monitor resolution.

Adjusting image resolution

Changing an image's resolution by adding or subtracting pixels from the image is called *re–sampling*. If you need to change the resolution after an image has been scanned, you can use the Image Size command in the Image menu. If you are unsure of the appropriate resolution for a resized image, you can have Adobe Photoshop suggest a resolution.

When altering the resolution, keep in mind that the size of a file is proportional to its resolution. Increasing an image's resolution without decreasing its dimensions proportionately, or increasing an image's dimensions without decreasing its resolution proportionately, results in a larger file size. For example, the file for an image with a resolution of 200 pixels per inch is four times the size of the file for the same image with the same dimensions and a resolution of

100 pixels per inch. It's best to keep your files as small as possible, since larger files take up more disk space and require longer processing time.

300 ppi, 1172K

72 ppi, 112K

Resampling

When you *resample down* (or decrease the resolution), Adobe Photoshop deletes information from the image to achieve the desired resolution. When you *resample up* (or increase the resolution), Adobe Photoshop creates new pixel information based on the color values of the existing pixels.

Important: *Increasing the image resolution does not usually produce a higher-quality image, because Adobe Photoshop must create new pixels to achieve the higher resolution. The added pixels can make the image appear blurry or out of focus especially when they are added to the edge pixels of contiguous color areas.*

When your file contains more information than you need, you can resample down to decrease the file size. Resampling down can also result in a blurry image. After resampling, you might want to use the Unsharp Mask filter to bring the image back in focus. For more information on sharpening a resampled image, see "Sharpening an Interpolated Image" on page 187.

Resampling down and then resampling up to the original resolution causes a deterioration in the quality of the image. This is because once an image is resampled down, the original color information is lost as pixels are deleted. During the resampling up process, Adobe Photoshop attempts to reconstruct the original file on the basis of the current color information. However, the new image is only an approximation and will not be as sharp as the original.

Note: *If you want to preview effects or compare how an image will look at a different resolution, resample a duplicate of your original file. See "Duplicating Images" on page 159.*

Original image:
300 ppi, 1172K

Image resampled down:
150 ppi, 308K

Downsampled image:
150 ppi, 308K

Image resampled up:
300 ppi, 1172K

Selecting an interpolation method

When you increase or decrease the file size of an image (by resampling, rotating an image at an arbitrary angle, or using special effects such as skew or perspective), new color values are created for the added pixels. Adobe Photoshop determines the color of added or deleted pixels using the process of *interpolation.*

To select an interpolation method:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

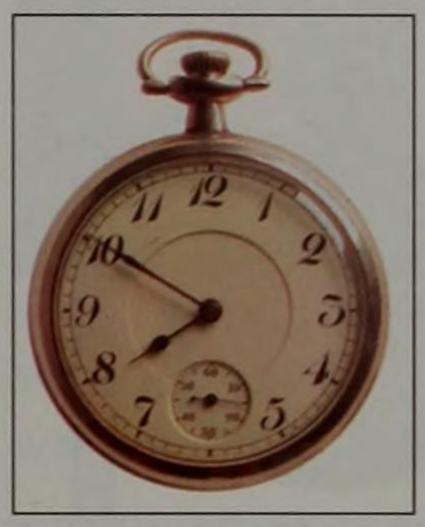
2 Select the option you want from the Interpolation menu:

- The Bicubic option offers the most precise form of interpolation; however, it is significantly slower than Bilinear interpolation.
- The Nearest Neighbor option is the fastest method, but it is also the least precise. This lack of precision is evident in the jagged appearance of modified selections, especially when you're distorting or resizing an image or performing multiple manipulations on a selection.
- The Bilinear option produces medium quality that is between the other two options.

Sharpening an interpolated image

An image often appears out of focus after you resample up (including resampling during cropping), or rotate, scale, skew, or change the image's perspective. The interpolated pixels are responsible for this deterioration in image quality.

Applying the Unsharp Mask filter to the image after interpolation can help to refocus the image. For detailed instructions for using the Unsharp Mask filter, see "The Sharpen Filters" on page 175.



Original image

Downsampled image

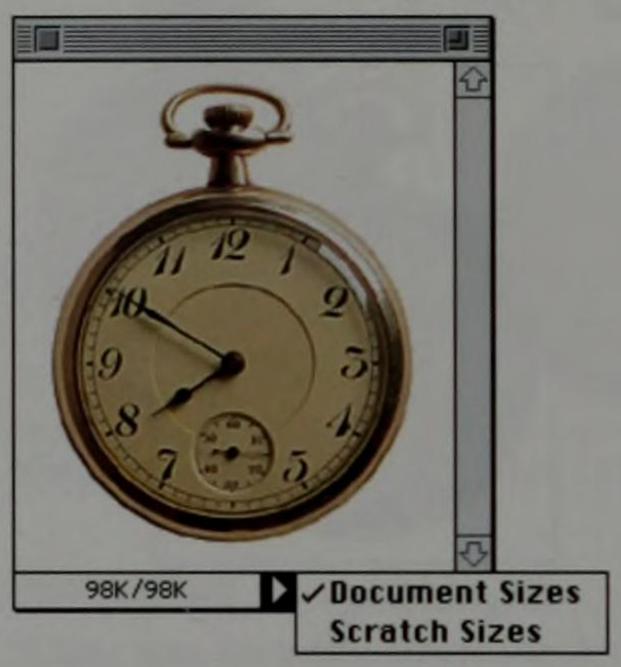
Unsharp Mask applied

DISPLAYING THE FILE SIZE, DIMENSIONS, AND RESOLUTION OF AN IMAGE

Adobe Photoshop displays the file size for each image in the lower left corner of the document window. You can also display the dimensions, number of channels, and resolution information about a file.

To display the file size:

Click the triangle in the bottom border of the document window, and choose Document Sizes from the menu.



The file size values appear in the box at the lower left corner of the document window.

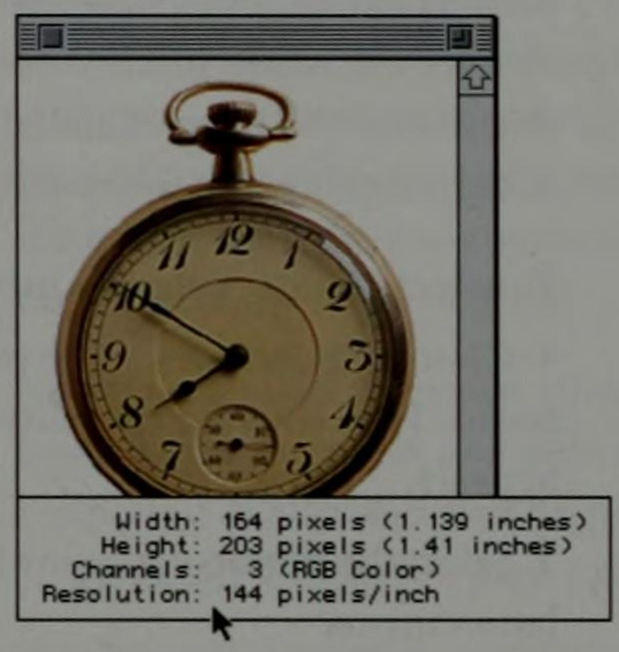
The first value indicates the file size of the final document as it would be sent to the printer, a flattened file which contains no layer data. The second value shows the size of the file including all layers and channels, that is, the file size if the document were saved with all its layers. For more information on how layers affect file size, see "Keeping Track of File Sizes" on page 145.

To display dimensions, channel, and resolution information:

1 Position the pointer on the box in the lower-left corner of the document window.

2 Hold down the Option key and the mouse button. The file information box appears.

The box displays the height and width of the image, both in pixels and in the units of measurement currently selected for the rulers, the number of channels, and the image resolution.



PREVIEWING THE PAGE SIZE AND LAYOUT

Before you change the size of an image, you may want to preview how the image will appear on the printed page. To do this, you display a page preview box.

To preview a page:

1 Position the pointer on the box in the lower-left corner of the document window, where the file size is displayed.

2 Hold down the mouse button. The page preview box appears.

The dimensions of the page shown in the page preview box correspond to the page size selected in the Page Setup dialog box. Options selected in the Page Setup dialog box, including registration marks, calibration bars, labels, and captions, appear as gray boxes.

CROPPING AN IMAGE

You use the Crop command to select part of an image and discard the rest. You can also crop an image using the cropping tool in the toolbox.

Using the Crop command

When you use the Crop command, you define the area you want to save with the rectangular marquee tool. The advantage of using the Crop command is that you can rotate and resample the area as you crop.

To crop an image using the Crop command:

1 Double-click the marquee in the toolbox, and choose Rectangle from the Shape menu in the Marquee Options palette. Be sure the Feather option is set to 0 pixels.

2 Select the part of the image you want to use.

3 Choose Crop from the Edit menu.

Using the cropping tool

The cropping tool includes options that allow you to define the height-to-width ratio for the cropping marquee and the cropping resolution. You use the cropping tool to select part of an image and discard the rest.

To use the cropping tool:

1 Click the cropping tool in the toolbox.

2 To specify a size or resolution for the cropping marquee, use the Cropping Tool Options palette. These options are discussed in the next section.

3 Drag to select the part of the image you want to use.

When you release the mouse button, the selected area appears with four handles.

4 Move the pointer inside the selected area. The pointer turns into a scissors.

5 Click the mouse button. To cancel the cropping operation once it has started, press ⌘-[period].

Defining the size and resolution of the cropped area

You use the Cropping Tool Options palette to define the size and resolution of the rectangular area you're cropping. You can specify either a size or a resolution, and have Adobe Photoshop calculate the other parameter.

To specify the size and resolution of the cropped area:

1 Double-click the cropping tool in the toolbox. The Cropping Tool Options appear in the Options palette.

2 Click the Fixed Target Size option.

3 Choose the units of measurement you want from the menus. Note that the Columns option for Width uses the width and gutter sizes specified in the Units Preferences dialog box.

4 Enter values for height and width.

The values determine the height-to-width ratio of the cropping tool marquee. For example, if you specify a width of 2 inches and a height of 1 inch, the width of the cropping tool marquee is twice its height.

5 Enter a resolution.

If you specify a size but not a resolution, Adobe Photoshop changes the image resolution to compensate for the size change. For example, suppose you have a 1-inch by 1-inch image with an image resolution of 100 pixels per inch. You specify a size of 2 inches by 2 inches and do not specify a resolution. The cropped area becomes a 2-inch by 2-inch image with a reduced resolution of 50 pixels per inch.

If you specify a resolution but not a size, Adobe Photoshop changes the size to compensate for the change in resolution. So, if you specify an image resolution of 50 pixels per inch and no size values for a 1-inch by 1-inch image with a resolution of 100 pixels per inch, the cropped area also becomes a 2-inch by 2-inch image with a resolution of 50 pixels per inch. For more information about changing the image resolution, see "Adjusting Image Resolution" on page 185 and "Using the Image Size Command" on page 191.

6 Select the area to be cropped; then click inside the selection.

Adjusting and rotating the cropping tool marquee

In some cases, you might want to adjust the cropping tool marquee or rotate a selection before you crop the image.

To resize the cropping tool marquee:

1 Click the cropping tool in the toolbox, and select the area to be cropped.

2 Position the cropping tool on one of the handles on the marquee. The pointer changes to an arrowhead.

3 Drag until the marquee is the size you want.

To move the marquee to another position:

Hold down the Command key as you drag the handle.

Original position

Marquee repositioned

To rotate the cropped selection:

Hold down the Option key, and drag the handle in a clockwise or counterclockwise direction.

Original position

Rotating the selection counterclockwise

Imaged rotated and cropped

Note: *You can't rotate the cropping tool marquee in a bitmapped image.*

USING THE IMAGE SIZE COMMAND

The Image Size command allows you to resize an image while controlling the image resolution. When you change the resolution of an image, you change the amount of information contained in the image. You can also use the Auto button in the Image Size dialog box to determine a recommended resolution for the image.

Increasing the resolution of an image does not usually improve its quality because adding new data can make an image appear out of focus. Resampling an image up or down several times almost always degrades the image quality. For more information about changing image resolution, see "Adjusting Image Resolution" on page 185.

To change the size of an image:

1 Choose Image Size from the Image menu. The Image Size dialog box appears.

2 Choose the units of measurement you want from the menus. Note that the Columns option for Width uses the width and gutter sizes specified in the Units Preferences dialog box.

3 Select the Constrain options.

- The Proportion option changes the image dimensions without changing the height-to-width ratio. When you enter a new value for the height or width, the program automatically adjusts the other value to maintain the image proportions.
- The File Size option changes the dimensions or resolution of the image without changing the file size; the number of pixels in the image remains the same. When you enter new dimensions or a new resolution, the program automatically adjusts the other parameter so that no information is added to or deleted from the image file (the image is not resampled). If you turn off this option, the resolution value is independent of the width and height values. Increasing the height, width, or resolution increases the number of pixels (resamples up). Decreasing any of the values decreases the number of pixels (resamples down).

Note: *If the unit of measurement is set to pixels, entering a new resolution does not affect the height or width of the image, whether the File Size option is on or off; that is, the total number of pixels does*

not change. In this instance, you resize an image when you change the resolution and resample the image when you change the width and height.

4 Enter the new values for width, height, and resolution.

***Shortcut:** To return to the original values, press the Option key to display the Reset button in place of the Cancel button; then click Reset.*

Each time you change a value, Adobe Photoshop updates the other values to maintain the image's proportions, file size, or both (depending on the constraints you have selected). To make sure that you have enough disk space for the resized image, keep track of the new file size shown above the text boxes.

5 Click OK when you have set the dimensions you want.

Determining the resolution automatically

You use the Auto button in the Image Size dialog box to let Adobe Photoshop determine the resolution for an image for you. The suggested resolution is based on the screen ruling frequency used for printed output.

To determine a suggested resolution for an image:

1 Choose Image Size from the Image menu. The Image Size dialog box appears.

2 Click Auto. The Auto Resolution dialog box appears.

3 Enter the ruling for the output screen in the Screen text box. If necessary, use the menu to change the unit of measure. Note that this value is used only to calculate the image resolution.

***Important:** To specify the halftone screen ruling for printing, you must use the Halftone Screens dialog box, accessed through the Page Setup dialog box. For more information on defining screen rulings, see "Selecting Halftone Screen Attributes" on page 245.*

4 Select a quality option for the output:

- Draft produces a resolution that is the same as the screen frequency (no lower than 72 pixels per inch).
- Good produces a resolution that is one and one-half times the screen frequency.
- Best produces a resolution that is twice the screen frequency.

The recommended resolution is entered automatically in the Image Size dialog box, and the file size is updated.

USING THE CANVAS SIZE COMMAND

The Canvas Size command allows you to add work space, or extra canvas area, around an existing image without changing the dimensions of the image. You increase the canvas area by specifying the height and width you want the canvas to be.

***Note:** Added canvas appears in the background color. If the background is transparent, the added canvas is also transparent.*

You can use the Canvas Size command to crop an image; however, if you want to adjust the size and resolution of an image, you should use the Image Size command or the cropping tool. If you use the Canvas Size command to crop an image, you might inadvertently lose important image information that you cannot recover.

To use the Canvas Size command:

1 Choose Canvas Size from the Image menu. The Canvas Size dialog box appears.

2 Choose the units of measurement you want from the menus. Note that the Columns option for Width uses the width and gutter sizes specified in the Units Preferences dialog box.

3 Enter the dimensions in the Width and Height boxes. The value above the text boxes reflects the new file size.

Shortcut: *To return to the original values, press the Option key to display the Reset button in place of the Cancel button; then click Reset.*

4 Click a square in the Placement box to indicate where you want the image to be positioned in the new canvas area.

5 Click OK.

Chapter

12

COLOR CORRECTION

Chapter 12: Color Correction

Color correction is the process of adjusting tonal and color imbalances in an image. In addition, you can use color correction to alter the contrast or colors of an image.

Adobe Photoshop provides numerous tools both for *tonal correction*—adjusting the brightness and contrast in an image—and for *color correction*—adjusting the color balance in an image. This chapter provides an overview of both processes, and descriptions of all Adobe Photoshop's tonal and color correction tools. For more detailed information on the process of tonal and color correction, see Lesson 7 of the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial.*

For your color corrections to be accurate on-screen, your system (including the scanner, imagesetter, and workstation) must be calibrated properly. See Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System," for complete instructions on calibration.

The following is a suggested procedure for making color corrections. Depending on your image, you might not need to perform each step for every image. For example, you might not need to adjust the midtones after you've corrected the highlights and shadows, or your image might not need both contrast and color adjustments.

COLOR CORRECTION: AN OVERVIEW

1 Calibrate your system (page 27).

2 Check the quality of your scan (page 195).

3 Set the highlight (white) and shadow (black) points in the image (page 207).

4 Make adjustments to the midtones and fine-tune the contrast using Levels (page 204) or Curves (page 207).

5 Correct the color components using Curves (page 207), Hue/Saturation (page 209), Replace Color (page 211), or Selective Color (page 212).

After you color correct your image, sharpen the image using the Unsharp Mask filter. See Lesson 7 of the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial* for more information

CHECKING THE SCAN QUALITY

In some cases, Adobe Photoshop can correct some scanning flaws. As a rule, however, it is always better to capture a high-quality scan rather than correct scanning deficiencies. See "Scanning Images" on page 37 for information on making a scan.

To find out if color information has been lost in the scanning process, you can check the pixel values of your highlight and shadow areas before beginning to make color corrections.

To check the tonal range of the scanned image:

1 Display the Info palette.

2 Move the cursor over the lightest highlight areas that contain detail and the darkest shadow areas that contain detail, and note the values that appear in the Info palette.

The RGB values for the highlight should read about 240, and the values for the shadows should read about 10. A tonal range that encompasses these values contains enough detail to produce good results.

MANAGING OUT-OF GAMUT COLORS

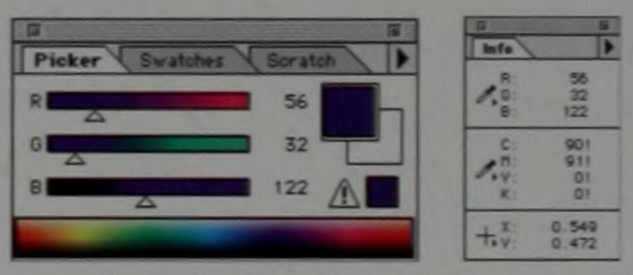
The *gamut* of a color system is the range of colors that can be displayed or printed in that system. An out-of-gamut color in Adobe Photoshop is a color that can be displayed in the RGB or HSB color models but can't be printed, because it has no equivalent in the CMYK model. See "Color Gamuts" on page 9 for more information on color gamuts.

Adobe Photoshop automatically brings all out-of-gamut colors into gamut when you convert an image to CMYK. In some cases, however, you might want to identify the out-gamut-colors in an image or correct them manually before converting to CMYK. Most out-of-gamut colors can be brought into gamut by reducing their saturation.

Because the gamut warning is generated using the current separation table, make sure that you set the Printing Inks values and Separation Setup values before you use these out-of-gamut procedures. For more information on these dialog boxes, see "Enter the Printing Inks Setup Information" on page 31 and "Adjust the Separation Setup Settings or Load a Color Separation Table and Convert the Image" on page 238.

Identifying out-of gamut colors

When you're working in an RGB mode and you select or pass the cursor over an out-of-gamut color, an alert triangle with an exclamation point appears in the Picker palette and in the Color Picker dialog box, and an exclamation point appears next to the CMYK values in the Info palette. The Picker palette and the Color Picker also display the closest CMYK equivalent next to the triangle. To select the CMYK equivalent, click the triangle or the color patch. You can also use the CMYK Preview command in the Mode menu to preview colors in CMYK. See "Previewing CMYK Colors" on page 198 for more information.



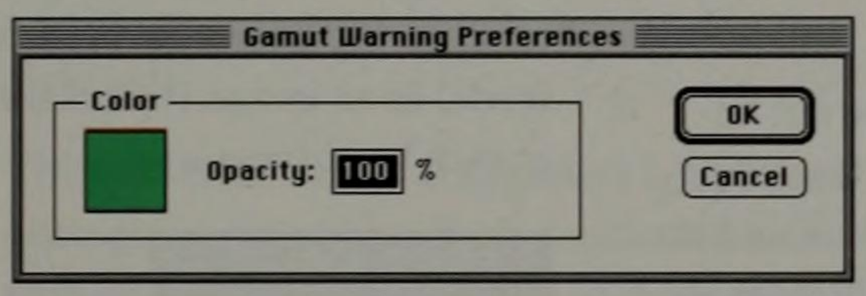
! in palette or dialog box indicates out-of-gamut color

You can also quickly identify all out-of-gamut colors in an RGB image by using the Gamut Warning command.

To display all out-of-gamut colors:

Choose Gamut Warning from the Mode menu.

Adobe Photoshop builds a color conversion table (based on the calibration settings) and identifies the out-of-gamut colors by displaying them as gray. Depending on the colors in your image, you may want to change the gamut warning color using the Gamut Warning Preferences dialog box.



Original image

Previewing out-of-gamut colors in image

Choose the command again to turn off the warning.

To change the gamut warning color:

1 Choose Preferences > Gamut Warning from the File menu.

2 Click the color swatch to display the color picker; then choose a new warning color.

3 Enter a value in the Opacity text box. Values can range from 0 to 100 percent. Use this setting to reveal more or less of the underlying image.

Correcting small out-of-gamut areas

If only a small, contiguous area has been identified as being out of gamut, you can use the sponge tool to bring the color into gamut. If the out-of-gamut area is large, you can turn on the CMYK Preview option and use the Replace Color command to correct the color; or you can use Levels, Curves, Selective Color, or Hue/Saturation to correct the color. See the explanations of individual tools in this chapter for instructions on using each tool. See Lesson 7 of the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial* for step-by-step instructions on correcting color.

To correct a small out-of-gamut area:

1 Make sure Gamut Warning is on and CMYK Preview is off in the Mode menu.

2 Select New Window from the Window menu; then choose CMYK Preview from the Mode menu. This second window lets you to monitor the effect on the CMYK color as you eliminate the gamut warning in the first window.

3 Select a large, soft-edged brush from the Brushes palette.

4 Double-click the dodge/burn/sponge tool to display its palette.

5 Choose Sponge from the Tool menu in the Options palette.

6 Choose Desaturate from the Mode menu, and set a low pressure (between 20 percent and 30 percent) in the Options palette.

7 Zoom in on the area, and apply the sponge.

Make smooth, broad sweeps over the out-of-gamut colors. As the colors become less saturated, they come into the CMYK gamut, and the warning color disappears. Because Photoshop brings the color into gamut during the CMYK conversion, it may not be necessary to eliminate the entire gamut warning to get the results you want. Monitor the CMYK color in the second window; as soon as you are satisfied with the color in this window, save the image. Be careful not to apply the sponge so much that the color becomes muddy or creates streaks in the painted areas.

PREVIEWING CMYK COLORS

When adjusting out-of-gamut colors or making color corrections in RGB mode, you can preview CMYK colors in an RGB image.

To preview CMYK colors:

Choose CMYK Preview from the Mode menu.

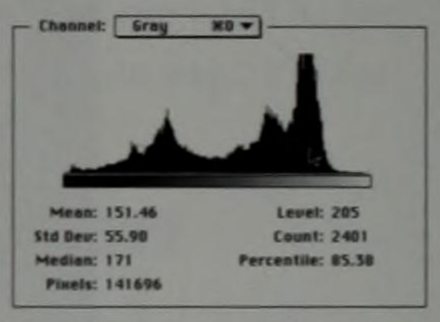
Adobe Photoshop does not perform an actual conversion; instead the program temporarily displays the CMYK equivalent of the colors in the image using the current separation and calibration settings.

Shortcut: *To monitor CMYK colors as you edit in RGB mode, use the New Window command in the Window menu to open a second window. Set CMYK Preview on in one window and off in the other. You can also assign the CMYK Preview command to the Commands palette to enable you to turn it on and off quickly.*

DISPLAYING A HISTOGRAM

A *histogram* is a graphic representation of the tonal distribution (the brightness and darkness levels) in an image. It plots the number of pixels at each brightness level.

CMYK image



Histogram of gray levels in entire image

When you display a histogram of an RGB, a CMYK, or an indexed color image, you can view the gray levels (or brightness levels) of the pixels in the entire image or of the pixels in individual channels. When you display a histogram of any other type of image, Adobe Photoshop plots the color values of the pixels in the target channel.

If part of the image is selected, the histogram is based on the pixels that are at least 50-percent selected. Otherwise, the histogram is based on the entire image.

To display a histogram:

1 Choose Histogram from the Image menu. The Histogram dialog box appears.

The *x*-axis of the histogram represents the color values from darkest (0) at the far left to brightest (255) at the far right; the *y*-axis represents the total number of pixels with that value. A histogram for a dark image shows most of the pixels at the left side of the graph. A histogram for a light image is more heavily weighted to the right side.

The numerical values at the lower left of the Histogram dialog box display statistical information about the color values of the pixels:

- *Mean* is the average brightness value.
- *Standard deviation* (*Std Dev*) represents how widely the values vary.
- *Median* shows the middle value in the range of color values.
- *Pixels* represents the total number of pixels in the image or selected area.

2 For RGB, CMYK, and indexed color images, choose an option from the Channel menu. You can plot either the luminance of all pixels in the image (the Gray option) or the luminance of the pixels in the individual channels.

When you choose Red, Green, or Blue, the bar under the histogram changes to the chosen color.

3 To obtain information about a specific point on the histogram, move the pointer to that point. To obtain information about a range of values, drag to highlight the range.

The values at the lower right of the dialog box change to display the gray level (Level) of the point (from 0 to 255), the total number of pixels at that level (Count), and the percentage of pixels below that level (Percentile).

PREVIEWING COLOR CHANGES

In most cases, when you make color changes to a selection, Adobe Photoshop displays the changes throughout the entire screen. The program is modifying the monitor's color lookup table (LUT) in response to the changes you specify. Video table lookup is controlled by the video card, not by Adobe Photoshop. Color table animation allows faster previewing of color adjustments when you are making changes to an entire image in RGB mode.

When you select the Preview option in one of the color correction dialog boxes, you turn off the color table animation; only the selected area is shown with the color correction. This allows you to accurately see the effect of color corrections on a selected area.

Using the preview feature is also recommended for adjusting images in CMYK or Duotone mode, because color table animation is not accurate in these modes.

Preview is available for all the commands in the Map and Adjust submenus in the Image menu, except the Invert command.

To turn on previewing:

Select the Preview option in the color correction dialog box.

The color table animation is deactivated, and Adobe Photoshop displays the effects of the changes on the current selection only. To turn off previewing and return to color table animation, deselect the Preview option. To turn off color table animation permanently, deselect the Video LUT option in the General Preferences dialog box.

While you use the color adjustment controls, the eyedropper tool is automatically active outside the dialog box; however, you still have access to the scroll controls and the hand and zoom tools when using the keyboard.

Previewing with a 24-bit or 32-bit video card

The color table animation feature can cause problems if you are using a 24-bit or 32-bit video card for which certain color QuickDraw commands have not been properly implemented. If you have a problem, contact your video card manufacturer for ROM updates. You should also reset the video mode, and turn off the Video LUT Animation option in the General Preferences dialog box.

To reset the video mode to preview changes using a 24-bit or 32-bit video card:

1 Close the current dialog box.

2 Choose Control Panels from the Apple menu, and double-click Monitors.

3 Click one of the other color display options (such as 256 Colors), and perform a preview to see the results.

4 Click your original color display option.

5 Close the Control Panel.

6 Choose Preferences > General from the Edit menu.

7 Deselect the Video LUT Animation option in the General Preferences dialog box; then click OK.

Although you will be able to preview changes correctly, you will not be able to turn the color table animation off and on by clicking the Preview option in the dialog box.

Previewing color values

You can use the Picker palette and the Info palette to preview the color values of pixels affected by the color adjustments you're making.

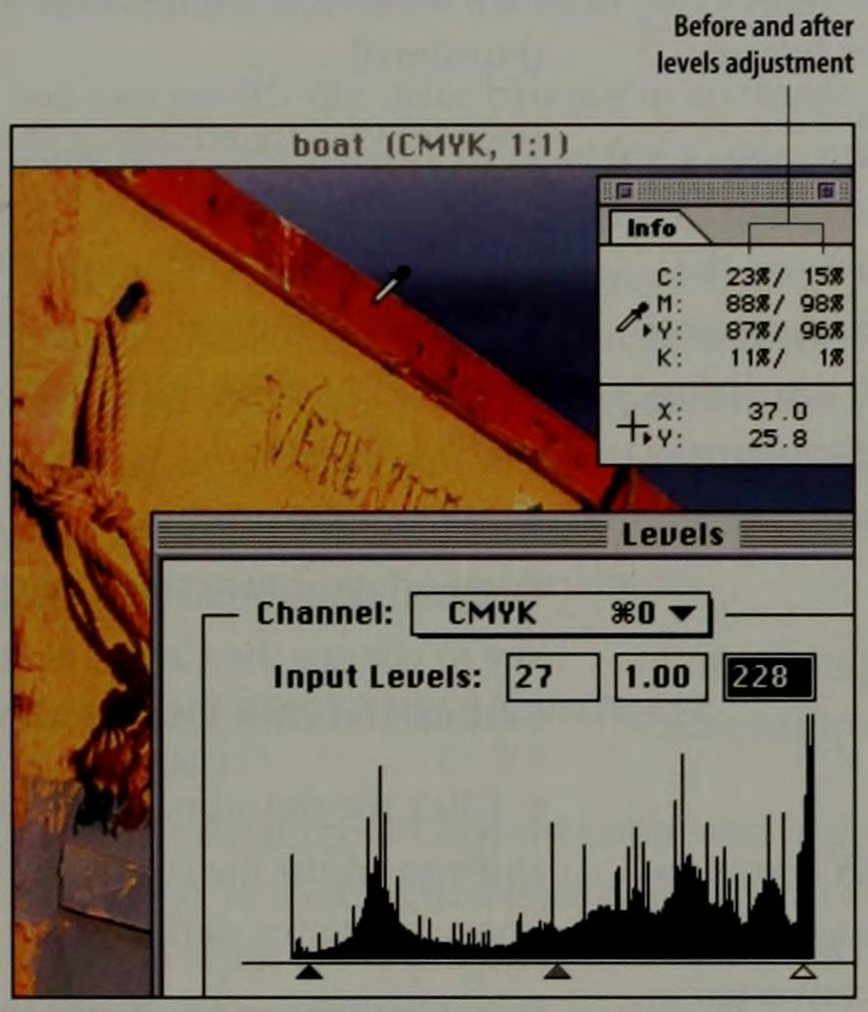
When you are working with one of the color adjustment dialog boxes, the Info palette displays two values. The value in the left column is the original pixel's color value; the value in the right column is the color value after the adjustment is made. See "Adobe Photoshop Color Modes" on page 10 for information on reading pixel values.

To use the Info palette to preview color changes:

1 Choose Palettes > Show Info from the Window menu to display the Info palette. See "Using the Info Palette" on page 21 for information on the Info palette display options.

2 Move the pointer over an area of the image you want to examine. The eyedropper reads the value of a single screen pixel, a 3-by-3 screen pixel area, or a 5-by-5 screen pixel area, depending on the Sample Size option you have chosen in the Eyedropper Options palette.

The Info palette displays the before and after color values at the location under the pointer.



Displaying before and after levels adjustments in the Info palette

To use the Picker palette to preview color values:

1 Choose Palettes > Show Picker from the Window menu to display the Picker palette.

2 Click the pixel you want to preview. The color values of the pixel after the adjustment has been made are shown in the Picker palette.

CANCELLING COLOR CHANGES

To cancel color adjustments without closing a color correction dialog box, Option-click the Cancel button. This resets the adjustment settings to their defaults.

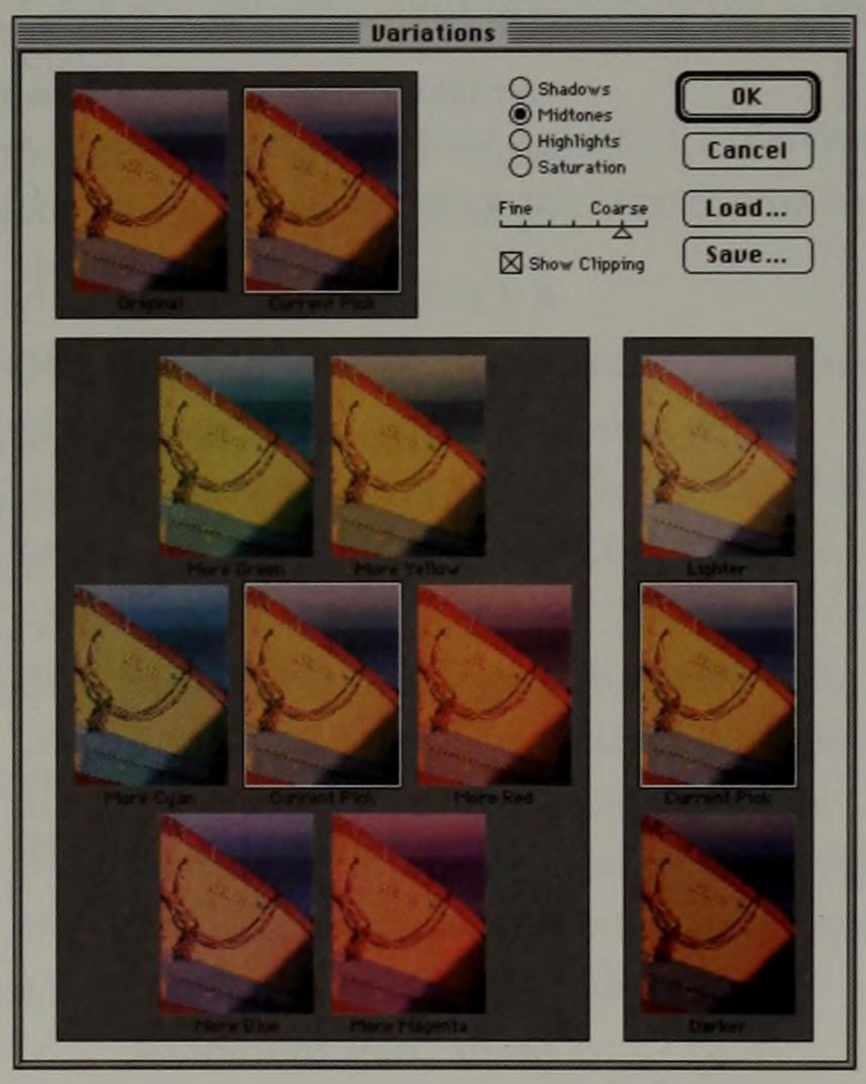
Note: *To be sure that you are working in the desired layer and channel, keep the Layers and Channels palettes open on your desktop as you make color adjustments. The target layer and channel names also appear in the document window title bar.*

USING THE VARIATIONS COMMAND

The Variations command allows you to visually adjust the color balance, contrast, and saturation of an image or selection. You can use this command to focus the color correction on the dark areas, the middle tones, or the light areas of the image. You can also correct the saturation of the colors. This command is most useful when you're working in an average key image that doesn't require precise color adjustments.

To use the Variations command:

1 Choose Adjust > Variations from the Image menu. The Variations dialog box appears.



Note: *If the Variations command does not appear in the Adjust submenu, the Variations plug-in module has not been installed. See the* Adobe Photoshop Getting Started Guide *for information about installing plug-in modules.*

The two thumbnails at the top of the dialog box show the original selection (Original) and the selection with its currently selected adjustments (Current Pick). When you first open the dialog box, these two images are the same. As you make adjustments, the Current Pick image changes to reflect your choices.

2 Select Shadows, Midtones, or Highlights to adjust the dark, middle, or light area of the selection, respectively.

3 Deselect the Show Clipping option if you do not want to see a neon preview of the areas in the image that will be clipped—that is, converted to pure white or pure black when the adjustment is applied. Clipping does not occur when you adjust midtones. Use the Finer or Coarser slider to make the incremental changes smaller or larger. Moving the slider one tick mark to the right or left doubles the increment.

4 Click the thumbnails in the lower-left rectangle to adjust the color balance of the image.

The thumbnails are arranged according to their positions on the color wheel; yellow is at 50 degrees, red is at 0 degrees, magenta is at –30 degrees, and so on. See "The Color Wheel" on page 8 for a description of the color wheel.

You can add or subtract green, yellow, cyan, red, blue, or magenta to the image using one of the following techniques:

- To add a color to the image, click the appropriate color thumbnail.
- To subtract a color, click its opposite, located in the opposite position on the color wheel; for example, to subtract cyan, click the red thumbnail.

Because you are adjusting the overall color balance in the image, each time you click a thumbnail, all of the thumbnails change. Repeatedly clicking a thumbnail incrementally adjusts the image. The center thumbnail always reflects the current choices.

To return to the original image, either click the Original thumbnail or hold down the Option key to change the Cancel button to the Reset button, and click Reset to close the dialog box.

5 Click the thumbnails in the lower right rectangle to adjust the contrast. You can make the image lighter or darker.

Select Saturation to change the degree of hue in the image. You can choose to decrease or increase the saturation. If the Show Clipping option is selected, and the image shows clipping after the adjustment, you have exceeded the maximum saturation for the color.

To save the adjustments, click Save, and give the file a filename extension, such as .psv, that will make the file easy to identify.

To load adjustments you have saved as a file, click Load, locate the settings file, and click OK. The settings appear in the Variations dialog box.

ABOUT ADJUSTING TONAL RANGE AND COLOR BALANCE

You can adjust the brightness and contrast of an image using the Auto Levels, Brightness/Contrast, Levels, and Curves commands. These commands modify the distribution of pixel val-

ues in an image, and allow you to adjust tonal range with increasing degrees of precision. The Curves command offers the most precision.

You can modify the color balance in an image using the Color Balance or Selective Color command or by applying Levels or Curves to the individual channels of a color image. Once again, Curves offers the most precise control over pixel distribution within a channel. The commands Hue/Saturation, Replace Color, and Selective Color offer additional control over specific color components and attributes.

USING THE BRIGHTNESS/CONTRAST COMMAND

Using the Brightness/Contrast command is the easiest way to make generalized adjustments to the tonal range of the image. You cannot work in individual channels with this command.

To use the Brightness/Contrast dialog box:

1 Choose Adjust from the Image menu and Brightness/Contrast from the submenu. The Brightness/Contrast dialog box appears.

2 Drag the sliders to adjust the brightness and contrast.

Drag to the left to decrease the level; drag to the right to increase it. The number at the right of each slider value displays the brightness or contrast value. Values can range from +100 to – 100.

3 When you've finished making adjustments, click OK.

ADJUSTING THE BRIGHTNESS AND CONTRAST AUTOMATICALLY

The Auto Levels command and Auto buttons in the Levels and Curves dialog boxes define the lightest and darkest pixels in each channel as white and black and then redistribute the intermediate pixel values proportionately.

In general, the Auto Levels command and the Auto buttons give good results when a simple contrast adjustment is needed to an image with an average distribution of pixel values throughout the grayscale. Automatic tonal correction redistributes pixel values according to white and black points only and does not provide the more precise control that can be achieved using Levels or Curves.

To set the black and white points automatically:

Choose one of two options:

- Choose Adjust > Auto Levels from the Image menu.
- Open Adjust > Levels or Adjust > Curves from the Image menu, and click the Auto button in the dialog box.

By default, the Auto feature clips the white and black pixels by 0.5 percent—that is, when identifying the lightest and darkest pixels in the image, it ignores the first 5 percent of either extreme.

This ensures that the program bases its white and black values on truly representative light and dark pixels rather than a single extreme pixel value in the image. If you want to change the clipping percentages, Option-click the Auto button in the Levels or Curves dialog box.

To change the amount that the white and black values are clipped:

1 Option-click the Auto button. The Auto Range Options dialog box appears.

2 Enter the percentage of extreme highlight and extreme shadow pixels you want the Auto feature to ignore; then click OK. A value between 5 percent and 10 percent is recommend.

SETTINGTHE HIGHLIGHTS, SHADOWS, AND MIDTONES USING TARGET VALUES

As an alternative to using the Auto feature described in the previous section, the Levels and Curves dialog boxes include options that enable you to indicate the pixels in the image that you want to represent the darkest and brightest points, that is, the end points of the color value scale.

In addition you can use the gray eyedropper button in the Levels or Curves dialog box to set the intermediate points along the grayscale and eliminate color casts in the midtones. For precise control over midtone adjustments, however, it is recommended that you adjust the Levels gamma slider or use Curves.

The section describes how to use the eyedropper buttons in the Levels and Curves dialog boxes. See Lesson 7 of the *Adobe Photoshop Tutorial* for a complete description of setting the highlights and shadows.

To set the highlight, shadow, or midpoint:

1 Double-click the eyedropper tool to display the Eyedropper Options palette and select 3 x 3 Average from the Sample Size pop-up menu.

This enables you to make adjustments based on a true sample of the area you click rather than an individual screen pixel value.

2 Choose Adjust > Levels or Adjust > Curves from the Image menu, and double-click the white eyedropper button to set the highlights, the black eyedropper button to set the shadows, or the gray eyedropper button to set the midtones.

3 Enter the target value you want to use in the color picker. The value should be a neutral, printable value.

4 Click the point in the image you want to define the highlight, shadow, or midtone.

The pixels in the area you click are mapped to the new value, and the other pixels in the image are redistributed proportionately. Before finalizing the setting, check the Info palette to see the before and after values so you can gauge how much clipping will take place.

USING THE LEVELS SLIDERS

The Levels sliders enable you to make gradual adjustments to the brightness, contrast, and *gamma* in an image. Gamma measures the contrast that affects the midlevel grays (midtones) of an image. Adjusting the gamma lets you change the brightness values of the middle range of gray tones without dramatically altering the shadows and highlights.

See the previous section, "Setting the Highlights, Shadows, and Midtones Using Target Values," for information on using the eyedropper buttons in the Levels dialog box.

To use the Levels sliders:

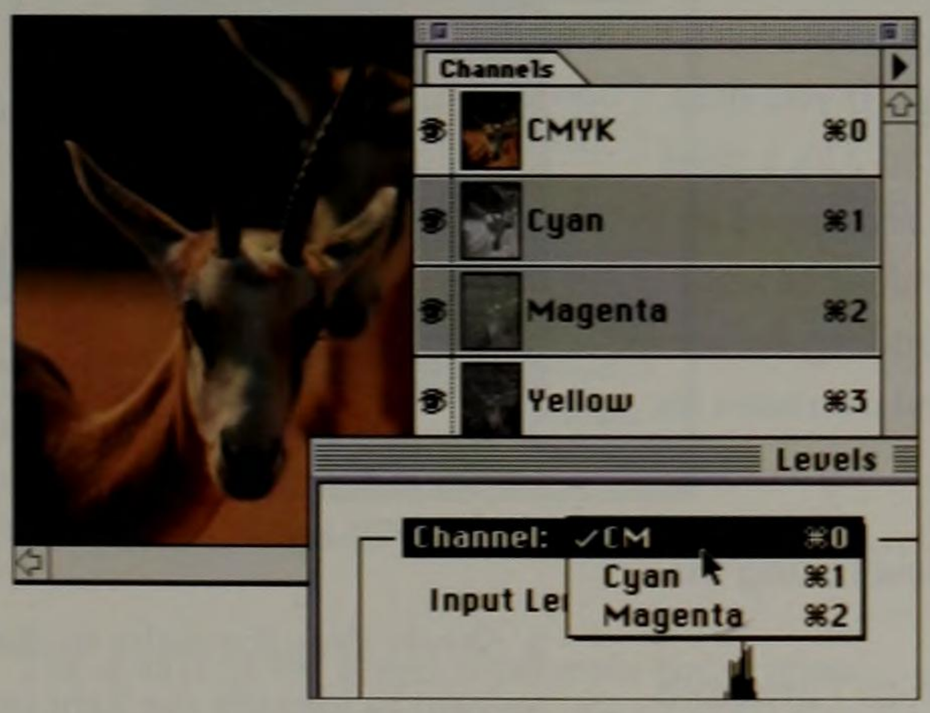
1 Choose Adjust > Levels from the Image menu. The Levels dialog box appears.

This dialog box displays a histogram of the image. The histogram plots the brightness values versus the number of pixels at each level. The darkest pixels appear at the left; the brightest pixels appear at the right. Input Levels shows the current values; Output Levels indicates the desired output values.

2 If you're working in an image with more than one color channel, choose the channel (or channels) you want to adjust from the Channel menu.

You can adjust the composite channel or each color channel individually.

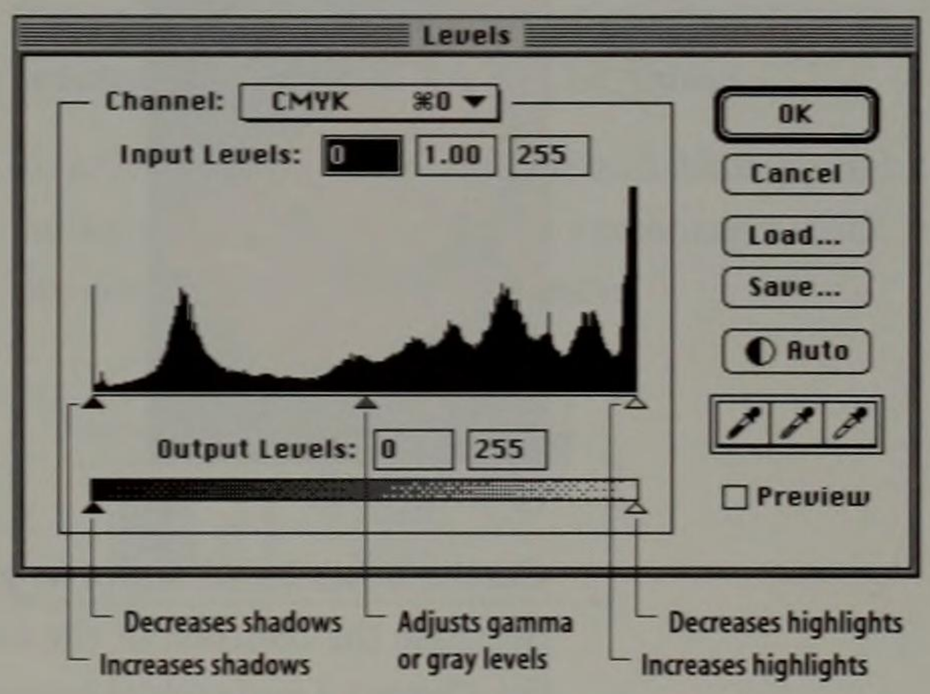
To edit a combinations of color channels at the same time, Shift-select the channels in the Channels palette before choosing the Levels command. The Channel menu in the Curves dialog box then displays the abbreviations for the target channels, for example, CM when the cyan and magenta channels are selected. The menu also contains the individual channels for the selected combination.



For more information on choosing channels, see "Using the Channels Palette" on page 148.

3 Adjust the contrast:

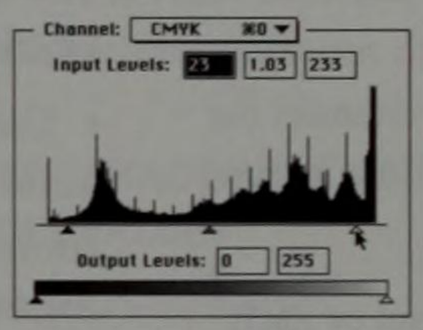
- Use the Input Levels slider controls directly below the histogram to increase the contrast in the image. The black triangle controls the shadows, the gray triangle controls the gamma, and the white triangle controls the highlights. You can also enter values directly into the Input Levels text boxes.
- Use the Output Levels slider controls at the bottom of the Levels dialog box to reduce the contrast in the image. The black triangle controls the shadows, and the white triangle controls the highlights. You can also enter the values directly into the Output Levels text boxes.



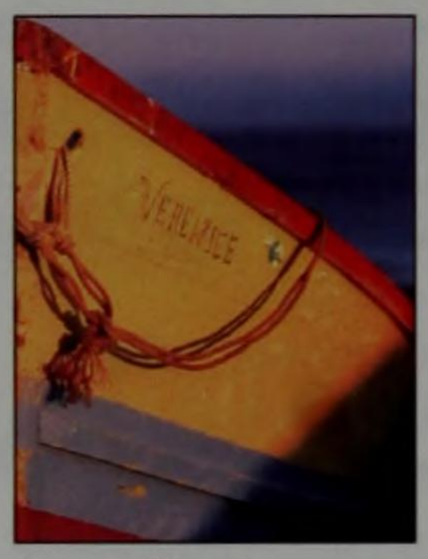
For example, suppose your image contains pixels that cover the entire 0-to-255 scale, and you want to increase the contrast in the image. If you drag the Input Levels black triangle to 36, pixels with brightness values of 36 (in each channel of the image) are mapped to 0, and pixels with higher

brightness values are mapped to corresponding darker values. This darkens the image and increases the contrast in the shadow areas.

Original image



Contrast increased in Levels



Corrected image

On the other hand, suppose you want to decrease the contrast of the image. If you drag the Output Levels white triangle to 220, a pixel with a brightness value of 255 is remapped to 220, and pixels with brightness values of less than 255 are lowered to corresponding darker values. This darkens the image and decreases the contrast in the highlight areas.

Identifying highlights and shadows using the Threshold mode

You can use the Levels dialog box in Threshold mode to find the highlight and shadow areas in your image and to preview what areas will be clipped (that is, will contain pure white and pure black when you change the Levels controls) in RGB and grayscale images. This feature is also useful when you're adjusting individual channels.

Note: *The Preview option in the Levels dialog box must be deselected for you to use Threshold mode.*

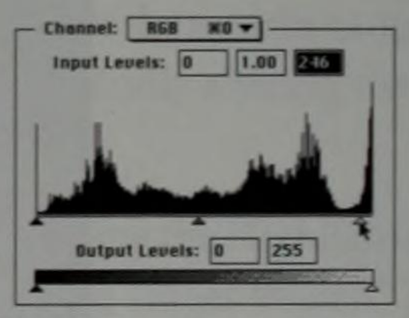
To use Threshold mode:

1 Choose Adjust > Levels from the Image menu. Make sure that the Preview option is deselected.

2 Hold down the Option key, and select the white or black Input Levels triangle.

The image changes to Threshold mode, and a high-contrast preview image appears. The visible areas of the image indicate the lightest parts of the image if you are selecting the white slider and the darkest parts of the image if you are selecting the black slider. If you have a channel of a color image selected in the Levels dialog box, the black area indicates where none of the given color component exists.

To see a high-contrast preview of highlight or shadow areas . . .



hold down the Option key and move the Input Levels triangle.

3 Slowly drag the slider to the center of the histogram to identify the light or dark areas in the image, respectively.

You can save and reuse the color corrections you make to input and output levels, and to black and white points, using the Save and Load buttons in the Levels or Curves dialog box.

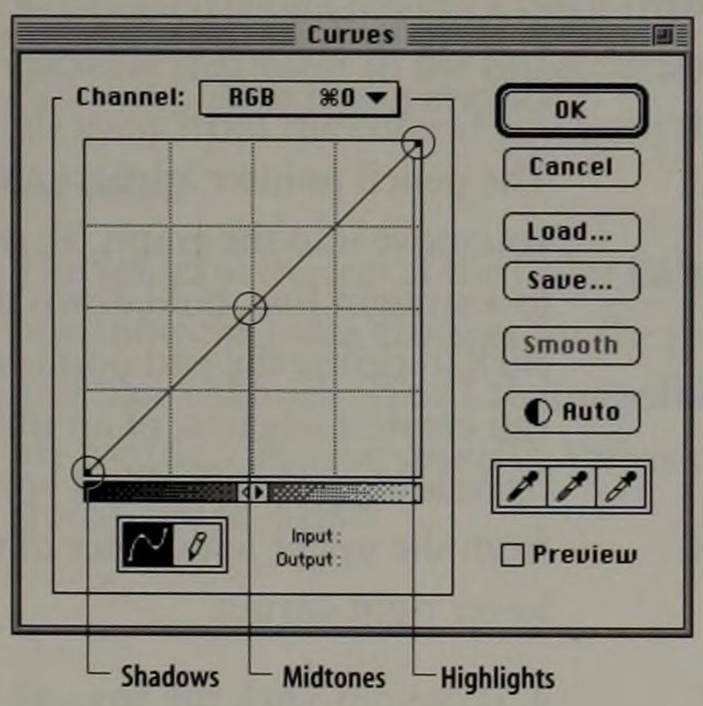
USING THE CURVES DIALOG BOX

Like the Levels dialog box, the Curves dialog box lets you adjust the tonal range of an image. However, instead of making the adjustments using just three variables (highlights, shadows, and gamma), you can adjust any point along the gray-level scale while keeping up to 15 other values constant.

See "Setting the Highlights, Shadows, and Midtones Using Target Values" on page 204 for information on using the eyedropper buttons in the Curves dialog box.

To use the Curves dialog box:

1 Choose Adjust > Curves from the Image menu. The Curves dialog box appears.

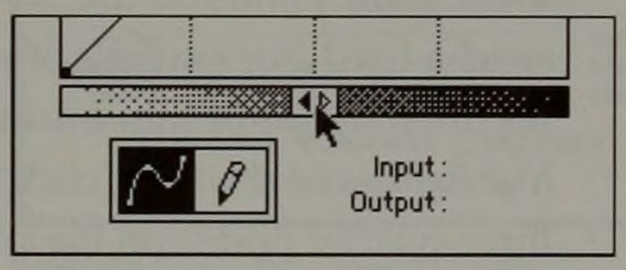


The *x*-axis of the graph represents the original brightness values of the pixels (input levels); the *y*-axis represents the new brightness values (output levels). The diagonal line that appears by default shows the current relationship between the input and output values: no pixels have been mapped to new values, therefore all pixels have the identical input and output values.

By default in RGB mode, the curve moves from shadows on the left (black with a value of 0)to highlights on the right (white with a value of 255), and the input and output values match RGB brightness values. Each tick mark represents approximately 64 steps on the scale.

If you're working in CMYK mode, the curve moves from highlights on the left (0 percent) to shadows on the right (100 percent). Each tick mark represents approximately 25 percent on the scale. The input and output values appear as percentages to match the CMYK values.

To reverse the curve at any time and display pixel values as brightness values or percentages, click the double arrow below the curve.



2 Choose the channel (or channels) you want to adjust from the Channel menu. As with the Levels dialog box, if you're working in an RGB, a CMYK, or an indexed color image, you can adjust the composite channel or each channel color individually.

To edit a combination of color channels at the same time, Shift-select the channels in the Channels palette before choosing the Curves command. The Channel menu in the Curves dialog box then displays the abbreviations for the target channels, for example, CG when the cyan and green channels are selected. The menu also contains the individual channels for the selected combination. For more information about choosing channels, see "Using the Channels Palette" on page 148.

3 Hold down the mouse button, and move the pointer to the area of the image that you want to adjust.

A circle appears to mark the pixel's position on the graph, and the output and input values are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box. This step identifies the portion of the curve you want to adjust.

4 Click any points on the curve you want to remain fixed. For example, if you want to adjust the midtones while minimizing the effect on the highlights and shadows, click the quarter and three-quarter points on the curve.

You can add up to 15 points to the curve to lock those values as you make adjustments. To remove a fixed point from the curve, drag it off the graph.

5 Drag the curve until the image looks as you want it.

One of the most common tonal adjustments results in an S-curve (or an inverted S-curve if the Curves dialog box is in RGB mode). This curve increases the contrast in an image.

Another common adjustment is that made to the curve of an overexposed original where detail is lacking in the highlights and quartertones. This curve darkens the image and allocates a wider range of tones to the highlights.

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Curves dialog box to save curves and use them with other Adobe Photoshop documents.

Using the Arbitrary Map option

The Arbitrary Map option in the Curves dialog box lets you draw the tonal curve by dragging a pencil in the Curves graph area. You can use this feature to achieve a variety of interesting tonal and color effects.

To use the Arbitrary Map option:

1 Choose Adjust > Curves from the Image menu. The Curves dialog box appears.

2 Click the pencil icon at the bottom of the Curves dialog box.

3 Drag to draw the curve you want in the Curves graph area.

The pencil pointer appears automatically when you move into the graph. To constrain the curve to a straight line, hold down the Shift key and click to define the end points of the curve. You can create a negative of an image, for example, by holding down the Shift key and dragging from the upper left corner of the graph to the lower right corner.

4 If desired, click the Smooth button to smooth the curve you've drawn.

USING THE COLOR BALANCE COMMAND

The Color Balance command enables you to change the mixture of colors in a color image. Like the Brightness/Contrast command, this tool is intended to provide generalized color correction. For precise control over individual color components, use Levels or Curves or one of the specialized color correction tools: Hue/Saturation, Replace Color, or Selective Color.

Note: *You must be viewing the composite channel to use the Color Balance command.*

To adjust the levels of a particular color in an image:

1 Choose Adjust > Color Balance from the Image menu. The Color Balance dialog box appears.

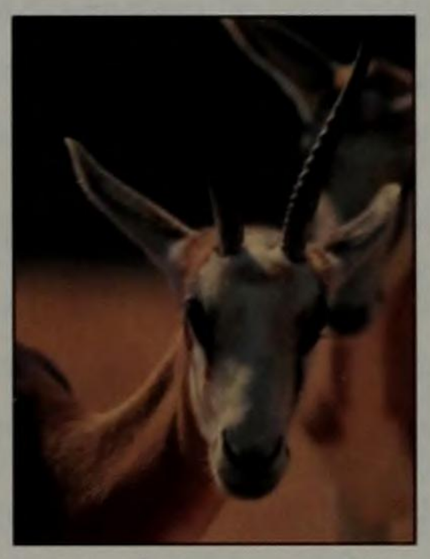
2 Click Shadows, Midtones, or Highlights to select the part of the selection on which you want to focus the changes.

3 Drag a triangle toward a color if you want to increase that color in the image; drag the triangle away from the color if you want to decrease the color.

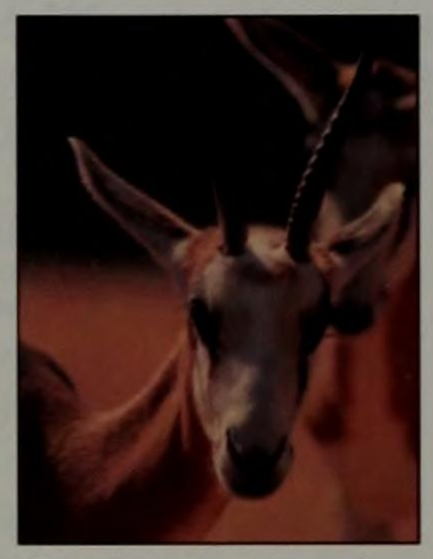
The values at the top of the Color Balance dialog box show the color changes for the red, green, and blue channels. (For Lab images the values, are for the *a* and *b* channels). Values can range from –100 to +100.

4 Click Preserve Luminosity if you want to prevent changes from changing the brightness values in the image as well as changing the color. This option maintains the tonal balance in the image.

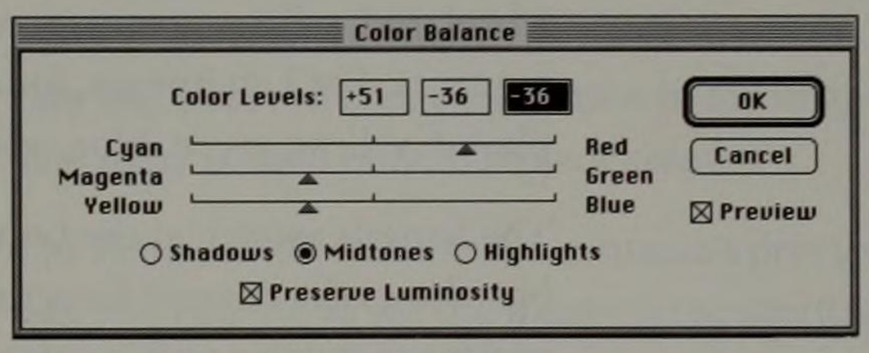
The following illustrations show the effects of adjusting the cyan/red level in the midtones.



Original image: greenish cast



Color balance adjusted in midtones



Midtone values for corrected image

USING THE HUE /SATURATION COMMAND

The Hue/Saturation command lets you adjust the hue, saturation, and lightness of individual color components in an image.

Hue is color; saturation is the purity of the color. Using this command, you can change the overall color of the image or of objects in the image. For example, by adjusting the hue, you can compensate for shifts in color that occur in an NTSC image (a television or video image) that is acquired using a video frame grabber.

See "Color Basics" on page 7 for more information on the Hue, Saturation, and Brightness (HSB) color model and on the color wheel.

To use the Hue/Saturation dialog box:

1 Choose Adjust from the Image menu and Hue/Saturation from the submenu. The Hue/Saturation dialog box appears.

Along the left side of the dialog box are six color swatches of the additive and subtractive colors in the order in which they appear on the color wheel: red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, and magenta. For Lab images, four swatches are displayed: yellow, green, blue, and red.

The Sample swatch at the bottom of the dialog box shows the current foreground color. To replace that color with a color from the image, use the eyedropper to sample the color. The color swatches (including the sample swatch) change as you make color adjustments.

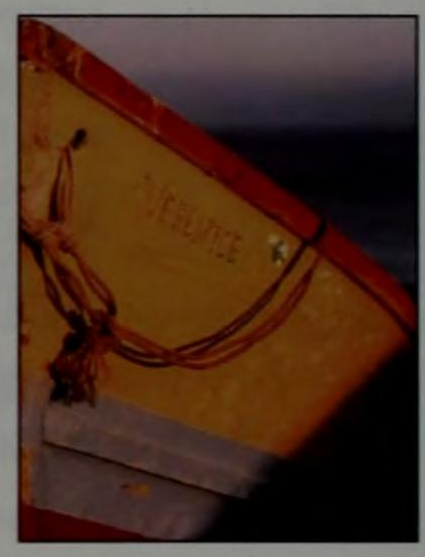
2 Click the button next to the color component you want to adjust, or click Master to adjust all colors at once.

3 Drag the Hue slider until the colors appear the way you want them. You can also type a value into the Hue text box.

The values displayed in the text box reflect the number of degrees of rotation around the wheel from the pixel's original color. A positive value indicates a clockwise rotation; a negative value indicates a counterclockwise rotation.

4 Drag the Saturation triangle to the right to increase the saturation; drag to the left to decrease the saturation. This shifts the color away from or toward the center of the color wheel, relative to the beginning color values of the selected pixels.

Original image



Saturation: –40

5 Drag the Lightness slider to the right to increase the lightness; drag to the left to decrease the lightness. Values can range from +100 to –100.

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Hue/Saturation dialog box to save your color correction settings and use them with other Adobe Photoshop documents.

Using the Colorize option

The Colorize option in the Hue/Saturation dialog box enables you to tint an image or part of an image to a specified solid shade by typing in a hue value. This process differs from the standard operation in which the hue and saturation changes are based on the existing values of the pixels.

When you choose Colorize, all colors in the image are reset to the 0-degree point on the color wheel (red) with a saturation of 100 percent. The rotation value you specify using the hue slider is measured from that point of origin.

For example, if you drag the hue triangle until –90 degrees is displayed, the image takes on a purple cast, because this is the color located 90 degrees in the clockwise direction from red.

Saturation

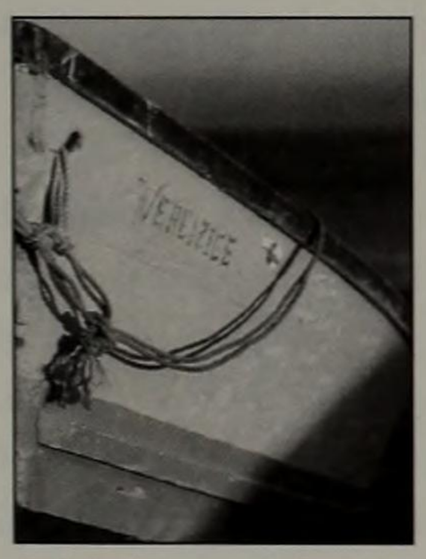
To use the Colorize option:

1 Choose Adjust from the Image menu and Hue/Saturation from the submenu. The Hue/Saturation dialog box appears.

2 Click Colorize. The image appears as red, the starting point for the hue adjustment.

3 Use the Hue slider to select the new color.

Use the Saturation and Lightness sliders to adjust the saturation and lightness of the pixels; then click OK.



Original grayscale image

Hue:+140; Saturation: 50; Colorize option

Note: *Because the Colorize option preserves the lightness value of each pixel, pure black and pure white are not colored, while the middle gray pixels are colored completely. If you want to color the black and white pixels, you must first adjust the lightness slider.*

USING THE DESATURATE COMMAND

Choose the Desaturate command to change the saturation of all colors to 0, that is, to convert all colors to their grayscale equivalent. This command enables you to quickly convert colors to gray without changing modes.

USING THE REPLACE COLOR COMMAND

The Replace Color command lets you create a mask based on specific colors and then adjust the hue, saturation, and lightness values to correct the color. Unlike that created with the Color Mask command, however, the mask is temporary and does not create a selection in the image. The mask is used only to replace color.

The Replace Color dialog box contains a preview box you can use to see the mask you're creating or to see a copy of the entire image. In most cases, you will want to leave the preview set to Selection so you can view the mask as you build it.

Change the preview box to Image when you want to add to the mask but the area you want to select is not visible in the original image. For example, you might not be able to see the entire image when you're working in a magnified view or when the dialog box is covering part of the document window. Reselect the Mask option to see the effect of any changes to the mask.

Note: *Press Control to switch between Selection and Image preview.*

To adjust and replace a color:

1 Choose Adjust > Replace Color from the Image menu. The Replace Color dialog box appears.

2 Use the eyedropper to click the image or the preview box to select colors for the mask.

When the preview box is set to Selection, the mask appears in the preview box. Masked areas appear black; partially masked areas (that is, areas covered with a semitransparent mask) appear as varying levels of gray according to their opacity.

3 Adjust the tolerance of the mask by using the slider or entering a value in the Fuzziness text box. Like the Tolerance option for the magic wand and paint bucket tools, this option controls the degree to which related colors are included in the selection.

4 Use the plus and minus eyedroppers in the Replace Color dialog box to add or delete colors from the mask. You can use these eyedroppers in the preview box or in the document window.

Shortcut: *If the eyedropper is selected, you can hold down the Shift key to add to the selection and the Command key to delete from the selection.*

5 Drag the hue, saturation, and lightness sliders (or enter values in the text boxes) to change the color.

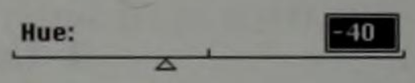
See "Using the Hue/Saturation Command" on page 209 for information on each of these color components.

6 Click OK to replace the color.

Color selected

Selection in Replace Color dialog box

Color adjusted . . .



using the Hue slider in the Replace Color dialog box

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Replace Color dialog box to save the color adjustments for use in other documents.

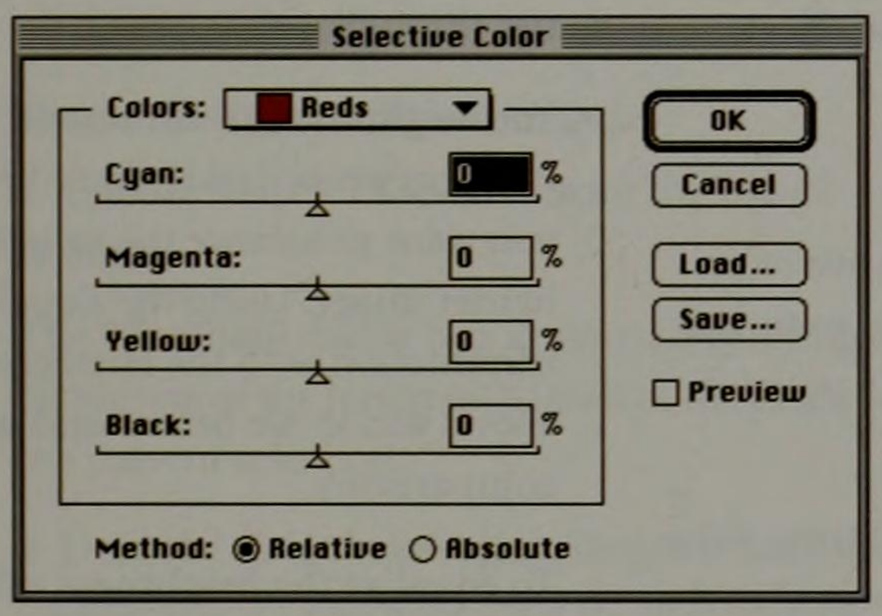
USING THE SELECTIVE COLOR COMMAND

Adobe Photoshop lets you color correct by using a technique performed by high-end scanners called *selective color correction*. Selective color correction lets you modify colors by changing the amount of ink used to make a specific color. For example, you can make grass greener by increasing the amount of cyan by 10 percent or remove 5 percent yellow from a red to move the color toward purple.

Note: *You must be viewing the composite channel to use the Selective Color command.*

To use the Selective Color command:

1 Choose Adjust > Selective Color from the Image menu. The Selective Color dialog box appears.



2 Choose the color you want to adjust from the Colors menu. The color sets are the primary additive and subtractive colors plus whites, neutrals, and blacks.

3 Select a correction method:

- Relative adjusts the existing CMYK values. For example, if you start with a pixel that is 50 percent magenta and add 10 percent, 5 percent is added to the magenta (10% of 50% = 5%) for a total of 55 percent.

Note that you cannot adjust pure black or pure white using the Relative option because they contain no existing color components.

- Absolute adjusts the color in absolute values. For example if you start with a pixel that is 50 percent magenta and add 10 percent, the magenta ink is set to a total of 60 percent.

4 Drag the sliders to increase or decrease the components in the selected color.

You can save and then reuse a set of colors created using the Selective Color command. Click the Save button to create a file of the color settings. Click Load to use the file.

APPLYING COLOR CORRECTIONS TO MULTIPLE IMAGES

In a production environment, you might need to scan a large number of images and apply the same set of color corrections to all of them. You can do this using a keyboard enhancement program or using the Save and Load buttons in the Adobe Photoshop color correction dialog boxes.

Keyboard enhancement programs, such as QuicKeys™, allow you to record the keystrokes for your first set of corrections and play the keystrokes back for subsequent images. The playback is dependent on the sophistication of the keyboard enhancement program.

The Save and Load buttons in the Levels, Curves, Selective Color, Replace Color, Hue/Saturation, and Variations dialog boxes let you save the color corrections you make using those dialog boxes and apply the corrections to other images.

To apply color corrections to other images:

1 Save your color corrections using the Save button in the color correction dialog box you are using. A dialog box appears so you can name the file.

2 Close the color correction dialog box.

3 Open the image to which you want to apply the corrections.

4 Open the color correction dialog box you used in step 1.

5 Use the Load button to locate and load the appropriate color correction file.

6 Click OK to apply the corrections to the image.

USING THE MAP COMMANDS

The commands in the Map submenu (Invert, Equalize, Threshold, and Posterize) also change the colors or brightness values in an image. In most cases, these commands provide a dramatic overall effect that is applied to the selected layer. These commands are typically used for color enhancement and to produce special effects, rather than for color correction.

Using the Invert command

The Invert command creates a negative of an image. You might use this command to turn a positive into a negative or to create a positive image from a scanned negative.

When you invert an image, the brightness value of each pixel in the channels is converted to the inverse value on the 256-step color values scale. For example, a pixel in a positive image with a value of 255 is changed to 0, and a pixel with a value of 5 is changed to 250.

To invert an image:

Choose Map > Invert from the Image menu.

Original image

Invert command applied

Using the Equalize command

The Equalize command redistributes the brightness values of the pixels in an image so that they more evenly represent the entire range of brightness levels. When you choose this command, Adobe Photoshop finds the brightest and darkest values in the image and averages all the brightness values so that the darkest value represents black (or as close to it as possible) and the brightest value represents white. Photoshop then attempts to equalize the brightness—that is, to evenly distribute the intermediate pixel values throughout the grayscale.

You might use this command when a scanned image appears darker than the original and you want to balance the values to produce a lighter image. Using the Equalize command in conjunction with the Histogram command allows you to see before-and-after brightness comparisons.

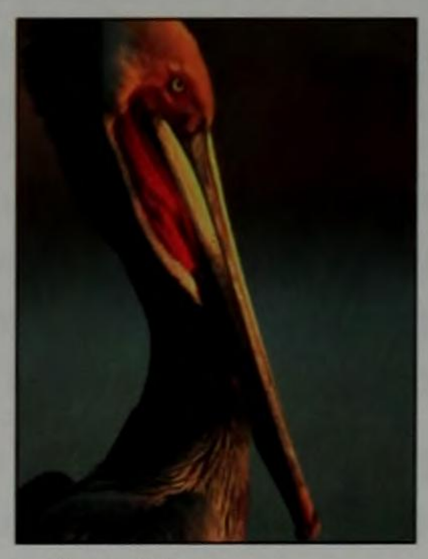
To equalize the brightness values of pixels:

1 Choose Map > Equalize from the Image menu.

If you have an area of the image selected, the Equalize dialog box appears.

- Click Selected Area Only to equalize only the pixels in the selection.
- Click Entire Image Based on Area to equalize the pixels in the entire image based on the pixels in the selected area.

2 Click OK to equalize the image or the selection.



Original image

Equalize command applied

Using the Threshold command

Use the Threshold command to convert grayscale or color images to high-contrast black-and-white images. This command enables you to specify a certain level as a threshold. All pixels lighter than the threshold are converted to white. All pixels darker than the threshold are converted to black.

To use the Threshold command:

1 Choose Map > Threshold from the Image menu.

The Threshold dialog box appears, displaying a histogram of the luminance levels of the pixels in the current selection.

2 Drag the slider below the histogram until the threshold level you want appears at the top of the dialog box. As you drag, the image changes to reflect the new threshold setting.

Original image

Threshold command applied: 70

Using the Posterize command

The Posterize command lets you specify the number of tonal levels (or brightness values) for an image and then maps pixels to the level that is the closest match. This command is useful for creating special effects, such as large, flat areas in a photograph. The effects of this command are most evident when you reduce the number of gray levels in a grayscale image; however, you can also use this command to produce some interesting effects in color images.

To specify the number of levels in an image:

1 Choose Map > Posterize from the Image menu. The Posterize dialog box appears.

2 Enter the number of levels you want; then click OK.

3 When you've finished making adjustments, click OK.

Original image

Posterize command applied: 4 levels of color

Chapter

13

CONVERTING IMAGES

Chapter 13: Converting Images

Adobe Photoshop supports a variety of image types, including bitmapped, grayscale, duotone (including monotone, tritone, and quadtone), indexed color, RGB, CMYK, and Lab color.

This chapter discusses image types and how images are converted from one type to another. The second part of the chapter provides detailed information on working with duotone images.

ABOUT CHANNELS AND IMAGE TYPES

Every Adobe Photoshop image contains one or more *channels* that represent information about the color elements in the image. For example, a CMYK image has at least four channels: one for cyan information, one for magenta information, one for yellow information, and one for black information. In this sense, a channel is analogous to a plate in the printing process. In addition, extra channels can be added to an image for storing and editing masks; these additional channels are sometimes called *alpha channels*.

See "Working with Channels" on page 147, and "Using the Channels Palette" on page 148 for information on displaying, duplicating, and editing channels. See "Saving a Selection in a Channel" on page 155 for information on using the channels to store and edit selections.

A document can have up to 24 channels. By default, bitmapped, grayscale, duotone, and indexed color images have one channel; RGB and Lab mode images contain three channels; and CMYK images contain four channels. You can add channels to all image types except bitmapped images. Other distinctions are shown in the chart on the next page.

WORKING WITH RGB AND CMYK IMAGES

Both RGB and CMYK image types let you display and edit a composite of the various image channels. However, because computer monitors are RGB devices, CMYK colors must be temporarily converted to RGB values to be displayed on-screen.

You can use the CMYK Composites options in the General Preferences dialog box to determine whether the actual values or an interpolation of the values is displayed for a CMYK image. The Faster option interpolates the RGB values from a lookup table and is almost as fast as the normal RGB mode; however, it can produce some banding and imperfections in the screen display, especially in process color blends. The Smoother option uses a more complex lookup table which produces a smooth representation of the color values for each pixel but requires more time to display the image.

Image Types and Channels

Bitmap 4K

Bitmapped images are made up of one bit of color (black or white) per pixel and require the least amount of memory. Because few editing options are available in Bitmap mode, it is usually best to convert the image to Grayscale mode and then back to Bitmap mode if necessary for export.

Grayscale 22K

Grayscale images are made up of 8 bits of information per pixel and use 0–255 shades of gray to simulate gradations in color. Grayscale mode is used for converting high-quality black-and-white images to and from color images. You can add new channels to a Grayscale-mode image.

Duotone 22K

Duotone mode is used for monotones, duotones, tritones, and quadtones. These images are grayscale, single-channel images with 8 bits per pixel. Monotones reproduce gray using one nonblack ink, duotones use two inks, tritones use three inks, and quadtones use four inks.

Indexed color 22K

Indexed color images are single-channel images (8 bits per pixel) that use a color lookup table containing 256 colors. These images are useful for editing the color table or creating a limited palette for export, for example, to multimedia applications. Limited editing is available in this mode; for extensive editing you should convert temporarily to RGB mode.

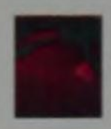
RGB color 64K

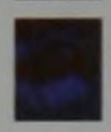
RGB images use three colors to reproduce up to 16.7 million colors on-screen. RGB mode is used for most color images and by most scanners, and is generally the mode used for color editing and painting in Photoshop. RGB images are three-channel images, so they contain 24 (8 x 3) bits per pixel.

CMYK color 84K

CMYK images consist of the four colors used to print color separations. They are four-channel images, containing 32 (8 x 4) bits per pixel. CMYK mode allows you to work directly with CMYK images that have been scanned or imported from high-end systems.

Lab color 64K





Lab images use three components to represent color. They are three-channel images containing 24 (8 x 3) bits per pixel. Lab mode is useful when you want to edit a pixel's luminance but not its color values. Lab mode produces device-independent color and is recommended for moving images between systems or printing to a PostScript Level 2 printer.

Multichannel 43K

Adding a channel to a grayscale image creates a multichannel image. Multichannel images have 8 bits per pixel, and are used for specialized printing purposes, such as printing a grayscale image with spot color or converting a duotone-mode image for printing in Scitex CT format.

If you are working with CMYK images, such as those imported from Adobe Illustrator or from a Scitex system, you may want to import and edit the images directly in CMYK mode. You can then keep the initial color information in the image intact. Working with images in CMYK mode also prevents the use of RGB colors that are out of gamut, that is, RGB colors that have no CMYK equivalent and cannot be printed.

In general, it's not a good idea to convert between RGB and CMYK modes multiple times, since each time the image is converted, the color values must be recalculated, resulting in less accurate colors. For more information on how Adobe Photoshop converts images to CMYK mode, see "Converting to CMYK" on page 225, "How the Adobe Photoshop Color Calibration Tools Work" on page 27, and "Adjusting the Black Generation and Separation Type" on page 239.

WORKING WITH LAB IMAGES

L*a*b* is a color model developed by the Centre Internationale d'Eclairage (CIE), an international organization that established specifications for measuring color in 1931. These specifications are internationally accepted standards for all colorimetric measurements. The Lab model, like other CIE color models, defines color values mathematically, in a way that is device independent. This means that Lab colors do not vary with different, properly calibrated monitors or printers. For more information on Lab color, see "Lab Mode" on page 9.

Because the Lab *gamut*, or range of colors, encompasses both RGB and CMYK gamuts, Lab is used internally by Adobe Photoshop when converting images between RGB and CMYK modes. (See "Converting to CMYK" on page 225 for more information.) Lab color is also the recommended color mode for moving images between systems and for printing to PostScript Level 2 printers. To print Lab images to other color PostScript devices, convert the images to CMYK before printing.

Because it separates the luminance from the color, Lab mode is useful when you want to edit color values and lightness separately. You can also edit and display Lab images in a composite image channel.

COLOR DISPLAY OPTIONS FOR 8-BIT COLOR DISPLAYS

Each image type in Adobe Photoshop uses a different *color lookup table*, or *color palette*, to store the colors used in the image. When you're working with a display system that supports 8-bit color (or fewer colors), the video card displays only 256 different colors at one time. For example, the palette for a grayscale document consists of 256 shades of gray, but the palette for an image that contains mostly shades of blue is weighted toward the color blue. Adobe Photoshop uses a technique called *dithering* (or the adjusting of adjacent pixels of different colors to give the illusion of a third color) to simulate the display of colors that are not in the current color palette.

The Use Diffusion Dither and Use System Palette options in the General Preferences dialog box determine how Photoshop displays colors in active and inactive documents.

To select a color display option:

1 Choose Preferences > General from the File menu. The General Preferences dialog box appears.

2 Choose one of the two following options:

• Select Use System Palette to make the display of inactive documents more accurate.

By default, Adobe Photoshop uses pattern dithering, to display colors not in the current color palette, which can result in a distinctive pattern of darker or lighter areas in the image. You can choose to use *diffusion dithering* instead. Diffusion dithering spreads out the inaccuracy in representing a pixel's color to the surrounding pixels and eliminates distinctive patterning. Diffusion dithering, however, can cause visual inconsistencies by showing the boundaries when only part of a screen is redrawn (for example, when you scroll, edit, or paint).

• Select the Use Diffusion Dither option to minimize diffusion patterns produced by dithering.

Diffusion dithering spreads out the inaccuracy in representing a pixel's color to the surrounding pixels and eliminates distinctive patterning. Diffusion dithering, however, can cause visual inconsistencies by showing the boundaries when only part of a screen is redrawn (for example, when you scroll, edit, or paint).

ABOUT CONVERTING IMAGES

With the exception of converting a color image to an indexed color image, the procedure for converting images from one image type to another is the same: simply choose the new image type from the Mode menu. You may then be prompted to enter dialog box options.

Because individual color spaces are made up of colors using different color values, converting an image between modes may permanently change the color values in the image. For this reason, you should always save a backup copy of an image before converting it. For more information on how conversions are performed, see the section in this chapter describing that conversion. For information on how color values are measured, see "Adobe Photoshop Color Modes" on page 10.

Certain image types cannot be converted directly to other image types. Image types not available for the active document appear dimmed in the Mode menu.

Important: *Converting a document from one mode to another flattens the file. Be sure to save a copy of your file that includes all layers if you want to be able to edit the RGB version of the image after the conversion. See "Merging Layers" on page 145 for more information.*

CONVERTING FROM ONE MODE TO ANOTHER

Adobe Photoshop uses the Lab color mode when converting color values from one mode to another. Because Lab provides a system for defining color values in all modes, using Lab as an intermediate mode for color conversion ensures that colors are not altered in the conversion process (other than the necessary clipping of out-of-gamut colors).

For example, when converting an RGB image to CMYK, Photoshop first converts the RGB color values to Lab mode using the information in the Monitor Setup dialog box. Adobe Photoshop then uses the information in the Printing Inks Setup and Separation Setup dialog boxes to build a color table before converting the image to CMYK mode. Once the image is in CMYK

mode, Adobe Photoshop must convert the CMYK values back to RGB so that the image can be displayed on an RGB monitor. This on-the-fly CMYK-to-RGB conversion exactly reverses the actual RGB-to-CMYK mode conversion that the image has just undergone provided no values in the conversion dialog boxes have been changed.

Note: *The conversion for screen display does not affect the actual data in the file. This conversion is performed on a copy of the data during the conversion process.*

CONVERTING TO BITMAP

Bitmap images consist of one bit of color (black or white) per pixel and require the least amount of memory of all image types. Because few editing options are available in Bitmap mode, it's usually best to edit the image in Grayscale mode and then convert it to Bitmap mode if necessary to export the image to another application.

To convert a color image to a bitmapped image, you must first convert it to a grayscale image. This removes the hue and saturation information from the pixels and leaves the brightness values.

To convert a grayscale image to a bitmapped image:

1 Open the grayscale image; then choose Bitmap from the Mode menu. The Bitmap dialog box appears.

2 Choose the units of measurement you want from the menu.

3 Enter a value for the output resolution of the bitmapped image. By default, the current image resolution appears as both the input and the output resolution.

4 Select a bitmap conversion method, and click OK.

You can choose from five options when you convert a grayscale image to a bitmap image. The options determine the quality of the bitmapped image, ranging from a high-contrast image to a textured or halftone screen effect for output on non-PostScript language printers. The conversion methods are described in the following sections.

The 50% Threshold option

The 50% Threshold option converts pixels with a gray value above the middle gray level (128) to white, and it converts pixels below the middle gray level to black. The result is a high-contrast, black-and-white representation of the image.

The Pattern Dither option

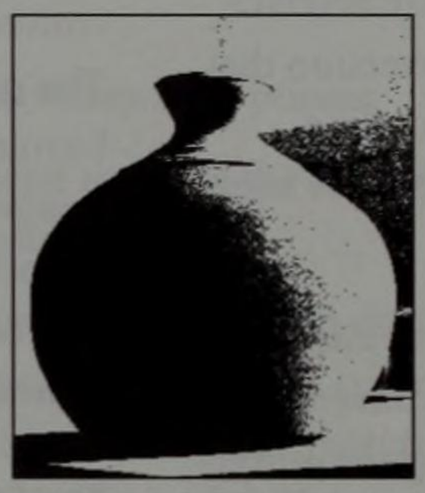
The Pattern Dither option converts an image by organizing the gray levels into geometric configurations of black and white dots.

The Diffusion Dither option

The Diffusion Dither option uses an error-diffusion process to convert the image. The program starts at the pixel in the upper left corner of the image and evaluates its gray-level value. If the value is above middle gray (128), the pixel is changed to white. If the value is below 128, the pixel is changed to black. There is some error in the conversion because the original pixel is usually not pure between black and white, and the conversion changes it to either a black or a white value. The amount of error is transferred to surrounding pixels before they are converted. In this way, the error is diffused throughout the

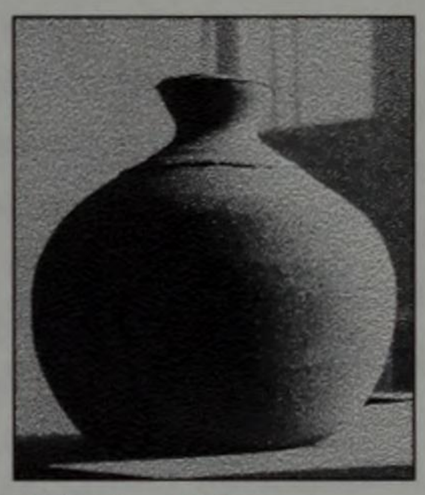
image. The result is a grainy, film-like texture. This option is useful for viewing images on a black-and-white screen.

Original grayscale image



50% Threshold conversion method

Pattern Dither conversion method



Diffusion Dither conversion method

The Halftone Screen option

The Halftone Screen option simulates the effect of printing a grayscale image through a halftone screen.

To specify the halftone screen for a bitmapped image:

1 Choose Bitmap from the Mode menu. The Bitmap dialog box appears.

2 Click Halftone Screen; then click OK. The Halftone Screen dialog box appears.

3 Choose the units of measurement you want from the menu.

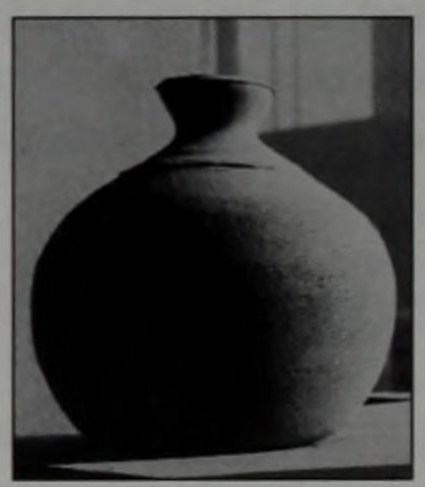
4 Enter a value for the screen frequency. Values can range from 1 to 999 for lines per inch and from 0.400 to 400 for lines per centimeter. You can enter decimal values.

The screen frequency is the ruling of the halftone screen. The frequency depends on the paper stock and type of press used for printing. Newspapers commonly use an 85-line screen. Magazines use higher resolution screens, such as 133 and 150. Check with your print shop for the correct screen frequency to use.

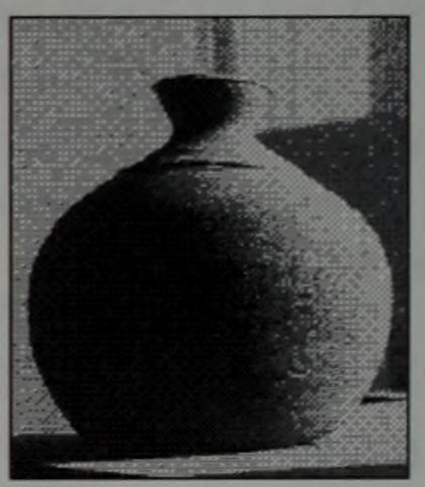
5 Enter a value for the screen angle in degrees. Values can range from –180 to +180.

The screen angle refers to the orientation of the screen. Continuous-tone and black-and-white halftone screens commonly use a 45-degree angle.

6 Choose the dot shape you want from the Shape menu; then click OK.



Original grayscale image



Halftone screen conversion: 53 lpi, 45-degree angle, round dot

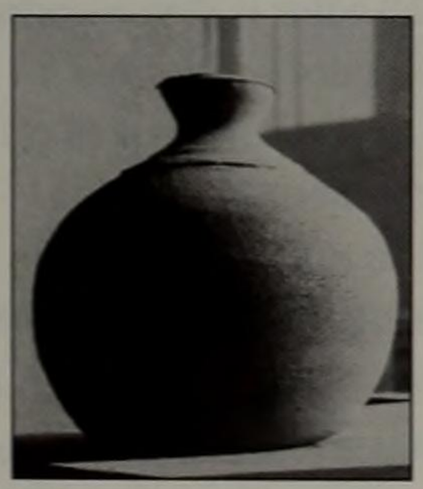
You can save the halftone screen settings and reuse them with other documents using the Save and Load buttons in this dialog box.

The Custom Pattern option

The Custom Pattern option in the Bitmap dialog box simulates the effect of printing a grayscale image through a custom halftone screen. This method allows you to apply a screen texture, such as a wood grain, to an image.

You can create a pattern that represents the texture you want and then screen the grayscale image to apply the texture to the image. If you want the pattern to cover the entire image, create a pattern that is as large as the image; otherwise, the pattern will be tiled. For example, if you apply a 1-inch by 1-inch pattern to an image that is 4 inches by 4 inches, the pattern appears as 16 squares.

The Adobe Photoshop software contains several self-tiling patterns that can be used as halftone screen patterns. For instructions on how to define a pattern, see "Filling a Selection with a Pattern" on page 112.



Original grayscale image

Custom Pattern conversion method

When you're using the Custom Pattern option, you might have to take some special steps to prepare the pattern for the conversion. The Custom Pattern option simulates dark colors by making the halftone pattern thicker, and simulates light colors by making the halftone pattern thin. Choose a pattern that lends itself to these variations; such a pattern typically has a variety of gray shades.

One way to prepare a black-and-white pattern for conversion is to convert the image to Grayscale mode and then apply the Blur More filter to the pattern several times. This technique blurs the lines within the pattern, creating thick lines that taper from dark gray to white. The Custom Pattern option can then use this pattern to effectively screen both the light and dark areas of the image.

CONVERTING TO GRAYSCALE

A grayscale image consists of various levels of gray. Depending on the number of bits of information saved when the image was scanned, a grayscale image can contain up to 256 levels of gray. Gray levels can range from 0 (black) to 255 (white).

You can convert both bitmapped and color images to a grayscale images.

Converting a bitmapped image to a grayscale image

A bitmapped image converted to a grayscale image consists of one gray level (black). Since few editing options are available in Bitmap mode, you might convert a bitmapped image to a grayscale image for editing and then convert it back to a bitmapped image to export it to other applications.

To convert a bitmapped image to a grayscale image:

1 Choose Grayscale from the Mode menu. The Grayscale dialog box appears.

2 Enter a value for the size ratio.

The size ratio is the factor by which you want to scale down the size of the image. For example, to reduce the size of the grayscale image by 50 percent, enter 2 for the size ratio. If you enter a number greater than 1, the program averages multiple pixels in the bitmapped image to produce a single pixel in the grayscale image. This allows you to create a grayscale image from an image scanned on a 1-bit scanner.

Converting a color image to a grayscale image

When Adobe Photoshop converts a color image to grayscale, it discards all color information in the original image. When you convert from an RGB, a CMYK, a Lab, or a Multichannel image, the gray levels of the converted pixels represent the luminosity of the pixels.

CONVERTING GRAYSCALE TO COLOR

When you convert a grayscale image to a color image, the color values for each pixel are assigned that pixel's previous gray value. You can also convert a grayscale image to a CMYK image (for creating process-color quadtones without converting to Duotone mode) or to a Lab color image.

CONVERTING TO LAB

You can convert RGB and indexed color images to Lab color mode. You might want to use Lab mode to adjust the lightness or brightness of the image without changing the hue or saturation (for example, to create smoother blends). Once you have adjusted the image, you can then convert it back to an RGB or a CMYK image to perform other color corrections or to print the image using process colors. Converting back and forth between Lab and other modes does not alter the original color values.

When you convert an image to a Lab color image, the image is split into three channels: *L* (lightness), *a* (green to red), and *b* (blue to yellow).

Since Lab color is device-independent, it is the recommended image type for transferring images to other systems or printing to a PostScript Level 2 printer.

CONVERTING TO MULTICHANNEL MODE

Multichannel images contain 8 bits per pixel. You can convert any image composed of more than one channel to the multichannel image. When you convert to a multichannel image, the original channels are assigned numbers. The channels in a multichannel image are grayscale channels.

In the case of a color image, the individual color channels are converted to grayscale information that reflects the color values of the pixels in each

channel. If you delete a channel from an RGB, a CMYK, or a Lab image, the image is automatically converted to Multichannel mode.

CONVERTING TO CMYK

To print a color separation, you convert an RGB, an indexed color, or a Lab image to a CMYK image. (You do not have to convert a Lab image to CMYK mode if you're printing to a PostScript Level 2 color printer, because the PostScript Level 2 color printer interprets and prints the Lab images.)

The conversion splits the RGB or Lab colors into the four colors commonly used for printing color separations: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Be sure to save a copy of your RGB or indexed color image under a file name different than that of the CMYK file in case you want to reconvert the image. It's not a good idea to convert between RGB and CMYK mode multiple times, because each time the image is converted, the color values must be recalculated.

When you convert an RGB image to CMYK, Adobe Photoshop uses its color separation utilities to perform the conversion. In the first step of this process, Adobe Photoshop converts the RGB values to Lab values and builds a color separation table. It then uses these Lab values to determine the appropriate CMYK equivalents. During the conversion, the correct CMYK values for each Lab pixel are calculated by referencing the key values in the color table. See "Converting From One Mode to Another" on page 220 for more information on mode conversions.

Adobe Photoshop lets you preview CMYK colors prior to actually making the conversion. While in the RGB image, choose CMYK Preview from the Mode menu. See "Previewing CMYK Colors" on page 198 for more information on using this command. You can also check for and correct any out-of-gamut colors before making the conversion, using the Gamut Warning command in the Mode menu. See "Managing Out-of-Gamut Colors" on page 196 for suggested procedures for correcting out-of-gamut colors.

Saving and loading separation tables

You can save individual color tables and use them with other Adobe Photoshop documents. You might want to save different tables if you frequently print images using different printers, different inks, or different papers.

To save a color separation table:

1 Choose Preferences > Printing Inks from the File menu. The Printing Inks dialog box appears. Enter the settings you want to use.

2 Choose Preferences > Separation Setup from the File menu. The Separation Setup dialog box appears. Enter the values you want to use.

See "Step 3: Enter the Printing Inks Setup Information" on page 31 and "Step 3: Adjust the Separations Setup Settings or Load a Color Separation Table and Convert the Image" on page 238 for information on the options in both of these dialog boxes.

3 When you are satisfied with the calibrations settings in a separation table, click OK.

4 Choose Preferences > Separation Tables from the File menu. The Separation Tables dialog box appears.

5 Click Save. A dialog box appears so that you can name the new separation table.

Adobe Photoshop builds the color separation tables using the settings in the Separation Setup and Printing Inks Setup dialog boxes.

Once you have selected a separation table, the table overrides any options you may have changed in the Printing Inks Setup or Separation Setup dialog box. You must return to the Separation Tables dialog box and select the Use Separation Setup option (in the To CMYK section) to use the dialog box settings.

You use the options in the Separation Tables dialog box when you're converting a CMYK image to an RGB image. If you've used a table to convert the image, be sure to load that table and click the Use Table option (in the From CMYK section) to reconvert the image. To use the current settings in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box instead of the table, you must choose the Use Printing Inks Setup option in this dialog box.

To load a saved separation table:

1 Choose Preferences > Separation Tables from the File menu. The Separation Tables dialog box appears.

2 Click Load.

3 Select the table you want to use from the directory dialog box, and click Open.

The Separation Tables dialog box reappears. The Use Table option is selected, and the name of the table appears in the option.

4 Click OK to use the table in the CMYK conversion.

5 Convert the image to CMYK mode.

For more information on how Adobe Photoshop converts images to CMYK mode, see "How the Adobe Photoshop Color Calibration Tools Work" on page 27 and "Adjusting the Black Generation and Separation Type" on page 239.

Note: *You can use Efi color tables to separate an image in Photoshop. (Note that this is not the same as the Efi color database in Cachet or QuarkXpress 3.3.) If you use EfiColor for Photoshop separation tables, you can save TIFF and EPS Adobe Photoshop files with metric color tags, for use with QuarkXpress 3.3. To save a file with metric color tags, choose Preferences > General from the File menu. Click the More button in the General Preferences dialog box, and then select the Save Metric Color Tags options.*

CONVERTING TO INDEXED COLOR

At times, you might want to convert an RGB image to an indexed color image to edit an image's color table or to export an image to an application that supports only 8-bit color. This is useful, for example, for multimedia animation applications.

When you convert an RGB image to an indexed color image, a color table is built for the color image. The color table stores the colors used in the document and holds the maximum number of colors that can be displayed at once. While an RGB image can contain millions of colors, an indexed color image can directly reference only 256 colors. If the RGB color is not present in the color table, the program matches the color to the closest color in the color table or simulates the color using the available colors.

To convert an RGB image to an indexed color image:

1 Choose Indexed Color from the Mode menu. The Indexed Color dialog box appears.

2 Select the resolution, palette, and dither method. These options are described in the following sections.

3 Click OK.

Specifying the resolution of an indexed color image

You can specify the *bit resolution*, or the number of bits of color information per pixel, for the indexed color image. The resolution you choose determines the number of colors that can be displayed at one time. For example, if you select 4 bits per pixel, 16 colors can be displayed at a time; if you select 8 bits per pixel, 256 colors can be displayed at one time. In addition, you can click Other to specify the exact number of colors to be displayed (up to 256). The Other option is useful for applications such as silk-screening, in which only a specific number of inks is used.

The options in the Indexed Color dialog box only control how the indexed color table is created. Adobe Photoshop still treats the document as an 8-bit, 256-color image.

Specifying a color table option

Five palette types are available for converting an image to indexed color. Use the Color Table command in the Mode menu to view the results of each color table option.

The Exact palette option

The Exact palette option is available only if 256 or fewer colors are used in the RGB image. When you select the Exact option, Adobe Photoshop uses exactly the same colors for the color table as those that appear in the RGB image. Since all the colors in the image are present in the document's color table, there is no dithering.

The System palette option

The System palette option uses the Macintosh system's default 8-bit color table. This color table is based on a uniform sampling of RGB colors. This option is labeled Uniform if the resolution is set to fewer than 8 bits per pixel. With this option, you specify a dithering option.

The Adaptive palette option

The Adaptive palette option creates a color table by sampling colors from the more commonly used areas of the color spectrum that appears in the image. For example, if you have an RGB image that has only the colors green and blue, the resulting color table is made up of primarily green and blue colors. Because the colors in most images are concentrated in particular areas of the spectrum, this table can be useful. With this option, you also specify a dithering option.

To control more precisely how the Adaptive color table is built, select a part of the image that contains the colors you want to use in the table before you make the conversion. When you have an active selection in the image, Adobe Photoshop weights the conversion toward the colors in the selection.

Indexed color image

Exact palette

System palette

Adaptive palette

The Custom palette option

The Custom palette option lets you create your own color table. When you select this option, the program displays the Color Table dialog box. You can then edit the color table and save it for later use or use the Load button to load a previously created color table. Editing a color table is described in "Manipulating the Color Table of an Indexed Color Image" on page 228.

The Previous palette option

The Previous palette option is only available once you have converted an image using the Custom or Adaptive option. Selecting the Previous palette option converts the image by using the custom palette used in the previous conversion. This option makes it easy to convert a number of images using the same custom palette.

Specifying dithering options for an indexed color image

Unless you're using the Exact color table option, the color table may not contain all the colors used in the image. To simulate colors not in the color table, you can choose to *dither* the colors. Dithering mixes the pixels of the available colors to simulate the missing colors. You can choose from three dithering options:

- The None dithering option does not dither colors. Instead, the color closest to the missing color is used. This tends to result in sharp transitions between shades of color in the image.
- The Pattern dithering option (available only when you're using the System palette) adds random pixels in patterns to simulate the colors that are not in the color table.
- The Diffusion dithering option uses a less structured method than the Pattern option to dither colors.

MANIPULATING THE COLOR TABLE OF AN INDEXED COLOR IMAGE

When you convert an RGB image to an indexed color image, or if you are working in an original indexed color image, you might want to change one or more colors in the table. You can also choose to structure a color table according to a predefined color table. Each indexed color image has its own color table, and the tables can be saved and reused with other indexed color images.

There are two types of indexed color images: ones that have a limited number of colors (fewer than 256) and pseudo-color images (grayscale images that display variations in gray levels with color rather than shades of gray). Pseudo-color images are often used in scientific and medical applications. The color table editing features discussed in the following sections are most useful with pseudo-color indexed color images. These features can also be used to produce special effects with indexed color images that have a limited number of colors.

Note: *If you just want to change the colors in an image, choose Map or Adjust from the Image menu, and use the color correction commands in the submenus. See Chapter 12, "Color Correction," for a description of these commands.*

Editing colors in the indexed color table

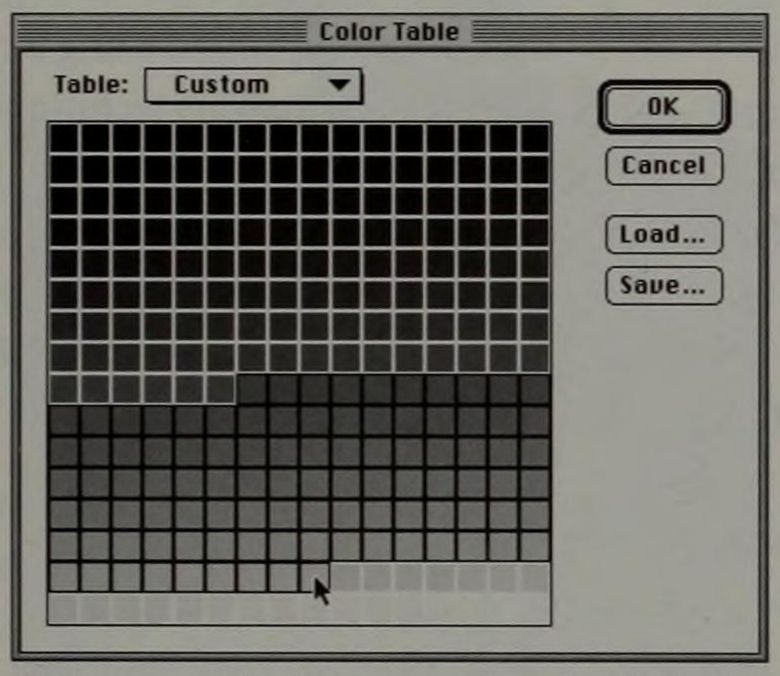
The following example shows the editing of the indexed color table of a pseudo-color image. You follow the same steps for color images.

To edit colors in the color table:

1 Open the indexed color image.

2 Choose Color Table from the Mode menu. The Color Table dialog box appears.

3 Click or drag in the table to choose the color or range of colors you want to change.



Midtone and highlight range selected in dialog box

The Color Picker dialog box appears.

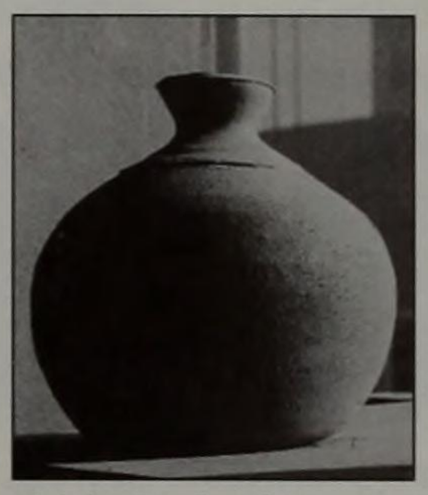
4 Use the controls in the color picker to select the color you want, and click OK.

If you are changing a range of colors, Adobe Photoshop creates a gradient in the color table between the starting and ending colors. The first color you choose in the color picker is the beginning color for the range. When you click OK, the color picker reappears so you can choose the last color in the range.

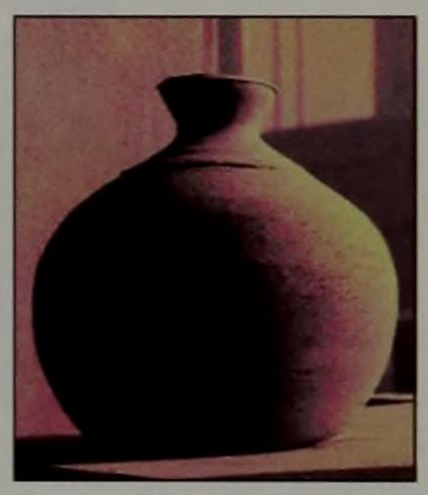
5 Click OK in the color picker to return to the Color Table dialog box.

The colors you selected in the color picker are placed in the range you selected in the Color Table dialog box.

6 Click OK in the Color Table dialog box to apply the new colors to the indexed color image.



Original indexed image



Color added to midtones and highlights through the Color Table dialog box

Choosing a color table option

The indexed color table can be structured according to one of five predefined color tables. You choose a predefined color table from the Table menu.

- The Custom table option is used whenever the table is not one of Adobe Photoshop software's built-in color tables.
- The Black Body option displays a transition of colors based on the different colors a blackbody radiator emits as it is heated—from black to red, orange, yellow, and white.
- The Grayscale option displays a smooth transition from black to white in 256 levels of gray.
- The Spectrum option displays a smooth transition between the colors that result when white light passes through a prism: violet, blue, green, yellow, orange, and red.
- The System option displays the standard Macintosh 256-color System palette.

Saving and loading a color table

You use the Save and Load buttons in the Color Table dialog box to save your indexed color tables for use with other Adobe Photoshop documents. Once you load a color table into a document, the colors in the document are changed to reflect the color positions they reference in the new color table.

Note: *You can also load saved color tables into the Colors palette. See "Saving, Loading, and Appending Swatches Palettes" on page 122 for more information.*

ABOUT MONOTONES, DUOTONES, TRITONES, AND QUADTONES

Adobe Photoshop allows you to create monotones, duotones, tritones, and quadtones. Monotones are grayscale images printed with a single, nonblack ink. Duotones, tritones, and quadtones are grayscale images printed with two, three, and four inks, respectively. In these types of images, different colored inks are used to reproduce different levels of gray rather than to reproduce different colors.

This discussion uses the term *duotone* to refer to duotones, monotones, tritones, and quadtones. For information on converting images to Duotone mode, see "Converting Grayscale Images to Duotones" on page 230.

About duotones

Duotones are used to increase the tonal range of a grayscale image. Although a grayscale reproduction can display up to 256 levels of gray, a printing press can reproduce only about 50 levels of gray per ink. As a result, a grayscale image printed with only black ink can look significantly coarser than the same image printed with two, three, or four inks, because each individual ink can reproduce up to 50 levels of gray.

Sometimes duotones are printed using a black ink and a gray ink. The black ink captures shadow detail, and the gray ink is used in the midtone and highlight areas. More frequently, duotones are printed using a colored ink for the highlight color. This technique produces an image that has a slight tint to it and gives the image a significant increase in dynamic range. Duotones are ideal for two-color print jobs in which a spot color (such as a PANTONE ink) is used for accent.

Because duotones use different color inks to reproduce different gray levels, Adobe Photoshop treats duotones, tritones, quadtones, and monotones as single-channel, 8-bit, grayscale images. In Duotone mode, you do not have direct access to the individual image channels, as you do in RGB, CMYK, and Lab modes; instead the channels are manipulated through the curves in the Duotone Options dialog box.

Converting grayscale images to duotones

Only grayscale images can be converted to duotone images.

To convert a grayscale image to a duotone image:

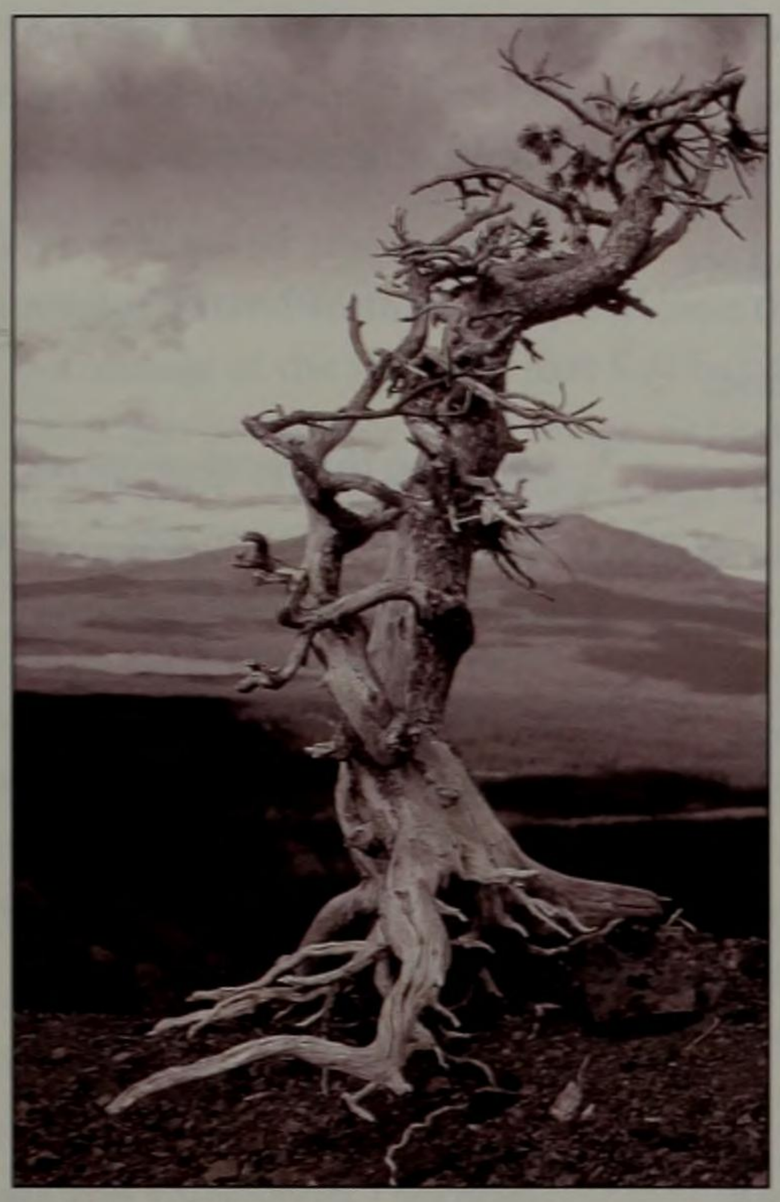
1 Convert the image to a grayscale image using the Grayscale command in the Mode menu.

2 Choose Duotone from the Mode menu. The Duotone Options dialog box appears.

3 Specify the type of image, the ink colors, the duotone curves, and the overprint colors for the duotone image. These options are described in the following sections.

Duotones, Tritones, and Quadtones

A SET OF DUOTONE CURVES IS SUPPLIED ON THE ADOBE PHOTOSHOP DISKS. THESE EXAMPLES SHOW SETS OF PROCESS COLOR CURVES APPLIED TO THE SAME GRAYSCALE IMAGE. THE ORIGINAL IMAGE IS SHOWN ABOVE.



Quadtone—CMYK warm

Quadtone—CMYK very warm

Quadtone—CMYK ext wm

Quadtone—CMYK cool

Quadtone—CMYK very cool

Tritone—bcy green 2

Tritone—bmc blue 1

Tritone—bmy brown 1

Tritone—bmy red 1

Tritone—bmy sepia 1

Duotone—cyan bl 2

Duotone—magenta bl 2

Duotone—yellow bl 3

4 When you have finished choosing options, click OK.

Choosing the duotone image type

Use the Type menu to specify whether you are working with a monotone, duotone, tritone, or quadtone. This option determines how many ink controls are active.

Specifying the ink colors

To produce fully saturated colors, darker inks should be printed before lighter inks. When entering colors in the duotone dialog boxes, make sure that the inks are specified in descending order; that is, the darkest ink appears at the top, and the lightest ink appears at the bottom. The order of inks affects how Adobe Photoshop applies screens.

To specify an ink color, click the color swatch (the solid square) for that ink. Use the color picker or the Custom Colors dialog box to select the ink you want. When you close the dialog box, the ink color appears in the color swatch, and the color name appears in the text box. For information on using the color picker, see "Using the Adobe Photoshop Color Picker" on page 124.

Important: *The PANTONE colors in the Adobe Photoshop Custom Color Picker represent the most recent specifications from PANTONE, Inc.; therefore some ink names may be slightly different from those in older programs. When you use PANTONE colors in documents that you plan to export to other applications, such as Adobe Illustrator, PageMaker, or QuarkXPress, make sure that the Short PANTONE Names option is selected in the More Preferences dialog box. This selection ensures that the PANTONE color names will match the naming convention used in the other applications.*

If the ink is to be separated on a process color plate, name it "cyan," "magenta," "yellow," or "black."

Adjusting the duotone curves

The duotone curve specifies how each ink is distributed across the shadow and highlight areas of the image. This curve maps each gray-scale value on the original image to the actual ink percentage that will be used when the image is printed. You specify a duotone curve for each ink used to print a duotone, tritone, or quadtone image.

To modify the duotone curve for a given ink:

1 Click the curve box next to the ink. The Duotone Curve dialog box appears.

The default duotone curve is a straight diagonal line across the grid (also called a *null curve*), which indicates that you are mapping the current grayscale value of every pixel to the same percentage value of the printing ink. At this setting, a 50-percent midtone pixel will be printed with a 50-percent dot of the ink, a 100-percent shadow with a 100-percent dot of the ink, and so on.

2 Adjust the duotone curve for each ink.

You can adjust the duotone curve by clicking a point on the graph and dragging, or by entering values for the different ink percentages.

The *x*-axis of the curve graph moves from highlights (at the left) to shadows (at the right). The density of the ink increases along the *y*-axis. You can specify up to 13 points on the curve. When you specify two values along the curve,

Adobe Photoshop calculates the intermediate values. As you adjust the curve, the values are automatically entered in the percentage text boxes.

A value you type in a text box indicates the percentage of the ink color that will be used to print that percentage of the image. For example, if you enter 70 in the 100-percent text box, a 70-percent dot of that ink color will be used to print the 100-percent shadow areas of the image.

3 Use the Save button in the Duotone Curve dialog box to save curves created with this dialog box.

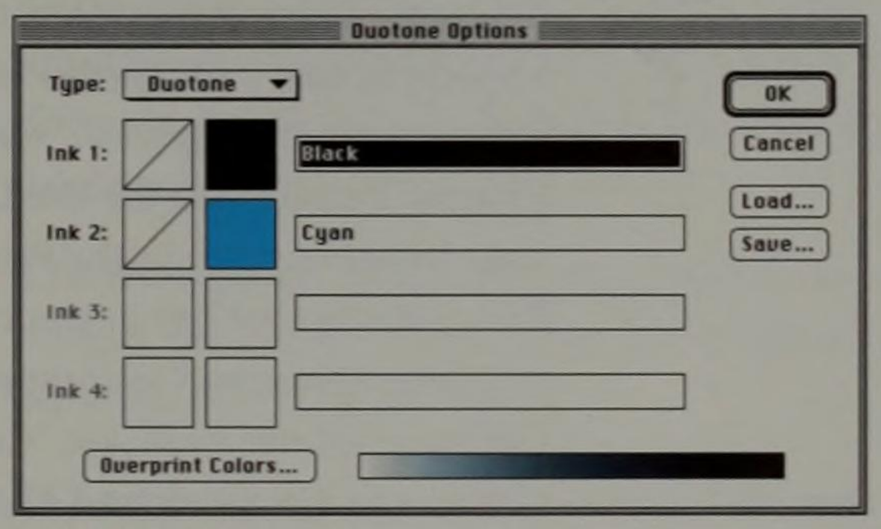
4 Use the Load button to load these curves or curves created in the Curves dialog box (including curves created using the Arbitrary Map option). See "Using the Curves Dialog Box" on page 207 for additional information on adjusting curves.

You can use the Info palette to display the ink percentages when you're working with duotone images. Set the readout mode to Actual Color to see the ink percentages that will be applied when the image is printed. These values reflect any changes you've entered in the Duotone Curve dialog box.

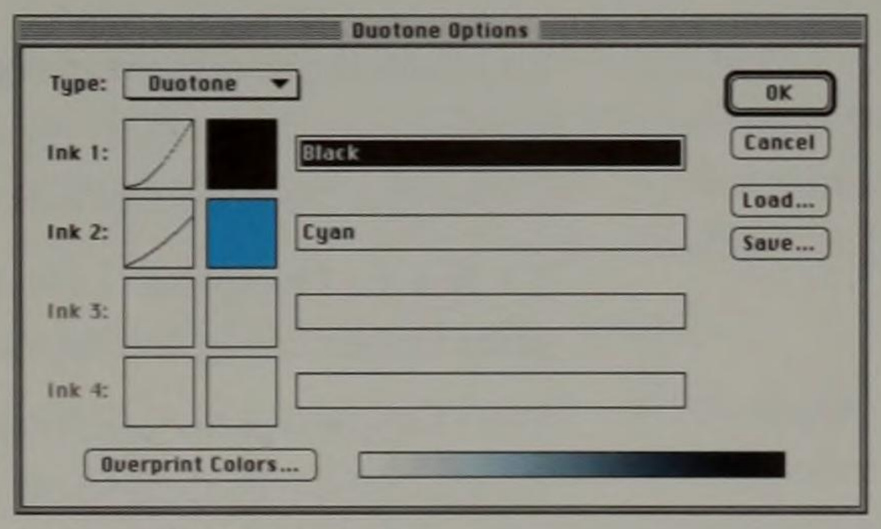
The following examples show a duotone image with the default curves and the same image after the curves have been adjusted to reduce the ink in the highlights and midtone areas in the black plate and to reduce the ink in the shadow and midtone areas in the cyan plate.

Original image

Adjusted image



Default duotone curves



Adjusted duotone curves

Specifying the overprint colors

Overprints are two unscreened inks printed on top of each other. For example, when a cyan ink prints over a yellow ink, the resulting overprint is a green color. The order in which inks are printed, as well as variations in the inks and paper, can significantly effect the final results.

You can indicate how you want the overprint colors to be displayed on-screen. If possible, run a test using a printed sample of the overprinted inks to adjust your screen display. Note that this adjustment affects only how the overprint colors appear on the screen; it does not affect how the final image is printed.

Before adjusting these colors, make sure that you have calibrated your system following the instructions in Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System." Be sure that the Use Dot Gain for Grayscale Images option in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box is checked so you can use the Levels or Curves command to compensate for dot gain. For more information, see "Compensating for Dot gain in Grayscale and Duotone Images" on page 33.

To adjust the display of overprint colors:

1 Choose Duotone from the Mode menu to display the Duotone Options dialog box.

2 Click the Overprint Colors button. The Overprint Colors dialog box appears.

The Overprint Colors dialog box displays the combinations that will result when the inks are printed.

3 Click the color swatch of the ink combination you want to adjust. The color picker appears.

4 Select the color you want in the color picker; then click OK.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 until the overprint inks appear as you want them; then click OK in the Overprint Colors dialog box.

Saving and loading duotone settings

Use the Save and Load buttons in the Duotone Options dialog box to save the set of duotone curves, ink settings, and overprint colors. You can then apply these settings to other grayscale images.

In addition, the Adobe Photoshop software includes several sample sets of duotone, tritone, and quadtone curves. These sets provide some of the more commonly used curves and colors and can be used as a starting point for creating your own combinations.

Viewing the individual printing plates

Because duotones are single-channel images, your adjustments to individual printing inks are displayed as part of the final, composite image. In some cases, you might want to view the individual "printing plates" to see how the individual colors will separate when printed (as you can with CMYK images).

Using the Curves command in Multichannel mode to create duotone curves does not produce the desired results. If you want to adjust the distribution of ink and view its effect on the individual printing plates, make the adjustments in the Duotone Curves dialog box before converting to Multichannel mode.

To view the individual colors of a duotone image:

1 After specifying your ink colors, choose Multichannel from the Mode menu.

The image is converted to a multichannel image, with each channel representing a printing ink. Channel 1 represents the first ink specified in the Duotone Options dialog box, channel 2 represents the second ink color, and so on.

Do not save the image under the same filename; this conversion is for viewing only. You will be reconverting the image to Duotone mode before saving it.

2 Select the channel you want to examine in the Channels palette.

3 Choose Undo Mode Change from the Edit menu to revert to Duotone mode.

Printing duotones

When creating duotones, keep in mind that both the order in which the inks are printed and the screen angles you use dramatically affect your final output. For more information, see "Specifying the Ink Colors" on page 232.

Use the Auto button in the Halftone Screens dialog box to set the optimal screen angles and frequencies. Be sure to select the Use Accurate Screens option in the Auto Screens dialog box if you're printing to an imagesetter equipped with PostScript Level 2 or an Emerald controller. Low-resolution PostScript Level 2 printers cannot use this option. See "Saving and Loading Halftone Screen Settings" on page 247 for more information about printing halftone screens.

Note: *The recommended screen angles and frequencies for quadtones are based on the assumption that Ink 1 is the darkest ink and Ink 4 is the lightest ink.*

To print separations of a duotone image, choose Print from the File menu. You do not need to convert duotone images to CMYK to create separations. Converting to CMYK mode converts any custom colors to their CMYK equivalents.

Exporting duotone images to other applications

When working with duotones that you're going to export to other applications, it is important to name custom colors exactly as they are recognized by the other application. If the name is different, the image will not print correctly or might not print at all.

This section tells you how to export duotone images to Scitex CT format and how to print duotones from QuarkXPress.

To save a duotone image in Scitex CT format:

1 Convert the image to Multichannel mode.

2 Choose New Channel from the Channels palette menu to add new channels until there are four channels in the document. (If the image is a quadtone, you do not need to add channels.)

3 Convert the image to CMYK mode.

Although the converted image will not display correctly as a duotone image, it will be printed correctly in the Scitex CT format. Converting to CMYK preserves the contents of the four separated custom color plates and lets you save the document in Scitex CT format. The conversion generates blank plates if the image is a mono-

tone, duotone, or tritone. These blank plates are necessary because the Scitex CT format requires four channels.

To print a duotone image from QuarkXPress:

1 Note the exact names of all the custom colors used in the document.

2 Save the Adobe Photoshop document as an EPS file.

3 Click the Binary encoding option in the EPS Format dialog box.

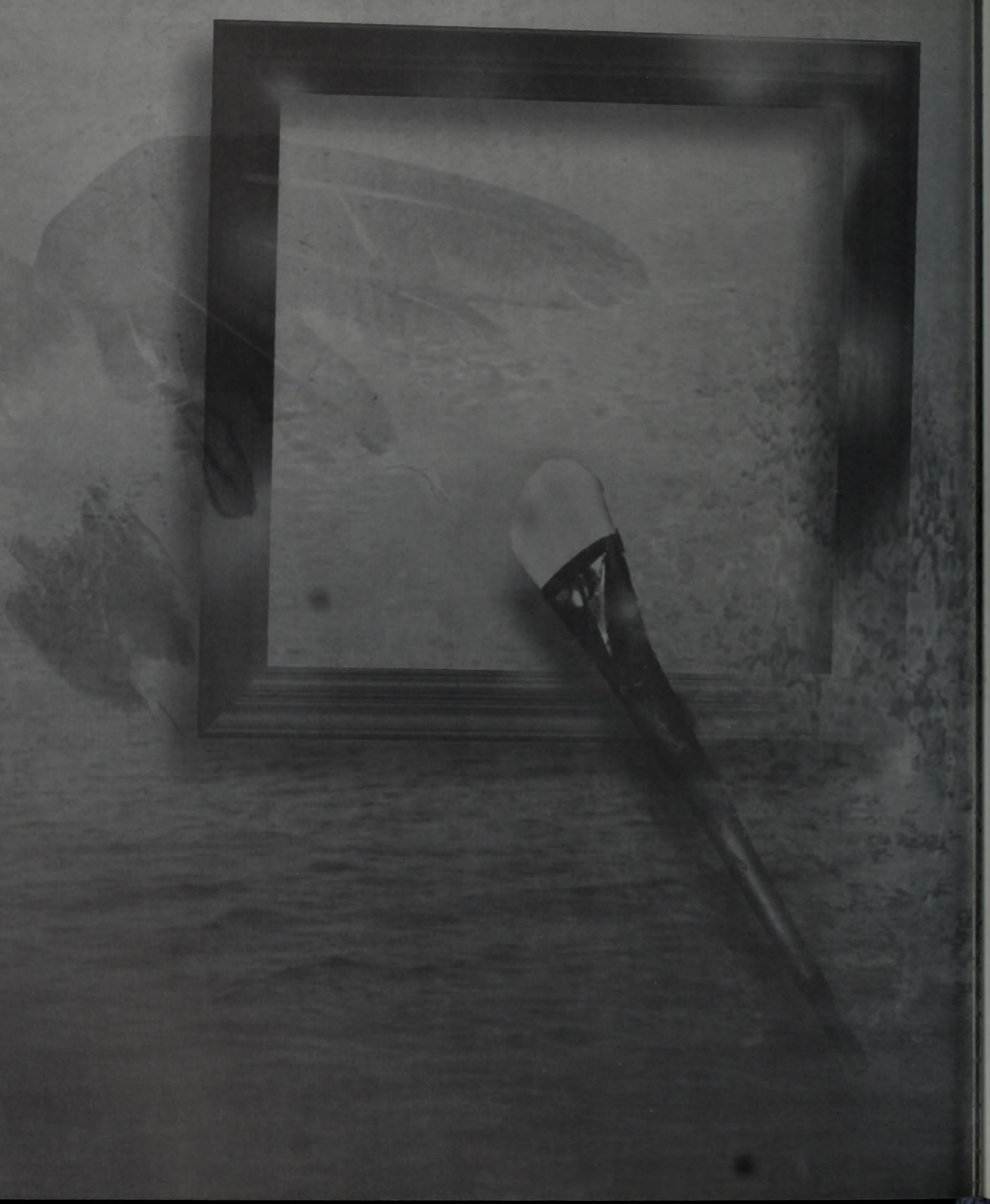
4 In QuarkXPress, place the image in a picture box.

5 Choose Colors from the XPress Edit menu. Select the PANTONE colors used in the Adobe Photoshop file, and save them in the document, so that the colors will separate from QuarkXPress as expected. You can also set your screens in QuarkXPress.

Chapter

14

PRODUCING A SEPARATION



Chapter 14: Producing a Separation

Producing a color separation is the process of converting an RGB or a Lab image to a CMYK image. The conversion translates the RGB colors into the four process colors: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Be sure to save a copy of the edited RGB file before converting it to CMYK; you will then have the original file available if you need to reconvert the file later. It's not a good idea to convert between RGB and CMYK multiple times, since each conversion requires the color values to be slightly recalculated and can cause eventual degradation of the image.

QUESTIONS TO ASK YOUR PRINTER

One of the key factors to producing good color separations is good communication with your print shop. Before you can make good color separations or even the correct scan for that matter, you need to have some information about how the print output will be produced. This information is vital if you are to enter the correct values in the Monitor Setup, Printing Inks Setup, and Separation Setup dialog boxes.

Ask your printer these questions so that you can work together to produce the best color proof:

- **What screen frequency (lpi) can the press handle, and what is the best frequency for this job?**

The screen frequency determines what the scan resolution should be (somewhere between 1.5 and 2 times the screen frequency). See "Determining the Scan Resolution" on page 37 for more information on scan resolution.

- **What is the expected dot gain in the midtones for the specific paper stock?**

This number tells you how much dot gain to expect on press when the film goes from the film stage to the press sheet. You will enter this number in the Printing Inks dialog box. See "Compensating for Dot Gain in Color Images" on page 33.

- **What method will the printer use to generate the black separation plate (UCR or GCR)?**

You will need to enter this information into the Separation Setup dialog box. If the printer is not sure of the method, use GCR (the default setting). See "About Black Generation and Separation Types" on page 239.

- **What are the total ink limits of the press and the total ink density of the black plate?**

You will also need to enter this information into the Separation Setup dialog box. See "Choosing the Ink Limits" on page 240.

- **What role will the printer play in producing the film?**

It's best when the printer produces the film so that any needed compensations can be made at any stage of the conversion and printing process.

PRODUCING A COLOR SEPARATION: AN OVERVIEW

1 Calibrate your system (see page 238).

2 Produce the best possible scan (see page 238).

3 Adjust the Separation Setup settings or load a color separation table, and convert the image (see page 238).

4 Make color corrections (see Chapter 12).

5 Apply any needed color trap (see page 241).

6 Print the color proof or film (see page 242).

STEP 1: CALIBRATE YOUR SYSTEM

To produce good color separations, you must calibrate each device (including your monitor) and have correct system-wide color calibration (a system that produces consistent results between the scanner, imagesetter, and workstation). See Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System," for step-by-step calibration information.

Note: *You should not have to adjust the calibration settings for individual images unless you change some part of the calibrated system, for example, if you use a different printing device. However, if you make changes to the Monitor Setup or the Printing Inks Setup settings (such as changing the dot gain) after you have converted a file to CMYK mode, you must revert to the original RGB file and reconvert the file for the changes to take effect.*

STEP 2: PRODUCE THE BEST POSSIBLE SCAN

Although Adobe Photoshop lets you correct many scanning problems, you cannot correct an image that was scanned with too little information in it—either because it was scanned at too low of a resolution or because it lacks detail in the highlight and shadow areas.

You must know the screen frequency you will use to print the color separation *before* determining the scan resolution. See "Scanning Images" on page 37 for a discussion of determining the correct scan resolution. See "Checking the Scan Quality" on page 195 for steps to verify that you have enough detail in your scan.

STEP 3: ADJUST THE SEPARATION SETUP SETTINGS OR LOAD A COLOR SEPARATION TABLE AND CONVERT THE IMAGE

The settings in the Separation Setup dialog box (along with the settings in the Printing Inks dialog box) control how the CMYK plates are generated. The separation settings include the method used for black generation and undercolor removal and the total ink limit for the press.

When Adobe Photoshop converts an RGB image to the CMYK mode, the program converts the RGB values to CMYK values using information in the Monitor Setup, Printing Inks Setup, and Separation Setup dialog boxes. The Monitor Setup and Printing Inks Setup settings help ensure the closest match possible between the color you see on the screen and the color that will appear in the final output. The Separation Setup settings determine the precise CMYK values chosen for a given RGB color. Once an image is in CMYK mode, Adobe Photoshop performs an internal conversion dynamically to display the CMYK colors on an RGB monitor. For more information on the conversion process, see "Converting From One Mode to Another" on page 220.

Each time you convert an image, Adobe Photoshop stores the Separation Setup and Printing Inks Setup settings in a separation table. This table is then used for all future conversions until any of these dialog box settings are changed. For more information on separation tables, see "Saving and Loading Separation Tables" on page 225.

About black generation and separation types

Color separation is based on the principle of translating the three additive colors—red, green, and blue—into their subtractive counterparts—cyan, magenta, and yellow. In theory, equal parts of cyan, magenta, and yellow combine to subtract all light and create black. Due to impurities present in all printing inks, however, a mix of these colors instead yields a muddy brown. To compensate for this deficiency in the color separation process, printers remove some cyan, magenta, and yellow in areas where the three colors overlap, and add black ink.

There are an infinite number of ways that a given color can be translated from RGB mode to CMYK mode. Prepress operators typically use one of two "styles" of color translation: undercolor removal (UCR) or gray component replacement (GCR).

In UCR, the black plate is used to add depth to shadow areas and to neutral colors. In GCR, more black ink is used over a wider range of colors. GCR separations tend to reproduce dark, saturated colors somewhat better than UCR separations, and maintain gray balance better on press. The type of separation you should use is determined by the paper stock you are using and the requirements of your print shop.

Adjusting the black generation and separation type

In most cases, the Adobe Photoshop color separation defaults produce excellent results. Depending on your printer's specifications, however, you might want to use the Separation Setup dialog box to adjust how the CMYK plates are generated by modifying the black generation, setting new ink limits, and changing the undercolor removal method. If you have already converted the image to CMYK mode, you must reconvert the image after adjusting the Separation Setup options.

Note: *Because color QuickDraw printers generate their own black values, the Separation Setup settings have no effect on this type of output.*

To open the Separation Setup dialog box:

Choose Preferences > Separation Setup from the File menu. The Separation Setup dialog box appears.

The Separation Setup dialog box displays a graph showing how the neutral colors in the image (that is, colors with equal parts of cyan, magenta, and yellow—sometimes called a *gray ramp*) will separate, given the current values of the Separation Setup parameters. The *x*-axis represents the neutral color value, from 0 percent (white) to 100 percent (black). The *y*-axis represents the amount of each ink that will be generated for the given value. In most cases, the cyan curve extends beyond the magenta and yellow curves. This is because a small extra amount of cyan is required to produce a true neutral.

Choosing the separation type

By default, Adobe Photoshop uses the GCR type of color separation. Click UCR if you want to use undercolor removal. Check with your print shop to find out which type of separation to use.

Choosing the degree of black generation

For GCR separations, you choose the degree of black generation, as well as setting ink limits, and indicating undercolor addition.

You can choose from several Black Generation settings in the Separation Setup dialog box:

- The Medium option is the default and produces satisfactory results in most cases. The Light and Heavy options let you slightly decrease and increase the effect of the Medium setting.
- The None option generates the color separation using no black plate.
- The Maximum option maps the gray value directly to the black generation value. This option is useful for images that contain a large amount of solid black against a light background, such as screen shots from a computer.
- The Custom option allows you to adjust the black generation curve manually.

To use the Custom option:

1 Select the Black Generation option (Light, Medium, Heavy, or Maximum) that is closest to the type of black generation you want. This gives you a black generation curve to use as a starting point.

2 Choose Custom from the Black Generation menu. A dialog box appears.

3 Position the pointer on the curve, and drag to adjust the black curve. The curves for cyan, magenta, and yellow are adjusted automatically relative to the new black curve and the total ink densities.

Choosing the ink limits

For both GCR and UCR separations, the black generation uses the ink limit settings you enter in the Separation Setup dialog box. The total ink limit is the maximum ink density that your press can support. By default, the black ink limit is 100 percent; the total ink limit is 300 percent. Check with your print shop to find out if you should adjust these values. Note that in the Separation Setup graph, these limits determine the cutoff points for the CMYK curves.

Using undercolor addition

The UCA (undercolor addition) option in the Separation Setup dialog box is used to add color (CMY), after removing some of the black (K) component in the shadow areas. This produces rich, dark shadows from areas that might have appeared flat if they were printed with only black ink. UCA can also prevent the posterization that can occur if there is a lot of subtle detail in the shadows. This option is available only for GCR separations.

Increasing the UCA value increases the amount of CMY removed from beneath black. Values can range from 0 to 100 percent. Check with your print shop for the preferred value. If you are unsure of this value, leave it at 0 percent.

Saving and loading Separation Setup settings

You can use the Save and Load buttons in the Separation Setup dialog box to save settings for black generation and undercolor removal. This is particularly useful when you are creating custom black generation curves. The most recent black generation curve is saved by default in your Preferences file. Use the Save and Load buttons to save and load additional curves.

Using color separation tables

Once you have determined that the settings in the Printing Inks Setup and the Separation Setup dialog boxes produce the colors you want, you can save these settings in a table. You can then reuse the table for separating similar images. This allows you to save separation tables for different printer shops and printing devices.

Note: *Separation tables include only the settings from the Printing Inks Setup and Separation Setup dialog boxes. They don't include the settings from the Monitor Setup dialog box.*

For more information on using separation tables, see "Saving and Loading Separation Tables" on page 225.

STEP 4: MAKE TONAL AND COLOR CORRECTIONS TO YOUR IMAGE

Following a specific procedure when you make color corrections in Adobe Photoshop will help you produce predictable color separations. You should also make use of the Save option available for many of the color correction settings. Saving and reusing settings can help you set up a system for color-correcting images that go to a specific printer or that always use a certain combination of ink, paper stock, and screen frequency.

See *Beyond the Basics* for a step-by-step tutorial on color correction.

STEP 5: CREATE COLOR TRAP

After you have converted the image to CMYK, you can adjust the color trap. Trap is the overlap needed to ensure that a slight misalignment or movement of the plates while printing does not affect the final appearance of the print job. If any distinctly different colors in your image touch, you may need to overprint them slightly to prevent tiny gaps from appearing when the document is printed. This technique is known as adding traps. In most cases, your print shop will determine if any trapping is needed and will tell you the values you need to enter in the Trap dialog box.

Adobe Photoshop uses the value in the Trap dialog box to determine how far overlapping colors should be spread outward to compensate for misregistration on press. Adobe Photoshop traps only by spreading; it does not choke colors. In general, Adobe Photoshop uses the standard rules for trapping:

- All colors spread under black.
- Lighter colors spread under darker colors.
- Yellow spreads under cyan, magenta, and black.
- Pure cyan and pure magenta spread under each other equally.

When creating trap, keep in mind that most four-color images do not need to be trapped extensively unless you are using solid tints in CMYK mode. Excessive trapping may generate a *keyline* effect (or even crosshair lines) in the C, M, and Y plates. These problems are not visible in the composite channel and might show up only when you output to film.

To create trap:

1 Choose CMYK Color from the Mode menu to convert the image to the CMYK mode. Save a version of the file in RGB mode, in case you want to reconvert the image later.

2 Choose Trap from the Image menu. The Trap dialog box appears.

3 Select a unit of measurement from the size units menu.

4 Enter the trapping value provided by your print shop in the Width box; then click OK. Consult your print shop to find out the amount of misregistration you can expect on press.

STEP 6: PRINT THE COLOR PLATES

If you are printing from Adobe Photoshop, choose Page Setup from the File menu. Click Screens in the Page Setup dialog box to display the Halftone Screens dialog box. See "Selecting Halftone Screen Attributes" on page 245 for more information on setting these options. If you're printing from another application, such as a page layout application, you can set the screen in Adobe Photoshop or in the other application. It most cases you get better results when you set the screens in the page layout application.

For information on other printing options, see Chapter 15, "Printing a Proof."

Chapter

15

PRINTING A PROOF

Chapter 15: Printing a Proof

This chapter provides an overview of the basic concepts of printing and describes how to print using the Adobe Photoshop program, including how to select screen attributes for halftones and color separations.

In most instances, the default settings in Adobe Photoshop produce excellent results. For high-resolution printing, it is important to make sure that your system is correctly calibrated. Calibrating for variations in monitors, printing inks, and output devices is described in Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System."

PRINTING: AN OVERVIEW

The most common way to output images is to produce a positive or negative image on paper or film and then transfer the image to a printing plate to be run on a press.

For an image to print as a continuous-tone image, the image must be broken down into a series of dots. These dots are created when you apply a *halftone screen* to the image. The dots in a halftone screen control how much ink is deposited at a specific location. Varying the size and density of the dots creates the optical illusion of variations of gray or continuous color in the image. For a process color image, four halftone screens are used: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black—one for each ink used in the printing process.

In conventional graphics, a halftone is produced by placing a halftone screen between a piece of film and the image and then exposing the film. In Adobe Photoshop, you specify the attributes for the halftone screen prior to producing the film or paper output. To achieve the best results, the output device you use, such as a PostScript language imagesetter, should be set to the correct density limit, and the processor should be properly calibrated. If these factors are inconsistent, the results might be unpredictable.

To print any type of image in Adobe Photoshop, you first select the printing options you want and then specify settings for the particular image type. For color separations, you may also want to adjust how the various plates are generated and create traps. Finally, you print the image as one or several plates.

By default, Adobe Photoshop prints all visible layers. To print an individual channel, select the channel in the Channels palette, and make it the only visible channel before choosing the Print command.

To print an individual layer, select the layer in the Layers palette and make it the only visible layer before choosing the Print command.

GENERAL PRINTING OPTIONS

For any type of image you print, you can choose to print the document name, along with crop marks, registration marks, and a caption. You can print a negative of the image, specify an emulsion side for your film processor, and select a background color for the image.

These printing options appear in the Page Setup dialog box that appears when you choose Page Setup from File menu. The exact appearance of this dialog box varies with different printers. The top half of the Page Setup dialog box contains the standard Macintosh printing options for paper type, printer effects, reduction and enlargement, and orientation. See your Macintosh documentation for more information on these options.

To preview the results of your printing options, click the page preview box in the lower-left corner of the document. See "Previewing the Page Size and Layout" on page 188 for more information on the page preview feature.

Note: *Adobe Systems recommends that, rather than using Landscape orientation, you rotate the image 90 degrees using the Rotate command in the Image menu and then print using Portrait orientation. Printing a page with the Portrait setting is much faster than printing with the Landscape setting.*

Printing labels

The Labels option in the Page Setup dialog box prints the document and channel name on the image.

Printing crop marks

The Crop Marks option in the Page Setup dialog box prints crop marks near the edges of the image. The crop marks indicate where the image is to be trimmed. You can choose to print corner crop marks, center crop marks, or both.

Printing calibration bars

The Calibration Bars option in the Page Setup dialog box prints an 11-step grayscale. The steps represent a transition in density from 0 to 100 percent in 10-percent increments.

In addition, when you print a CMYK color separation, a gradient tint bar is printed on the left of each CMY plate; a progressive color bar is printed on the right.

Printing registration marks

The Registration Marks option in the Page Setup dialog box prints registration marks on the image, including bull's-eyes and star targets. These marks are used primarily for aligning color separations and duotones.

Printing a negative

The Negative option in the Page Setup dialog box prints an inverted version of the image. Unlike the Invert command in the Image menu, the Negative option converts only the output to a negative (not the on-screen image). If you are printing separations directly to film, you will probably want a negative, although in many countries it is common to print film positives. Check with your print shop to find out if it requires a film positive or negative. If you are printing to paper, print a positive.

Specifying an emulsion side

Emulsion refers to the photosensitive layer on a piece of film or photographic paper. By default, the emulsion is up (right-reading); type in the image is readable when the photosensitive layer is facing you. When you select the Emulsion Down option (also right-reading), type is readable when the photosensitive layer is facing away from you. Normally, images printed on paper should be printed emulsion up.

To determine the emulsion side of a piece of film, examine the film under a bright light after it has been developed. The dull side is the emulsion; the shiny side is the base. Check with your print shop to see whether it requires film

with positive emulsion up, negative emulsion up, positive emulsion down, or negative emulsion down.

Using interpolation

Some PostScript Level 2 printers can reduce the jagged appearance of a low-resolution image by automatically resampling up an image while it is printing. If your printer does not have this capability, this option has no effect.

Printing a border

You can specify the width of a border you want to have appear around an image using the Border button. The border is printed in black.

To specify the width of a border:

1 Click Border in the Page Setup dialog box. The Border dialog box appears.

2 Select the unit of measurement you want from the menu.

3 Enter a value between 0 and 10 for the width of the border; then click OK. You can specify decimal values for the width.

Printing a caption

Click the Caption option when you want to print the text you entered for the caption in the File Info dialog box. See "Entering File Information" on page 24. Caption text is printed as 9-point Helvetica plain. This font cannot be changed.

To define a caption:

Select the Caption option in the Page Setup dialog box.

Selecting a background color

The Background button in the Page Setup dialog box lets you select a background color to be printed on the page outside the image area. This option is especially useful if you are printing slides to a film recorder, because a black or colored background is often desirable for slides. To use this option, click Background; then select a color from the Color Picker dialog box. The Background option is a printing option only and does not affect the image area itself.

Creating bleed

The Bleed button lets you print crops marks inside the image instead of outside the image. Use this when you want to trim the image within the graphic.

Displaying the transfer functions

The Transfer button in the Page Setup dialog box lets you adjust the transfer functions that Adobe Photoshop uses to print the image. Transfer functions are traditionally used to compensate for dot gain or dot loss that may occur when an image is transferred to film. For information on setting the transfer functions, see "Compensating for Dot Gain Using Transfer Functions" on page 34.

SELECTING HALFTONE SCREEN ATTRIBUTES

Halftone screen attributes include the screen frequency and dot shape for each screen used in the printing process. For color separations, you must also specify an angle for each of the color screens. Setting the screens at different angles ensures that the dots placed by the four screens blend to look like continuous color and do not produce moiré patterns.

Check with your print shop for the preferred frequency, angle, and dot settings before creating your halftone screens.

To define the screen attributes:

1 Click Screens in the Page Setup dialog box. The Halftone Screens dialog box appears. The following illustration shows the dialog box as it appears for a CMYK image.

2 Set the screen frequency and angle for each screen. The screen frequencies and angles for grayscale and color halftones are discussed in the following sections.

Note: *To use the default halftone screen built into the printer, select the Use Printer's Default Screens option. The specifications from the Halftone Screens dialog box are then ignored when the halftone screens are generated.*

3 Select the dot shape you want from the Shape menu. If you want all four screens to have the same dot shape, click the Use Same Shape For All Inks option.

Selecting Custom from the Shape menu displays a dialog box for defining your own dot shapes using PostScript commands. The Custom feature is useful for printing with nonstandard halftone algorithms. For information about using PostScript language commands, see the *PostScript Language Reference Manual* published by Addison-Wesley, or consult the imagesetter's manufacturer.

For optimal printing, the image resolution should be twice the halftone screen frequency. If the resolution is more than 2.5 times the screen frequency, Adobe Photoshop displays an alert message. See "Determining the Scan Resolution" on page 37 for more information.

Printing a grayscale halftone

For a grayscale image, enter a screen frequency from 1 to 999.999 in the Frequency text box; then choose the unit of measurement you want from the menu.

Enter a screen angle from +180 to –180 degrees in the Angle text box.

Printing halftones for a color separation

To print halftones for a color separation, choose the color of the screen from the Ink menu, and manually enter the frequency and angle for each of the four screens; or you can choose to have Adobe Photoshop enter the frequency and angles for each screen. To do this, click the Auto button, and enter the resolution of the output device and the screen frequency you intend to use in the Auto Screens dialog box.

When you click OK in the Auto Screens dialog box, Adobe Photoshop determines the best frequencies and angles for the four halftone screens and enters these values in the Halftone Screens dialog box. Changing these values may result in moiré patterns.

If you are using a high-resolution output device equipped with PostScript Level 2 or an Emerald controller, make sure that the Use Accurate Screens option is checked in the Auto Screens dialog box (or in the Halftone Screens dialog box if you're entering the values manually). This lets the program access the correct angles and halftone screen frequencies for high-resolution output. If your output device is not equipped with PostScript Level 2 or an Emerald controller, this option has no effect.

Saving and loading halftone screen settings

You can save your halftone screen settings to use with other Adobe Photoshop documents by using the Save and Load buttons in the Halftone Screens dialog box. To save the new settings as the default, hold down the Option key, and click the —> Default button. To return to the original default settings, hold down the Option key, and press <—Default.

ADDITIONAL PRINTING OPTIONS

You can also set printing options using the Print dialog box that appears when you choose Print from the File menu. These options let you print only a selected area of an image, transfer image data to the output device in ASCII format, and print a color-corrected composite image on a color printer. The appearance of this dialog box varies with different printers.

Printing a selected area

You can print a selected part of an image if the selection is a rectangle and 100 percent of all pixels within the rectangle is selected.

To print a selected part of an image:

1 Use the rectangular marquee tool to select the part of an image you want to print.

2 Choose Print from the File menu. The Print dialog box appears.

3 In the Print Range options, click Selection; click OK.

Printing a color-corrected image

To print a CMYK version of an RGB, Lab, or indexed color image, click the Print in CMYK option in the Print dialog box. Before using this option, make sure that you have entered the correct settings in the Printing Inks Setup dialog box. See "Step 3: Enter the Printing Inks Setup Information" on page 31 for more information on these settings.

The Print in CMYK option causes Adobe Photoshop, instead of your printer's built-in color tables, to make the conversion to CMYK colors. This method usually produces better results. The option works with color PostScript printers, but it is not recommended for PostScript Level 2 printers.

Printing separations

By default, a single document is printed for CMYK images. If you want to print four separate documents (one for each color), select the Print Separations option.

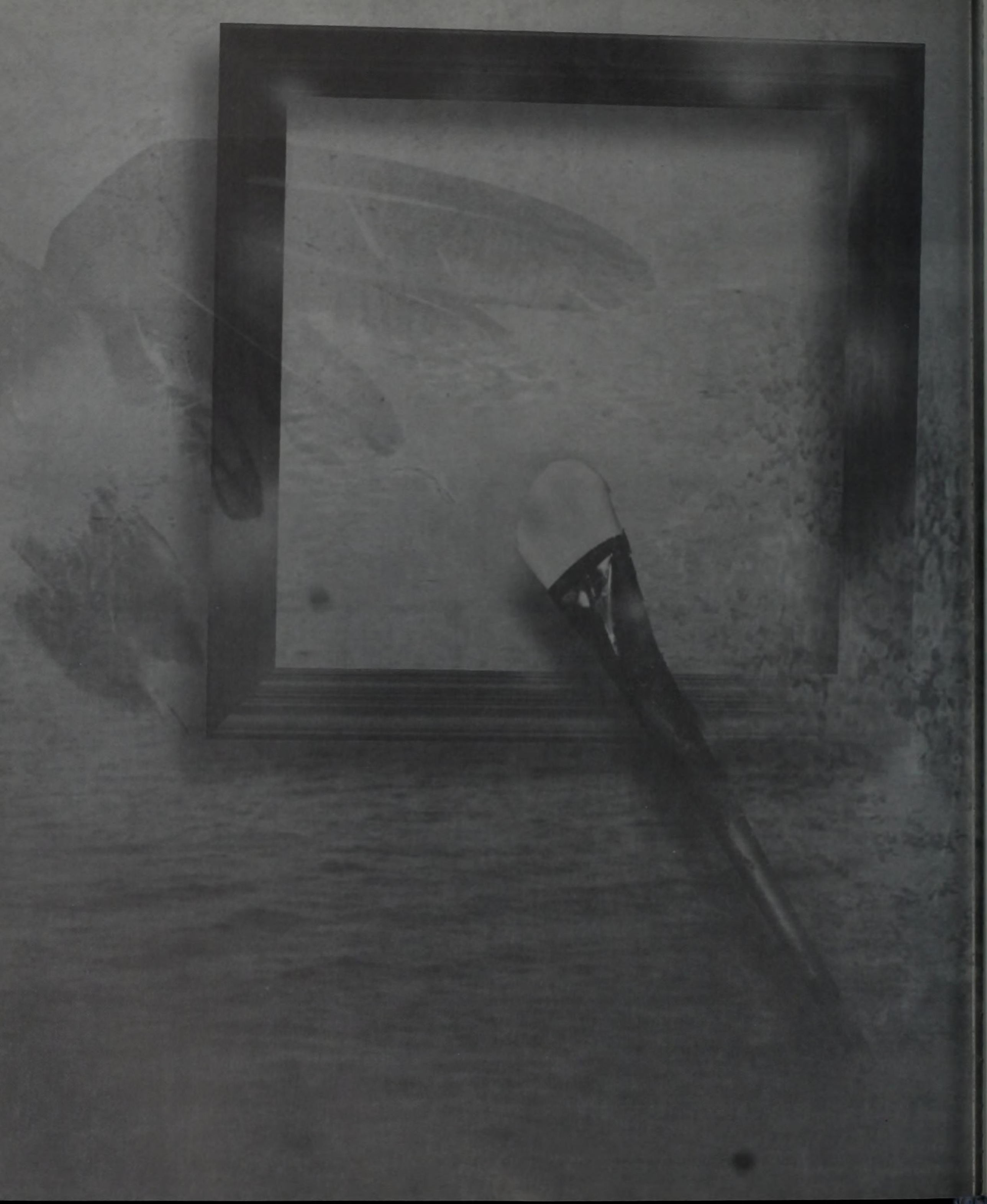
Printing with print spoolers and across networks

By default, Adobe Photoshop transfers binary information to printers. However, some print spooler programs and computer networks don't support files that are binary encoded. In these situations, you can choose to transfer the document in ASCII format. Files that are encoded in ASCII format require about twice as much time to transfer as binary files, because they contain about twice as many characters.

To select the ASCII encoding option, click ASCII in the Print dialog box.

Appendix

TIPS AND TROUBLESHOOTING



Appendix: Tips and Troubleshooting

This appendix contains some tips for using the Adobe Photoshop program most efficiently and solutions to problems you may encounter when using the program. For more troubleshooting information and tips on optimizing your computer system for Adobe Photoshop, see the *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started* guide. For last-minute information not included in the printed documentation, see the Read Me file installed with the program.

BEFORE YOU CALL TECHNICAL SUPPORT

There are several steps you can take before calling technical support to report a problem. Performing these steps can solve many problems and often eliminate the need for telephone assistance.

Before calling technical support:

- See the Read Me file installed with the program for last-minute information not included in this user guide.
- Restart your machine without your system extensions. To do this, hold down the Shift key, and choose Restart from the Special menu. Restart Adobe Photoshop.
- Open the Preferences folder in your System Folder, and drag the Photoshop 3.0 Prefs folder to the Trash. Restart Adobe Photoshop.
- Reinstall Adobe Photoshop.

PROBLEMS WITH MEMORY

Adobe Photoshop cannot open an Adobe Illustrator 5 file.

Problem: Adobe Photoshop displays an out-of-memory message when attempting to open an Illustrator file, even though the file is small.

Cause: Even small Adobe Illustrator files can have a number of complex elements, such as many blends, a large number of paths, and so on. To open an Adobe Illustrator file, Adobe Photoshop must rasterize the vectors (the mathematical descriptions of the artwork) into pixel data. Too many complex elements can cause you to run out of memory.

Solution: Reopen the Adobe Illustrator file in Adobe Illustrator and make the file less complex. This will also prevent printing problems that can occur with complex Adobe Illustrator files.

Adobe Photoshop often displays out-of-memory messages

Problem: There is not enough memory available for Adobe Photoshop.

Cause: Adobe Photoshop requires three to five times the file size to be available in RAM. When there is insufficient RAM, Adobe Photoshop swaps out data to the hard disk, which is the designated scratch disk.

Solution: Increase the amount of RAM available to Adobe Photoshop, or designate a secondary scratch disk. For complete information on using memory effectively with Adobe Photoshop, see *Adobe Photoshop Getting Started.*

PROBLEMS WITH IMAGE APPEARANCE

Printed image appears different from image on-screen

Problem: The colors in the printed image appear different from the colors in the image on-screen, even when viewed in CMYK mode.

Cause: For accurate color printing, it is essential to calibrate your monitor and the Adobe Photoshop program for the various factors that affect the printed output. The settings in the Monitor Setup, Printing Inks Setup, and Separation Setup dialog boxes determine how Adobe Photoshop translates colors between RGB and CMYK mode.

Solution: Follow the procedures described in Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System" and Chapter 14, "Producing a Separation."

CMYK colors are different from those specified in RGB mode

Problem: The CMYK values generated by the separation are different from the values you specified in RGB mode.

Cause: How colors are translated between CMYK and RGB modes is determined by the parameters specified in the Separation Setup, Monitor Setup, and Printing Inks Setup dialog boxes. Depending on the setting of these parameters, CMYK values specified in RGB mode may separate as different values. (If the colors are specified in CMYK mode, they will separate as specified.)

Solution: To determine the actual values that will result from a separation in RGB mode, choose Show Colors from the Window menu to display the Colors palette. Be sure to set the Colors palette to the CMYK mode. Use the eyedropper tool to display the color in the Colors palette (the color values appear next to the sliders).

CMYK colors also may not appear as expected if you set the black and white points in RGB mode and then convert the image to CMYK. To get the CMYK black and white colors that you want, check your points after converting the image.

Painting tools don't work

Problem: Painting tools don't apply any paint on the image.

Cause: Painting tools only work on the target layer and inside areas that are parts of the current selection or when no part of the layer is selected.

Solution: Check to make sure that you are not painting outside a selected area. Check to make sure that you have not previously hidden the edges of the selection by pressing ⌘-H. If you are painting outside a selected area, choose None from the Select menu, or use the Inverse command from the Select menu to switch the selected and unselected areas.

You might also be attempting to paint or fill a layer which has the Preserve Transparency option selected. In this case, painting is limited to the areas of the layer that contain pixels. Deselect this option in the Layers palette to edit anywhere on the layer.

Painting or editing tools are producing unexpected results

Problem: Painting or editing tools are not working as expected.

Cause: The desired layer or channel may not be selected in the Layers or Channels palette.

Solution: Check the target channel in the Channels palette before editing. To move to the correct layer, select the move tool in the toolbox, and hold down the ⌘ key as you click the element you want to edit in the image. The layer containing the element becomes the target layer in the Layers palette, and you can begin painting or editing. If the layer has a layer mask, be sure you have selected the correct thumbnail in the Layers palette to edit either the layer or the mask.

You might also need to check the blending mode and opacity settings for the painting or editing tool in the Options palette.

PRINTING PROBLEMS

Printing is unusually slow

Problem: The printer is taking an unusually long time to print.

Cause: The resolution of your image may be too high for the resolution of your printer.

Solution: Make sure that you have properly sampled down your image to comply with the resolution at which you are printing. Before printing the image, save your file; then use the Image Size command in the Image menu to adjust the resolution of your image (see Chapter 11, "Resizing and Resolution"). For example, if you are printing proofs to a 300-dpi printer, you might want to create a low-resolution version of the image (no more than 100 dpi). Use this image to print the comps quickly.

Remember to use the Revert command in the File menu to restore the image to the version you saved before the resampling. This command will retain all of the information in the image in case you later want to print to a higher-resolution device.

WORKING WITH THE AMIGA FORMAT

Adobe Photoshop can import and export images saved in the Amiga IFF format. The IFF format is divided into two broad standards: an 8-bit-per-pixel format and a 24-bit-per-pixel format written by applications such as Video Toaster. Adobe Photoshop supports only the 8-bit format. If you attempt to open a 24-bit-per-pixel document, you will get a Cannot Parse error message.

WORKING WITH THE SCITEX CT FORMAT

Adobe Photoshop can import and export images saved in the Scitex CT format. (To be exported, an image in this format must first be in CMYK mode.) Images in Scitex CT format are CMYK files that are often extremely large in size. For input, these files are generated using a Scitex scanner. When Adobe Photoshop outputs in Scitex CT format, the files are printed to film using the Scitex rasterizing unit, which produces separations with a patented Scitex halftoning system. This system produces very few moiré patterns and is often demanded in professional color work, such as ads that run in national magazines.

WORKING WITH FILM RECORDERS

The optimum image resolution for 8000-line and 4000-line 32-bit film recorders that shoot 100ASA Ektachrome film depends on the quality of the film recorder. High-quality film recorders have small *spot sizes*, that is, smaller-sized pixels on the faces of the recorders' CRTs. Some examples of such film recorders are the Solitaire, Matrix, Masterpiece, and Lasergraphics.

A 4000-line film recorder, for example, writes output using 4000 scan lines. The spot size on a lower-quality recorder may be as large as several scan lines; it is usually at least as large as two scan lines. Because recorders often use the same spot size at both resolution settings, there is usually no improvement in image quality at the higher-resolution setting.

For high-quality film recorders, improvement in image quality usually tapers off at an image resolution between 150 and 200 pixels per inch (based on a slide logical "size" of 8 by 10 inches). The only way to determine conclusively the optimum image resolution for your film recorder is to generate slides at various image resolutions. This rule also applies to Adobe Photoshop images reproduced as 4-by-5-inch film transparencies.

In addition, for the best results, you should calibrate your system for the film recorder. A quick and simple way to do this is to print a slide and use the Gamma adjustment (described in Chapter 2, "Calibrating Your System") to make the screen look like the slide. The gamma adjustment should improve the image quality by calibrating for overall lightness and darkness.

Index

About Plug-in command 163
Accurate Screens 246
Acquire command 45
acquire modules 41
Actual Color mode 21
Add command 162
Add Layer Mask command 143
Add Noise filter 169
additive colors 8
Adobe Dimensions 83
Adobe Illustrator 44
  as vector-based images 3
  copying paths to 83
  exporting paths as Illustrator documents 54
  opening files in Adobe Photoshop 42
  placing artwork in Adobe Photoshop 42, 71
  problems with files 249
  using PANTONE colors in documents exported to 126, 232
Adobe Photoshop
  allocating memory 1
  improving performance 1
  using ATM with 1
  working efficiently 1
Adobe Premiere 51
Adobe Streamline 83
airbrush tool 15, 103
Aldus FreeHand 50
Aldus PageMaker 50
  using PANTONE colors in documents exported to 126, 232
aligning type 117
All command 61
alpha channels 147
  and file size 147
  calculating 158
  copying 157
  copying to a 32-bit video card 158
  copying to video source 158
  displaying 156
  editing 156
  file size of 147
  naming 155
  reordering 157
  saving 157
  saving selection in 155
Amiga computers, exporting files to 54
Amiga HAM format 54
Amiga Interchange File Format (IFF) 41, 49, 251
anchor points
  adding and deleting 84
  creating 79
  definition 78
angle of rotation, measuring 21
ANPA-COLOR, selecting 127
Anti-alias PostScript option 43
anti-aliased edges and Adobe Illustrator artwork 43
  copying from Clipboard 43
  type 117
Anti-aliased option for selections 66
Anti-aliased PICT format 45
Append Colors command 122
Apple Color Picker (color wheel) 121, 128
Apply Image command 159
Arbitrary Map option, in Curves dialog box 208
Arbitrary option 73
arrowhead options 102
ASCII format 247
Associated Press Picture Desk system 54
ATM
  using Adobe Photoshop with 1
  using with type 114
Auto Erase option 103
Auto Levels command 203
Auto option for adjusting contrast 203
Auto Range Options dialog box 204
Auto Resolution option 192
Auto Screens dialog box 246

Background color 16, 119
  default 93, 119
  filling with 108
  mixing in Scratch palette 123
  specifying for printing 245
  switching to foreground 16, 93, 119
backgrounds
  adding to a document 138
  and layers 129
  converting to layers 138
  creating 11
  definition 129
  deleting 138
  duplicating 138
  opaque 11
  transparent 11
basic concepts for working with color images 3

Beep When Tasks Finish option 13
Behind mode 98
Bicubic interpolation option 187
Bilinear interpolation option 187
binary format 247
bit depth 4
bit resolution 4, 227
bitmapped images 217
  conversion methods 221-224
  converting grayscale to 221
  converting to grayscale 224
  saving in EPS format 51
  specifying a halftone screen 222
bitmapped type 115
black and white images
  converting to 215, 221
black and white points
  in scanning images 40
  setting 203-208
Black Body option 229
black generation
  adjusting 239
  options 240
black ink limit 240
Black Matte 60
black plate generation 239-240
bleed 245
Blend If option for layers 140
blend tool. *See* gradient tool
blending modes
  in channel calculations 160
blending range for layers 139-140
Blur filter 164
Blur More filter 164, 223
blur/sharpen tool 16, 107
BMP format 41, 50
Border command 64
borders
  around a selection 64
  printing 245
  specifying width 245
brightness and contrast, adjusting 202-213
brightness values
  definition 7
  equalizing 214
Brightness/Contrast command 203
Brush Options command 97
brushes
  choosing 95
  creating 95-96
  custom 96
  deleting 96
  saving, loading, and appending 97
  selecting shape and size 94
  setting angles 95
  spacing 95
Brushes palette 94
buffer, copying selection to 105
bump maps 174
burn tool 16, 107
burning-in an area 107

Calcomp tablet 101
Calculations command 158-162
calibrating 27-36
  about 27
  adjusting gray balance 35
  and converting to CMYK 27, 30, 31
  and image display 27
  compensating for dot gain 33
  ink colors 31
  monitor 28-31
  multiple monitors 29
  Printing Inks settings 31
  screen image to color proof 33
  using third-party utilities 28
calibration bars 33, 244
Canvas Size command 192-193
captions 54, 245
  entering 24
  printing 24
channels 217. *See also* alpha channels
  alpha 147
  calculating 158-162
  changing options for 157
  color 147
  comparing brightness values 161
  copying between documents 158
  copying to a video card 158
  creating 154
  default 217
  definition 147
  deleting 157
  displaying a single channel 148
  duplicating 149
  editing 148
  editing selections in 156
  file size of 147
  for color information 217
  hiding 148
  mask channel for layer mask 144
  mask options for 154
  merging 150
  moving in Channels palette 157
  naming 154-155
  printing 243
  renaming 157
  reordering 157
  saving 157
  saving selections in 155
  selecting 148
  showing 148
  splitting into separate documents 150
  using Calculations commands 158-162
  viewing in color 149

Channels palette 148-149. *See also* Channels
checkerboard pattern
for indicating transparency 14
Clear command 71
Clear mode 98
Clipboard
copying selections between applications 68
Export Clipboard option 69
preferences 69
rasterizing images from 71
saving contents when quitting 12, 69
clipping color values 202, 203
clipping groups for layers 140
clipping paths 88
in EPS documents 51
printing 90
saving 90
Clockwise Spectrum option 111
Clone options, for rubber stamp tool 104
closed paths 79
Clouds filter 171
CMYK
color model 8
color values, determining 250
display 27
identifying out-of-gamut colors 196-197
previewing out-of-gamut colors 198
printing 247
CMYK Composites option 217
CMYK images
color proofs 32
converted from RGB 219
converting to 225
definition 10
setting display options 217
working with 217
CMYK Preview command 197
color 10. *See also* color correction; Colors palette; custom colors; Picker palette; Scratch palette; selecting color; Swatches palette
additive 8
background 16, 93, 119
balance, adjusting 202-207
basic concepts 3
changing midtones 107
controls 16
custom 126
display options 219
foreground 16, 93, 119
inverting 214
knockouts 128
measuring CMYK 10
measuring Lab 11
measuring RGB 10
measuring values 121
nonprinting 10, 120, 125, 219
sampling using the eyedropper tool 119
selecting using color picker 122-125
selecting using eyedropper tool 119
selecting using Picker palette 120
selecting using Swatches palette 121
spot 128
subtractive 8
color bar, in Picker palette 121
color casts
compensating for when calibrating 35
in monitor 29
in scanner 41
removing from images 204
Color Channels in Color option 149
color conversion 27, 225, 250
color correction
adjusting balance 202
adjusting color levels 203-209
adjusting contrast 203-208
adjusting highlights, shadows, and midtones 204-208
applying to multiple images 213
automatic 203
canceling adjustments 201
converting to a black-and-white image 215
displaying before and after values 200
displaying values in Picker palette 201
equalizing brightness values 214
inaccurate colors 250
previewing changes 199-200
removing color casts 204
setting black and white points 203
using Brightness/Contrast command 203
using Curves dialog box 207
using Hue/Saturation command 209
using indexed color tables 228
using Levels dialog box 204
using Levels sliders 204-207
using Replace Color command 211
using target values 204
using the Selective Color command 212
using Variations dialog box 201
color gamuts 9
Color Halftone filter 176
color lookup tables 219
Color mode 99
color models
CMYK 8
HSB 7
Lab 9, 219
RGB 8

color modes, definitions 10. *See also* modes
color picker 124-128
entering target values for color correction 204
color proof 32, 35
calibrating screen image to 33
Color Range command 59
color separation tables 225-226
color separations
adjusting trap 241
and dot gain 33-34
definition 10
generating black plate for 239-241
overview 238
printing 246-247
questions to ask printer 237
color tables
animated 200
for color separations 225-226
for indexed color 226-230
saving and loading 225, 230
color trap 241
color values
displaying in Info palette 21
previewing changes 200
specifying in color picker 125
specifying in Picker palette 121
color wheel 8, 128
Colorize option, in Hue/Saturation dialog box 210
column width, setting 19, 191, 193
commands
assigning to palette 22
Commands palette 22-23
complementary colors 8
Composite Controls 70. *See also* blending range for layers
compositing
specifying a color range 139
specifying a mode 139
compressing files
using JPEG format 51
using LZW 53
using PICT format 52
using TIFF format 53
CompuServe Graphics Interchange Format (GIF) 41, 50
Constrain Proportions and File Size options 43, 45, 191
Constrained Aspect Ratio option 58
Contract command 63
contrast and brightness, adjusting 203-213
converting images. *See* image types
copying
a selection 68
and pasting 69-71
channels 158
channels to video source 158
in Scratch palette 123
layers between documents 136
PostScript artwork from Clipboard 71
to image buffer 105
corner point 83
corner tool 83
correcting mistakes 24
reverting to saved image 23
undoing last action 23
Counterclockwise Spectrum option 111
Create Publisher command 25
Crop command 189
crop marks 244
cropping images 189-191
adjusting the cropping tool marquee 190
defining size and resolution of cropped area 189
measuring while cropping 22
rotating while cropping 191
using Crop command 189
using cropping tool 189-191
cropping tool 15, 189-191
Crystallize filter 176
cursors. *See* tool pointers
cursor types 94
Curves dialog box 207-208
curves, drawing 80
Custom black generation option 240
Custom filter 179
custom ink colors 35, 126-128
Custom Pattern option, for bitmapped conversions 223
Custom Shapes button 246
Cut command 71
cylinder anamorphosis effect 167

Darken mode 99
darkening selected areas 107
DCS files 150
DCS format. *See* Desktop Color Separations format
Default Colors icon 16, 119
Define Brush command 96
Define Pattern command 112
Defloat command 67
Defringe command 72
De-Interlace filter 179
Delete Channel command 158
Delete Layer command 138
Delete Selection command 138
deleting
alpha channels 157
backgrounds 138
layers 138
selections 67
DeluxePaint 49
Desaturate command 211
Desaturate option for sponge tool 197
deselect 78
deselecting 61
Desktop Color Separations (DCS) format 51

Despeckle filter 169
device resolution 5
dialog boxes, setting position of 12
Difference Clouds filter 171
Difference command 162
Difference mode 99
Diffuse filter 176
Diffusion Dither option, for bitmapped conversions 221
digitizing tablets 101
direction lines 78
direction points 81, 84
directional light effect 173
Displace filter 165
displacement map 165
display options, color 219
displaying color adjustments 199
Dissolve mode 98
distance, measuring 21
Distort filters 165
distorting a selection 76
distorting an image 165
dithering 219, 221, 228
Do Not Apply option for layer mask 144
documents
  backgrounds 11
  creating 11
  displaying file size 188
  duplicating 159
  flattening 145
  opening 42
  opening sections of 46
  viewing in multiple windows 12
dodge/burn/sponge tool 16, 107
dodging an area 107
dot gain
  about 33
  adjusting for dot gain on an imagesetter 33
  adjusting for dot gain on press 34
  adjusting in grayscale and duotone images 32
  transfer functions 245
dot shape
  for halftone screens 248
duotones 230-236
  adjusting curves 232
  adjusting dot gain in 32
  converting grayscale images to 230
  definition 230
  examples 233
  exporting to other applications 235
  generating custom color plates for 128
  printing 128, 233, 235-236
  reading values in Info palette 233
  saving and loading settings 234
  saving curves 233
  saving in Scitex CT format 235
  specifying ink colors 232
  specifying overprint colors 234
  viewing individual plates 234
Duplicate command 159
Duplicate Layer command 138
duplicating. *See also* copying
  backgrounds 138
  channels 149
  documents 159
  images 159
  layers 138
  merged data 159
  paths 78
  selections 68
dust, removing from image 169
Dust and Scratches filter 169
Dynamic Sliders in Picker option 120
Edges, smoothing 65, 85, 87
editing modes 98-99
editing tools 93
Effects command 74
EFI color tables 226
elliptical marquee tool option 57
Emboss filter 177
Emerald controller 246
emulsion 246
Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) format 50
encoding option, for printing 247
EPS format
  opening Adobe Illustrator files 43
  saving in 50
EPS format. *See* Encapsulated PostScript format
EPS PICT Preview file format
  opening files in 44
  saving files in 50
EPS Rasterizer 42
EPS TIFF Preview file format
  opening files in 44
  saving files in 50
Equalize command 195, 214
  using in conjunction with Histogram command 214
Erase Layer option 102
Erase to Saved option 102
eraser tool 15, 102
erasing
  Auto Erase 103
  eraser tool 15
Even-Odd rule 90
Expand command 63
Export command 54-55
exporting
  Clipboard 69
  documents 47-53
  duotones 235
  paths 54

exposure (for dodge/burn tool) 97
Extrude filter 177
eye icon, in Layers palette 134
eyedropper options
  Eyedropper Options palette 120
  in Levels dialog box 204
eyedropper tool 15, 119, 122

Facet filter 170
fade-out rate 101
Faster option 217
Feather option 65
feathering selections 65
file creator ID 53
file formats. *See* individual format names
File Info command 24
file information
  entering descriptive 24
  searching for 24
file size
  and resizing 191
  and resolution 7, 185
  changing 191
  constraining 45, 50, 191
  displaying 188
  required for alpha channels 147
  tracking and layers 145
  using to set scan resolution 38
file type 53
Fill command 112
Fill with Neutral Color option 140
filling 108-113
  non-floating selections 108
  opacity 112
  paths 85
  selections 112
  shortcuts 108
  tolerance 109
  transparency 111
  using a spectrum 111
  using paint bucket tool 109
  with a gradient 109-111
  with background color 108, 112, 119
  with foreground color 108-109, 112, 119
  with patterns 112
  with PostScript patterns 113
  with saved version of image 112
filling with patterns 109
film recorders, working with 251
FilmStrip file format 51
  opening files in 44
filters
  Add Noise filter 169
  applying to layers 163
  Blur filter 164
  Blur More filter 164
  Clouds filter 171
  Color Halftone filter 176
  Crystallize filter 176
  Custom filter 179
  De-Interlace filter 179
  Despeckle filter 169
  Difference Clouds filter 171
  Diffuse filter 176
  Displace filter 165
  Distort filters 165
  Dust and Scratches filter 169
  Emboss filter 177
  examples of 181
  Extrude filter 177
  Facet filter 170
  Find Edges filter 177
  Fragment filter 170
  Gaussian Blur filter 164
  High Pass filter 179
  installing 163
  last filter 163
  Lens Flare filter 171
  Lighting Effects filter 171-174
  Maximum filter 180
  Median filter 170, 180
  Mezzotint filter 170
  Minimum filter 180
  Mosaic filter 170
  Motion Blur filter 165
  Noise filters 169
  NTSC Colors filter 179
  Offset filter 180
  Pinch filter 166
  Pointillize filter 178
  Polar Coordinates filter 167
  previewing effects 164
  Radial Blur filter 165
  Ripple filter 167
  Sharpen Edges filter 175
  Sharpen filter 175
  Sharpen More filter 175
  Shear filter 167
  shortcuts 164
  shortcuts for using 164
  Solarize filter 178
  special purpose filters 179
  Spherize filter 167
  Stylize filters 176
  Texture Fill filter 175
  Tiles filter 178
  Trace Contour 177
  Twirl filter 168
  Unsharp Mask filter 175
  using 163
  Video filters 179
  Wave filter 168
  Wind filter 178
  Zigzag filter 168
Find Edges filter 177
Finger Painting option 106
Fixed Size option 58

flatness setting, for exporting pen tool paths 90
Flatten Image command 146
flattening
layers 146
saving a flattened version of a file 48
flipping a selection 74
Float command 67
floating selections 66
changing mode of 70, 132
controlling opacity of 70, 132
defining feather edge for 65
deleting 71, 138
in Layers palette 132
moving 66
moving and copying 132
pasting 70
FOCOLTONE colors, selecting 127
focusing. *See* sharpening
foreground color 16, 93, 103, 119
default 93, 119
filling with 108, 112
mixing in Scratch palette 123
switching to background 16, 119
Foreground to Transparent option 111
Fragment filter 170
Free option 73
fringe around selections 71
From Saved option 106
From Snapshot option 105
Fuzziness option 61

Gamma
adjusting 204-205
definition 204
monitor setting 28
saving and loading custom settings 29
Gamma Control Panel 28
gamut 9, 196
gamut warning
changing color of 197
changing opacity of 197
displaying 197
Gaussian Blur filter 164
GCR. *See* gray component replacement
General Preferences dialog box 12
GIF format. *See* CompuServe Graphics Interchange Format
gradient fill tool 15, 109-111
linear fill 110
measuring distance of gradient fill 22
midpoint 111
offset value 111
gray balance
about 31
adjusting when calibrating 35
gray component replacement (GCR) 239
gray ramp 240
grayscale images. *See also* image types
and dot gain 33
converting to color 224
definition 10
printing 248
Grayscale preview of color selections 60
Group with Previous Layer option 139, 142
Grow command 63

Halftone Screen option, for bitmapped conversions 222
halftone screens
for duotones 235
printing for color separations 246
saving and loading settings 51, 222, 249
saving in EPS files 51
selecting attributes for 245
setting dot shape 246
setting screen angles 246
specifying density settings for 34
halos around selections 71
HAM format 54
hand tool 15
hard disk space used by channels 157
Hard Light mode 99
header 53
height of image 188
Hide Edges command 66
hiding palettes 20
hiding selection borders 66
High Pass filter 179
highlights, adjusting 201-202, 208-215
histogram
displaying 199
in Levels dialog box 205
Histogram command 199
using in conjunction with Equalize command 214
HSB color model 7, 210
hue
adjusting 209
definition 7
Hue mode 99
Hue/Saturation command 209-210

IBM PC formats 50, 53
IFF. *See* Amiga Interchange File Format
Illustrator. *See* Adobe Illustrator
image resolution 4
and halftone screen frequency 246
and image size 6
and resampling 185
and scanning 37
specifying for PICT format 52

image size
and resolution 6
changing 191, 193
displaying height and width 188
setting while cropping 189
Image Size command 38, 54, 191
image types
about 217-219
converting to bitmapped 221-223
converting to black and white 215
converting to CMYK 219, 225
using calibration settings 27, 30, 31, 33, 238
using custom color separation tables 225-226
converting to color 224
converting to duotones 230
converting to grayscale 223-224
converting to indexed color 226
converting to Lab 224
converting to multichannel 224
images
duplicating 159
exporting 54-55
importing or acquiring 45-47
opening 42-47
saving 47-54
imagesetter 243
ImageWriter Color module 54
Impressionist option, for rubber stamp tool 106
indexed color images 217
converting 225
converting other image types to 226
dithering options 228
manipulating the indexed color table 228
specifying resolution 227
types of 228
indexed color table 227-230
editing colors 228
manipulating 228
saving and reusing 230
Info palette 21
out-of-gamut colors 21
out-of-gamut warning 196
previewing color values with 200
reading color values in 120
ink colors
adjusting color separation values for 31
custom, setting characteristics 35
specifying for Duotone-mode images 232
interlaced images 54
interleaved format 53
interpolation methods 72, 187
Interpolation option for printing 247
Inverse command 65
Invert command 214, 244
inverting colors 214

Jagged type 250
JPEG file format 51

Kerning 116
keywords 24
Kodak CMS PhotoCD format
saving files in 44
Kodak CMS PhotoCD format
opening files in 43
KPCMS (Kodak Precision Color Management System) 43

Lab
color conversion and 225
color model 9, 219
images 219, 224
mode 217, 224
labels, printing 244
lasso tool 15, 58
last filter 163
layer groups. *See* clipping groups for layers
layer mask
adding 142
applying 145
color 143
definition 142
discarding 145
editing 143
hiding 143
indicating hidden and visible area 143
mask channel 143
moving 143
opacity 143
removing 145
turning off 143
layer modes 139
layers
adding a mask 142
adding to a group 142
adding to document 131
and backgrounds 129
and file size 145
and selections 131
applying filter to 163
blending modes 139
blending ranges 139-140
converting backgrounds to 138
converting floating selection into 67
copying between documents 136
creating when pasting 131
definition 129
deleting 138
duplicating 138, 159
erasing 102

filling with neutral color 140
flattening 145
grouping 140
hiding 134
in channel calculations 160
linking for moving 135
merging 145
modes 139
moving in document window 135
moving in Layers palette 136
moving with mask 144
opacity 138
painting and editing in 114
preserving transparency 133
printing 243
removing a mask 142
removing from a document 145
removing from a group 142
renaming 138
reordering 136
saving 48, 146
selecting in document window 135
selecting in Layers palette 130
setting transparency pattern 134
showing 134
target 130
transparency 133
layers and floating selections 131
Layers palette 130-136
floating selection in 131
identifying 142
layer groups 142
linking for moving 135
Preserve Transparency option 133
resizing thumbnails 135
leading 116
Lens Flare filter 171
letter spacing 116
Levels dialog box 204-207
Lighten mode 99
lightening selected areas 107
Lighting Effects filter 171-174
line spacing 116
line tool 15, 102
measuring distances with 22
options 102
linear gradient fill 110
link icon, in Layers palette 135
linking layers for moving 135
Load Selection command 156
Luminosity mode 99
LZW compression 45, 53

MacPaint format 41, 52
magic wand tool 15, 58
magnifying glass. *See* zoom tool
magnifying windows 17-18
Make Layer command 138
Make Selection command 87
marquee. *See* selection marquee
marquee tools 15, 57-65
marquee zooming 18
mask channel
for layers mask 144
Masked Areas option 153-154
masking. *See also* layer mask
masks
alpha channel 156
definition 147
editing in 156
editing in Quick Mask mode 152-153
in channel calculations 160-161
loading 156
selections as 156
using to replace color 211
Matting command 71
Maximum filter 180
measuring
angle of rotation 22
changing ruler units 19
changing units of measurement 19
color values 21
cropping marquee 22
distance 21, 103
selection marquee 18
using line tool 22, 103
Median filter 170, 180
memory
allocating to Adobe Photoshop 1
problems with 251
Merge Channels command 150
Merge Layers command 145
Merged Layers Only option 159
merging layers 145
Mezzotint filter 170
midtones 107, 202-208
Minimum filter 180
mixing colors 123
modes. *See also* blending modes; editing modes; painting modes
choosing for layers 139
CMYK 10
grayscale 10
in channel calculations 160-161
Lab 11
painting and editing 98-99
RGB 10
setting for tools 98
Modify command 63-64
moiré patterns 245, 246
monitor
calibration 27-36
display of color adjustments 200
settings, saving and loading 30

Monitor Setup 29-30
monotones 230-234
Mosaic filter 170
Motion Blur filter 165
mouse, displaying coordinates 21
move tool 15
moving
  floating selections 132
  from layer to layer 135
  layer contents 135
  paths 82
  selection marquees 68
multichannel images
  converting images to 224
  converting to grayscale 224
Multiply command 161
Multiply mode 98

Nearest Neighbor option 187
negatives
  creating 214
  using 214
negatives, printing 244
New Brush command 95
New Channel command 154
New command 11
New Layer command 131
New Window command 12
Noise filters 169
None command 61
non-printing colors. *See* out-of-gamut colors
Non-Zero Winding rule 90
Normal mode 98
Normal option 111
NTSC Colors filter 179

Offset filter 180
offset value, of radial fill 111
omni light effect 172
opacity
  fills 112-113
  floating selections 70, 132
  floating selections and layer interaction 132
  masks 154
  Quick Mask 154
  tools 94, 97
  type 115
opacity of gamut warning 197
opacity tool and layer interaction 114
Open command 42
open paths 79
opening
  Adobe Illustrator files 42
  documents 42
  files 42
  palettes 19
Options palette 97-101
Other filters 179
out-of-gamut colors 21, 120, 219
  correcting with sponge tool 197
  definition 9
  displaying in color picker 125
  displaying in document window 197
  displaying in Info palette 21, 196
  displaying in Picker palette 120, 196
  identifying 196
  previewing 198
  selecting 59
output devices 243. *See also* printers
output resolution 5
Overlay mode 99
overprint colors 234
Override Printer's Default Functions option 51

Page layout, previewing 188
Page Setup dialog box, printing options 244-247
page size, previewing 188
PageMaker. *See* Aldus PageMaker
paint bucket tool 15, 109
paint brush tool 15, 103
painting
  fade-out rate 101
  from buffer 105
  from saved image 106
  in layers 114
  multiple copies 105
  opacity 97
  using a stylus 101
  using merged data 101
  with patterns 105
painting modes 98-99
  interaction with layer settings 114
painting tools 93
  problems with 250
palette groups 19
palettes 19-20
  Brushes palette 94-97
  Channels palette 148
  Commands palette 22
  for indexed color 227-228
  Info palette 21-22
  Picker palette 120-122
  setting position of 12, 20
  system 227
Palettes command 19
PANTONE colors
  naming 126, 232
  selecting 126
PANTONE Names option 232
Paste command 69
paste controls 70
Paste Into command 71
Paste Layer command 131, 133

pasting
decreasing fringe 71
from Clipboard 69
in Scratch palette 123
into another selection 70-71
matching resolutions 70
PostScript artwork 71
removing halos 72
smoothing edges of a selection 65
path segment 78
paths
clipping 88
closing 80-81
copying between documents 83
copying to Adobe Illustrator 83
copying to other applications 83
creating 78
defining as selection border 87
definition 77
deleting 86
deselecting 78
displaying 77
drawing work paths 78-80
editing 83-84
erasing 86
exporting paths as Adobe Illustrator documents 54
filling and stroking 85
hiding 78
moving in document window 82
moving in Paths palette 82
naming 78, 82
redefining selection borders 88
renaming 82
saving 82
selecting in document window 84
selecting in Paths palette 77
Show Paths command 77
Stroke Path command 86
subpaths 81, 84
target path 77
work path 79
Paths palette 77-78
Paths to Illustrator module 54
Pattern Dither option 221
Pattern option (for rubber stamp tool) 105
patterns
custom 223
defining 112, 122
filling with 112
for bitmap conversions 223
painting with 105
PostScript Pattern folder 113
PC Paint format, importing and exporting 251
PC Paintbrush 44, 52
PCX file format 41, 52
pen tool 78
pencil tool 15, 103
performance, improving 1
perspective, creating 75-76
PhotoCD format. *See* Kodak PhotoCD format
Picker palette 120-122
choosing foreground and background colors 120
color models in 120
nonprinting colors 120
out-of-gamut warning 196
selecting a background or foreground color 120
setting color values in color bar 121
PICT file format 41, 45, 52
Clipboard contents 69
PICT Resource format 46, 52
Pinch filter 166
PIXAR format 41
pixel depth 4
Pixelate filters 170
pixelization 37, 185
PixelPaint file format 41, 52
pixels
definition 3
determining number in an image 4
displaying color values 21
Place command 42
plug-in modules 41. *See also* the Adobe Photoshop Getting Started booklet 41
changing location of folder 13
filters 163
installing 41
using export modules 41, 47, 54
using import modules 41, 44
Point Sample option, for eyedropper tool 120
pointers 16
Pointillize filter 178
points/picas, changing units of measurement to 19
Polar Coordinates filter 167
Posterize command 215
PostScript Level 2 219, 245-247
PostScript patterns, filling with 113
preferences, setting 12
Preserve Transparency option 112, 133, 160
pressure, setting for tools 97
preview files opening 44
preview icons
full size 12, 49
in Finder 12
in Open dialog box 42
saving 42, 49
setting saving preferences for 12
thumbnail 12, 42
previewing
color correction values in Info palette 200

color corrections 199-200
color selections 60
effects 73
filter effects 164
image size 188
out-of-gamut colors 198
page layout 188
page size 188
printing options 246
saving preview icons 12
with a 24-bit or 32-bit video card 200
previewing channel calculations 160
Print in CMYK option 247
Print Separations option 247
print spoolers 247
printers
imagesetters 243
PostScript printers 243
QMS ColorScript 31
printing
across networks 247
and dot gain 33-36
ASCII format option 247
background color 245
binary format option 247
bleed 245
border 245
captions 245
channels 243
CMYK versions of images 247
color inaccuracies 249
color proofs 32
crop marks 244
displaying transfer functions 245
duotones 235
halftones 246
layers 243
negative 244
options in Page Setup dialog box 244-247
options in Print dialog box 247
output and resolution 185
overprint colors 234
overview 243
previewing page layout 188
problems 251
registration marks 244
resolution 38, 185
selections 247
separations 247
speed
and installation problems 251
with Landscape/Portrait page orientations 244
spot colors 128
with print spoolers 247
printing ImageWriter color files 54
Printing Inks Setup 31-36
process colors 10
pseudo-color images 228
Publish and Subscribe feature 25

QMS ColorScript printer 31
quadtones 224, 230-234
QuarkXPress 51
printing duotones from 236
using PANTONE colors in documents exported to 126, 232
Quick Edit module
opening files in 46
saving files 55
Quick Mask
editing 153
removing 153
Quick Mask mode 16, 152-154
previewing color selection in 60

Radial Blur filter 165
radial fill 111
Radius Calibrator 28
Random Start Phase option 168
random-access memory (RAM) 13
raster images 3
rasterizing Adobe Illustrator artwork 42, 71
Raw file format
opening files in 44
saving files in 53
Raw format 41, 53
rectangular marquee tool option 57
reducing windows 17
registration marks 246
Remove Layer Mask command 145
Render filters 170
Repeat Edge Pixels option 166, 167, 168, 180
Replace Color command 211
resampling
and resizing 191
definition 185
guidelines 185-186
selecting an interpolation method 187
resizing
and resolution 185, 190-191
using Canvas Size command 192-193
using cropping 189-191
using Image Size command 191
resolution
about 185
and file size 7, 185, 191
and halftone screen frequency 192, 246
and image size 6
automatic 192
bit 4
changing 191

displaying 188
guidelines for adjusting 185
image 4, 185
in determining color information 4
increasing and decreasing 186
of indexed color image 227
of type 115
output 5
printer, for scanned images 38
resampling 185-187
scanning 37-38
screen 5
setting while cropping 189
types of 4
restoring
dialog box positions 12
from buffer 112
image 24, 102, 106, 112
palette positions 12
Revert command 24
RGB color model 8
RGB images 217
converting to CMYK 219, 225
converting to indexed color 226
converting to Lab 224
definition 10
working with 217
Ripple filter 167
rotating
a selection 73
cropped selection 191
entire image 74
measuring angle of rotation 21
selecting an interpolation method 187
when printing 244
Rubber Band option 79
rubber stamp tool 16, 104-106
rulers, using 18
Sample Merged option 101
sampling
color 119
image with rubber stamp tool 104-105
merged data 101
saturation
adjusting 108
adjusting with Hue/Saturation command 209
adjusting with sponge tool 197
adjusting with Variations command 202
decreasing 197
definition 7, 99, 210
Saturation mode 99
Save a Copy command 48, 146
Save As command 48, 49
Save command 11, 48
Save Metric Color Tags option 226
Save Path command 82
Save Selection command 155
Saved 112
saving
ASCII option 50
Binary option 50
Brushes palette 97
channels 157
clipping paths 51
color range 61
compressed files 51
copy of a file 49
custom gamma settings 29
documents 11, 48
documents with layers 48
duotone curves 233
duotone settings 234
EPS files 50
EPS previews 50
halftone screen settings 51, 247
layered documents 146
monitor settings 30
paths 82
paths in EPS format 88
preview icons 12, 49
printing inks settings 36
restoring a saved image 24, 102, 106, 112
selection settings 61
selections 155
selections in channels 147
Separation Setup settings 241
Swatches palette 122
transfer function information 51
saving color correction settings 213
scaling a selection 74
scanning images 37
determining resolution 37-40
determining tonal range 196
eliminating color casts 41
estimating resolution 40
optimizing the dynamic range 40
TWAIN interface 47
using Acquire modules 37
using file size setting 38
using screen frequency and output size 38
Scitex CT format 41, 53, 219, 235, 251
scratch disks
assigning tracking use of 13
scratch pad, using to mix colors 122. *See also* Scratch palette
Scratch palette 122-124
clearing 123
copying in 123
erasing 123
loading 124
locking 123
pasting in 123
saving 124

scratches
removing from image 169
screen angle, specifying 246
Screen command 161
screen frequency. *See* screen ruling
Screen mode 98
screen modes 16
screen resolution 5
and display of image 17
screen ruling 5, 192, 222, 245
Selected Areas option 153-154
selecting. *See also* selecting color; selections
by color 58, 62
color ranges 59
deselecting 61
duplicating a selection 68
elliptical areas 57
entire image 61
extending and reducing a selection 61
floating selection 66
fuzziness 61
highlights 59
interpolation method 187
intersections of selections 64
irregular areas with lasso tool 58
midtones 59
multiple areas 62
out-of-gamut colors 59
paths 84
rectangular areas 57
shadows 59
similar colors 62
single row or column 57
type 117
unselected areas 65
using a feather edge 65
using anti-aliasing 66
with fixed marquee 57
with magic wand 58
with marquee tool 57
selecting color
custom 126
using color picker 122-128
using eyedropper tool 119
using numerical values 125
using Picker palette 120-121
using Scratch palette 122
using Swatches palette 121
selection borders
Border command 64
defining paths 88
hiding and showing 66
moving 68
redisplaying 66
selection marquee 57
displaying 66
hiding 66
moving 68
selection marquee, measuring 22
selection tools. *See* elliptical marquee tool; rectangular marquee tool; lasso tool; magic wand tool
selections. *See also* floating selections
adding a border around a 64
adding to 62
alpha channels 156
and layers 131
applying effects to 72
based on color 58-62
contracting 64
copying 68
cutting 71
decreasing 62, 64
defloating 67
deleting 71
dragging between documents 69
editing 57
editing in 156
extending 62
filling 112
floating 66-67
hiding edges 66
increasing 62
intersecting 64
inversing 65
loading 156
moving selection marquee 68
non-floating 66
pasting 69
perspective of 75
previewing 60
printing 249
reducing 62, 64
removing halos around 72
rotating 73
saving 155
skewing 74-76
smoothing 63
smoothing edges of 65
softening 61
stroking 113
subtracting from 62
Selective Color command 212
Separation Setup command 238-241
Separation Tables command 225
separation type 239
shadows, adjusting 201-202, 205-209
sharpening
after resampling 187
Sharpen Edges filter 175
Sharpen filter 175
Sharpen More filter 175
sharpen tool 16, 107
Unsharp Mask filter 175
Shear filter 167
Short PANTONE Names option 126, 232
Show All Files option 42

Show Brushes command 95
Show Channels command 148
Show Clipping option 202
Show Edges command 66
Show Layers command 130
Show Options command 97
Show Paths command 77
Show Rulers command 18
Show Thumbnail option 42
Similar command 62
Single Column option 57
Single Row option 57
size, changing 185-193
skew value, of linear fill 111
skewing a selection 74-76
smooth command 63
smooth point 83
smooth points in a path 83
Smoother option 217
smoothing edges of a selection 85, 87
smudge tool 16, 106
Snapshot option 112
Soft Light mode 99
Solarize filter 178
spacing type 116
special effects
  creating perspective 75-76
  distorting a selection 76
  previewing and applying 73
  selecting an interpolation method 187
  stretching a selection 74
Spectrum option for fill 111
Spectrum options (for color table) 229
Spherize filter 167
Split Channels command 150
sponge tool 16, 108, 197
spotlight effect 172
Standard mode control 16
standard web offset publication (SWOP) 31
stretching a selection 74
Stroke command 113
Stroke Path command 86
style options, for type 116
Stylize filters 176
stylus pressure, for digitizing tablets 101
subpaths 78
  closing 81
  drawing 81
  selecting 84
subscribing to a document 25
Subtract command 162
subtractive colors 8
SuperMatch calibration utility 28
Swatches palette 121-122
  adding colors to 121
  deleting colors from 121
  loading 122
  replacing colors in 122
  returning to default 122
  saving 122
switch colors icon 16, 93, 119
system palette 227

Tagged-Image File Format (TIFF) 25, 41, 53
Take Snapshot command 105
Targa file format 41
Targa. *See* TGA format
target channel 148
target layer 130
target values, entering for color correction 204
technical support 251
Texture Fill filter 175
textures, in Lighting Effects filter 174-175
TGA format 53
This Layer option 140
Threshold command 215
Threshold mode, in the Levels dialog box 206
Threshold option (for bitmapped conversions) 221
thumbnails
  for layer masks 143
  resizing in Channels palette 149
  resizing in Layers palette 135
  resizing in Paths palette 78
TIFF format. *See* Tagged-Image File Format
Tiles filter 178
tinting an image 210
tolerance 58, 109
tonal balance
  adjusting 206-207
  definition 195
  displaying 198
tonal range
  adjusting 203
  determining 196
  displaying 199
  histogram of 199
tool pointers
  displaying brush sizes 16
  displaying precise 16
tool problems 250
toolbox 14
toolbox. *See also* individual tool names
tools. *See also* individual tools
  default settings 97
  definitions 14
  hiding 20
  shortcuts 94
  specifying fade-out rate 101
  specifying opacity, pressure, or exposure 97
  specifying stylus pressure 101

using Options palette with 97
total ink limit 240
TOYO ColorFinder 1050 colors, selecting 127
Trace Contour filter 177
transfer functions 34-35, 245
adjusting 34
definition 34
displaying 247
including in EPS files 51
transparency
preserving in layers 133
setting options for layer display 134
transparent areas
setting preferences for 14
Transparent to Foreground option 111
transparent whites, exporting 50
trap 241
trap, creating 237
tritones 230-234
troubleshooting 249-252
TRUMATCH colors, selecting 127
TWAIN module 47
Twirl filter 168
type
adjusting characters 117
aligning 117
anti-aliased 117
editing 115
entering 115
jagged 114, 250
kerning 116
leading 116
letter spacing 116
line spacing 116
mode 115
moving 117-118
opacity 115
resolution 115
selecting 117
style options 116
type tool 15

Undercolor addition (UCA) 240
undercolor removal (UCR) 239
Underlying Layer option 140
Undo command 23
Unit Preferences 19
units of measurement, changing 19
Unsharp Mask filter 175, 187
Use Accurate Screens option 235, 248
Use Diffusion Dither option 220
Use Dot Gain for Grayscale Images option 32
Use Printer's Default Screens option 248
Use System Palette option 219

Variations command 201
vector images 3
Video Alpha command 158
video card
previewing with 24- or 32-bit 200
using alpha channels with 158
Video filters 179
Video LUT Animation option 200
Video Toaster 251

Wacom tablet 101
Wave filter 168
Wet Edges option 102, 104
white and black points
in scanning images 40
setting 203-208
White Matte 60
width of image 188
Wind filter 178
windows
display modes 16
magnifying and reducing 17
opening multiple 12
setting position of 12
work paths 79
creating 79
drawing 80
saving 82
Wrap Around option 166, 167, 168, 180

Zigzag filter 168
Zoom commands 18
zoom tool 15, 17-18

Production Notes

This book was created electronically using FrameMaker on the Macintosh platform. Art was produced using Adobe Photoshop and Adobe Illustrator on the Windows and Macintosh platforms. Film was produced with the PostScript language on Afga-Compugraphic SelectSet Imagesetters. The Minion and Myriad families of typefaces are used throughout this book.

Photography

Sharon Anderson (p. 181); Karen Ann (p. 222); CMCD, Inc. (p. 3); Digital Stock Corp. (pp. 77, 106, 129, 141, 147, 197); Jeanne Dower (p. 181); Curtis Fukuda (p.39); Kim Isola (p. 218); Doug Menuez (p.32); PhotoDisc, Inc. (p. 46, 129); Linda Tapscott (p. 141, 143); Joanie Yokom (p.57, 181, 182, 183, 231)

Adobe

Adobe Systems Incorporated
1585 Charleston Road, P.O. Box 7900, Mountain View
California 94039-7900 USA

Adobe Systems Europe B.V.
Europlaza, Hoogoorddreef 54a, 1101 BE Amsterdam Z.O.
The Netherlands

Adobe Systems Japan
Swiss Bank House, 4-1-8 Toranomon, Minato-ku
Tokyo 105 Japan